

THE
LATINE GRAMMAR
FITTED FOR
THE USE OF SCHOOLS.

Wherein the words of *Lilie's Grammar*
are (as much as might be) retained ;
many errors thereof amended ; many
needless things left out : many necessa-
ries, that were wanting, supplied ; and all
things ordered in a Method more agree-
able to Childrens Capacity,

By *Charls Hoole*, Mr. of Arts, of Lincoln-Col-
ledge in *Orford*, sometimes School-master of *Rotheram*
in *York shire* ; and now Teacher of a Private Gram-
mar School in the Token-house in *Lothbury*,
not very far from the Royall Exchange
L O N D O N.

And (that nothing might be wanting to the purpose)
the English Translation is set down on the contrary
page for the benefit of Young-learners.

*The third Edition more exactly Corrected than the former
Impressions.*

FRANC. PATRI.
Grammer is the Foundation of all Disciplines.

L O N D O N,

Printed by *T. Mabb*, and are to be sold by
Henry Mortlocke at the *Phoenix*, neer the little North-
doore of *St. Pauls Church*, and *Tho. Bassett* in
St. Dunstons Church-yard in *Fleet-street*, 1659.

THE
LATINE GRAMMAR
FITTED FOR
THE USE OF SCHOOLS.

Wherein the words of *Lilie's Grammar*
are (as much as might be) retained ;
many errors thereof amended ; many
needless things left out : many necessa-
ries, that were wanting, supplied ; and all
things ordered in a Method more agree-
able to Childrens Capacity,

By *Charls Hoole*, Mr. of Arts, of Lincoln-Col-
ledge in *Orford*, sometimes School-master of *Rotheram*
in *York shire* ; and now Teacher of a Private Gram-
mar School in the Token-house in *Lothbury*,
not very far from the Royall Exchange
L O N D O N.

And (that nothing might be wanting to the purpose)
the English Translation is set down on the contrary
page for the benefit of Young-learners.

*The third Edition more exactly Corrected than the former
Impressions.*

FRANC. PATRI.
Grammer is the Foundation of all Disciplines.

L O N D O N,

Printed by *T. Mabb*, and are to be sold by
Henry Mortlocke at the *Phoenix*, neer the little North-
doore of *St. Pauls Church*, and *Tho. Bassett* in
St. Dunstons Church-yard in *Fleet-street*, 1659.

John Penables

GRAMMATICA LATINA
IN
USUM SCHOLARUM
ADORNATA.

Grammatices Lilianæ ver-
bis, quantum fieri licuit) retentis; mul-
tis ejus erroribus emendatis: minus-ne-
cessariis amputatis; pluribus, quæ deficerent, sup-
pletis; & omnibus Methodo faciliore ad te-
nellæ ætatis captum conformata dispositis.

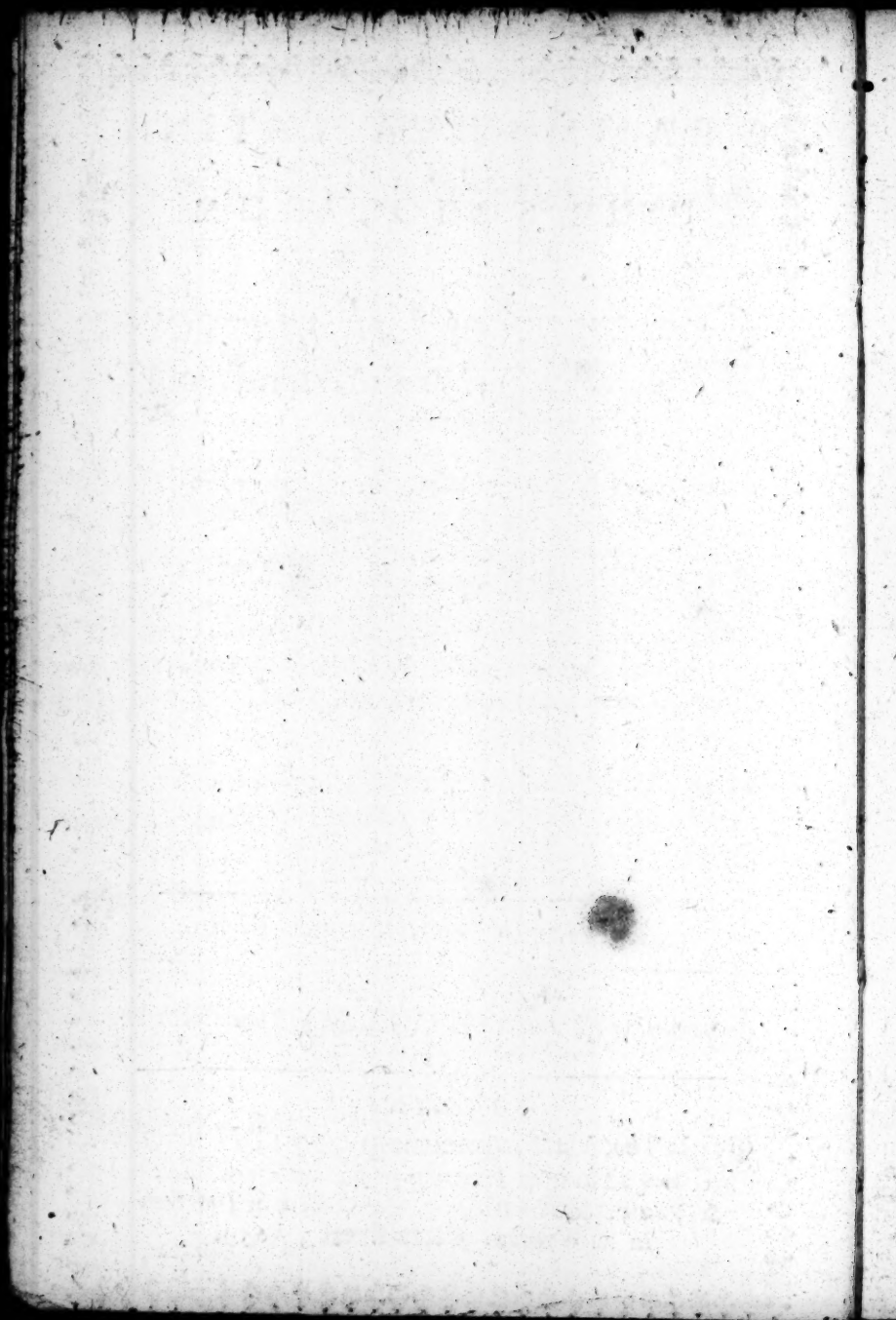
Opera & Studio CAROLI HOOLE, A.M. & C.L.
Oxon. Scholarchæ olim Rotherhamiensis in agro Ebor.
jam verò privatæ Scholæ Grammaticæ Institutoris in
ædibus *Lothburiensibus*, quadrantariis haud
ita procul à Byrsa Regali, apud
Londinates.

Adjecta est insuper (nè quid huic instituto desit) in
juventutis gratiam, in adversâ pæginâ, Angli-
cana interpretatio.

Editio tertia prioribus emendatior.

FRANC. PATRI.
Grammatica est omnium Discipularum Fundamentum.

LONDINI,
Typis *Tho. Mabb*, veneuntque apud *Henricum*
Mortlock ad insigne *Phœnicis* propè ostiolum Boreale
St. Pauli; & *Tho. Basset* in Cœmeterio *St. Dunstani*
in vico vocato *Fleet-street*, 1659.





Dr. *Saunderson's* Approbation of this
GRAMMAR.

I Have perused this present work, which the Author to his great Commendation hath contrived with so much care and judgement, that I cannot but very well approve of it, as being the shortest, orderliest, and plainest for the ease both of Master and Scholar, and with the least variation from the COMMON-GRAMMAR of any Book that I have seen. published in this kinde.

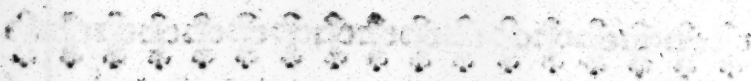
ROBERT SAUNDERSON

Ita testor Edvardus Silvester.

Dec. 18.
1648.

Imprimatur

JO. LANGLEY.



CHAMBERLAIN.

Dr. Chamberlain's Approval of this

The first of these is the fact that the
 second of these is the fact that the
 third of these is the fact that the
 fourth of these is the fact that the
 fifth of these is the fact that the
 sixth of these is the fact that the
 seventh of these is the fact that the
 eighth of these is the fact that the
 ninth of these is the fact that the
 tenth of these is the fact that the

LOBBETT, ANDREW

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

1871

10. LAMBERT



Hæc Professio—plus habet in recessu quam in fronte promittit. —Quò minùs sunt ferendi, qui hanc Artem ut tenuem ac jejunam cavillantur: quæ nisi Oratori futuro fundamenta fideliter jecerit, quicquid superstruxeris, corruet: & quæ vel sola omni studiorum genere plus habet operis, quam ostentationis. Ne quis igitur tanquam parva fastidiat Grammatices elementa; non quia magnæ sit operæ, consonantes à vocalibus discernere, ipsasque eas in semivocalium numerum, mutarumque partiri: sed quia interiora velut sacri hujus adeuntibus, apparebit multa rerum subtilitas, quæ non modo acuere ingenia puerilia, sed exercere altissimam quoque eruditionem, ac scientiam possit.

CICERO de Oratore lib. 3.

Præcepta latinæ loquendi puerilis doctrina tradit, & subtilior cognitio, ac ratio literarum alit; aut consuetudo sermonis quotidiani ac domestici libri confirmant, & lectio veterum Oratorum & Poetarum.

Desid. ERASMUS Roterodamus.

Proclivius est vel in triplici jure Doctoris nomen, quam semel boni Grammatici titulum promeruisse.

G R A M-

THE Latine Grammar.

Of Grammar, and its Parts.

The Latine
Grammar
containeth
Rules of
right
speaking
Latine.
It hath four
Parts,

Grammar is the Art of Writing and Speaking
aright,
With the Latines in Latine.
There be foure Parts
of Grammar.

1 Orthographie,	Lib. I
2 Etymologie,	Lib. II
3 Syntaxis,	Lib. III
4 Prosodia,	Lib. IV

Grammar hath its name from letters, which the Greeks call *Grammata*, and implies as much as *literature*, as if you should call it the *Letter-Art*, or *Skill in Letters*; for this Art begins with letters, of which syllables are made, and of syllables, words; and of words, a speech; which is either *Prose* or *Verse*.

Orthographie is spent about Letters; *Prosodia* about syllables; *Etymologie* about Words; and *Syntaxis* about a Speech. The natural order therefore requires, that *Prosodia* should be ranked in the second place; But we, following the method of the Common Grammar (because indeed the quantity of Syllables cannot so well be perceived before Words be understood) thought good to set *Prosodia* in the last place.

Lib. I Of Orthographie.

1. Orthogra-
phie, which

Ortographie is the first part of Grammar, which teacheth with what letters any word is to be spelled; as, *lectio* not *lexio*.

teacheth

Orthographie
teacheth

Of Letters,
Of Syllables,
Of Right Utterance
Of Points of Sentences,

Chap. 1
Chap. 2
Chap. 3
Chap. 4
Chap. 1.

Grammatica Latina.

De Grammaticâ, & ejus partibus.

Grammatica est rectè Scribendi atque Loquendi Ars. Grammatica Latina rectè loquendi Latine præcepta continet. Ejus quatuor sunt partes,

	<i>Latinis Latine.</i>	
Grammaticæ quatuor sunt partes.	1. Orthographia.	Lib. I.
	2. Etymologia.	Lib. II.
	3. Syntaxis.	Lib. III.
	4. Prosodia.	Lib. IV.

Nomen *Grammaticæ* impositum est à *literis*, quas *grammata* Græci vocant; sonatq; idem quod *literatura*, quasi *Artem Literariam* dicas; *littera* enim sunt prima hujus *Artis* initia, ex quibus fiunt *syllabæ*; ex *syllabis*, *diCTIONES*, & è *diCTIONIBUS*, *oratio*; quæ *soluta* vel *ligata* est.

Orthographia versatur in *Literis*, *Prosodia* in *syllabis*, *Etymologia* in *diCTIONIBUS*, & *Syntaxis* in *Oratione*. Ordo igitur naturalis postulat. ut *Prosodia* in secundo loco collocetur. Nobis autem methodum *Vulgaris Grammatices* observantibus (quippe, *syllabarum* quantitas ante *Vocum* intelligentiam non tam facile percipi queat) ultimum *Prosodia* locum assignare, visum est.

Lib. I. De Orthographia.

OOrthographia est prima pars Grammatices, quâ docemur quibus quæque dictio sit formanda literis; quâ ut, lectio non lexio. 1. Orthographia, quæ

Orthographia autem agit

}	De Literis.
}	De Syllabis
}	De Orthoëpia
}	De sententiarum punctis

Cap. I.
Cap. II.
Cap. III.
Cap. IV.
Cap. I,

Chap. I. Of Letters.

1. Of Letters

A Letter is the least part of a word.
 There be 23 Latine Letters, A B C D E F
 G H I K L M N O P Q R S T V X Y Z.
 Which are all contained in this verse.

which are

Gaza frequens Lybicos duxit Kæthago triumphos.

Three things } (1. The *Name*, whereby it is called.
 belong to } 2. The *Figure* or Character whereby
 every Letter } it is known, or noted.
 } 3. The *Force*, or power, whereby it
 } is pronounced or uttered.

Letters are distinguished, } *Vowels*,
 according to their } &
 sound into } *Consonants*.

Vowels

A *Vowel* is a letter which soundeth by it self, and
 they be five, *a, e, i, o, u*, and *y* the Greek one: of
 which being diversly placed, are made as many Dip-
 thongs, *æ, au, ei, eu, œ*. and *y*, as *Harpyia*.

and

A *Consonant* is a letter which soundeth not, except
 it be joyned with a vowel, as *B, C, D, &c.* Likewise
J and *V* become consonants, when they are set be-
 fore themselves, or other vowels in the same syllable,
 as, *Juno, Jovis, Voluntas, vultus*.

Consonants

Of Con-
 sonants
 some are

1. *Mutes*, which have no sound of them-
 selves, and they are nine, *b, c, d, f, g, h, p, q, t*,
 in which the sound of the vowel follows
 after.

For *f* answereth to *phi* the Greek let-
 ter, and *q* to make it sound takes *u* to it.

2. *Semivowels*, which have some sound of
 themselves, and they are seven. *l, m, n, r, s, x,*
z, in which the sound of the vowel goeth
 before.

Semi.

Cap. 1. De Literis

Litera est minima pars Dictionis.

1. de Literis

Literæ Latinæ sunt Viginti tres: A B C D E
F G H I K L M N O P Q R S T V X Y Z.

Quæ omnes in hoc versiculo continentur;

Gaza frequens Libicos duxit Karthago triumphos.

Tria accidunt { 1. *Nomen*, quo appellatur.
unicuique { 2. *Figura*, quâ notatur.
literæ. { 3. *Potestas*, quâ pronuncietur.

Distinguuntur Literæ { *Vocales*,
secundùm sonum in { &
{ *Consonantes*.

quæ sunt.

Vocalis est litera quæ per se sonat; & sunt quinque, *a, e, i, o, u*. & Græcæ: ex quibus variè dispositis eorundem fiunt *Diphthongi*, *æ, au, ei, eu, œ*. & *ui*, *Harpyia*.

Vocales

Consonans est litera, quæ non, nisi cum vocali juncta, sonat; ut *B, C, D*. &c. *I* etiam & *V* consonantes fiunt, cum vel sibi, vel aliis vocalibus in eadem syllabâ præponuntur; ut *Juno, Jovis, voluntas, vul-*

1. *Mute*, quæ sonum nullum à seipsis habent, & sunt novem, *b, c, d, f, g, k, p, q, t*. in quibus sonus vocalis sequitur.

Consonan-
tium alia
sunt

Nam *f* responder *phi* Græcorum, & *q* ut sonet semper sibi adsciscit *u*. 66 consonantes

2. *Semivocales*, quæ aliquid soni à seipsis habent; & sunt septem, *l, m, n, r, s, x, z*. in quibus sonus vocalis præcedit.

Semivocales

Liquids, which do melt, or lose their force after a Mute in the same syllable; as, *l, m, n, r.*

Semi-vowels are some of them { **Double Consonants**, which have the force of two letters, as *x, z,* and *j.* between two vowels in single words. For in the word *jejunium*, the first *j* seems to be a single consonant, the second a double consonant, and the third a vowel.

S is neither a Liquid nor a Mute, but a letter of its own power or pronunciation; which some therefore call *Monadicon*, or a letter, of whose sort there is but that one.

H is not properly a letter, but a note of aspiration; as in *pulcher, homo, hiatus*; which before *ie* in Hebrew words is seldom pronounced, for we say *Hjeremias, Hjerosolyma*, as though they begun with *j* consonant; but Greek words are pronounced as if they begun with *I* vowel, as, *Hierarchia.*

Great
and
Small.

Letters { **Great** } { **Great characters**, as
accord- { which are { *A. B. C.*
ing to { or { written
their { with { **Small characters**, as,
shape are { **Small** } { *a. b. c.*

Great letters are written in the beginning of

1. Sentences; as, *Deum time*, 'Fear God. *Regem honora*, Honour the King.
2. Proper Names; as, *Carolus* Charles, *Londinum* London, *Thamisis* the Thames.
3. The more eminent words in a sentence; as, *Religionis Christianae fundamentum est Fides.* Faith is the foundation of Christian Religion.
4. Every verse in a poëme; as,
Utendum est etate; cito pede praterit etas;
Nec bona tam sequitur, quàm bona prima fuit.
Improve the time; time passeth quickly on,
Nor doth so good succeed, as that that's gone.

Small

Semi-
voca-
lium
aliæ sunt

[*Liquide*, quæ post Mutam in eâdem syl-
laba liqueſcunt, ſive vim ſuam amittunt;
ut, *l. m. n. r.*

[*Duplices*, quæ duarum literarum vim ha-
bent; ut *x. æ. & j.* inter duas vocales in
vocibus ſimplicibus. Nam in *jejunium*,
primum; videtur eſſe conſona ſimplex,
ſecundum duplex, & tertium vocale.

S nec Liquida eſt, nec Muta, ſed ſuæ poteſtatis,
(ſive pronunciationis) litera; quam id circo non-
nulli *Monadicon* appellant.

H propriè quidem non eſt litera, ſed aspirationis
nota; ut *pulcher, homo, hiatus*; ſed ante *ie* in Hebræi-
cis diſtionibus rarò pronunciantur; dicere enim ſole-
mus *Hjeremias, Hjerofolyma*, quaſi ab *ſ* conſona in-
ciperent; ſed Græcæ voces pronunciantur tanquam in-
ciperent ab *I* vocali, ut *Hierarchia*.

[*Majusculæ*, quæ Majusculis caracte-
literæ quo-] ribus ſcribuntur, ut *A. B. C.*
ad formam ſu- <
am ſunt,] *Minusculæ*, quæ minusculis chara-
[cteribus ſcribuntur, ut *a, b, c.*

Majuscula

&

Minusculæ

Majusculis inchoantur

1. Sententiæ; ut *Deum time, Regem honora.*
2. Propria nomina; ut *Carolus. Londinum, Thamiſs.*
3. Diſtiones quælibet in oratione notatu digniores;
ut,
Religionis Chriſtiane fundamentum eſt Fides.
4. In Carminibus verſus ſinguli; ut,
*Utendum eſt ætate; cito pede præterit ætas;
Nec bona tam ſequitur, quàm bona prima fuit.*

Small letters are commonly written in all other places, whereof those are chiefly to be minded which have a double character as *i u* and *s*; for *i* and *u* be vowels, but *j* and *v* be consonants, which some call *ja* and *va*. Likewise long *s* is alwaies written in the beginning or middle of a word, but short *s* in the end of it, as *scripsimus*.

<p>high stand or A Word or number.</p>	<p>When great letters be set alone, or but a few together, they do signify or stand some- times for</p>	<p>[whole words; as <i>M.T.C.</i> Mark Tullie Cicero. <i>S.P.D.</i> <i>Salutem plurimam dicis</i>, sendeth much greeting. <i>A. M.</i> <i>Anno mundi</i>. In the year of the World. <i>A.D.</i> <i>Anno Domini</i>, in the year of our Lord. <i>R. P.</i> <i>Res publica</i>; the Common-wealth. <i>P. C.</i> <i>Patres Conscripti</i>, the Senators. <i>HS</i> or <i>LLS.</i> <i>Due libræ & semis</i>, two pound and a half (the note of a silver coin worth i.d.ob. ½ q.) <i>N.B.</i> <i>nota bene</i>, marke well A number; as, <i>I</i> one, <i>V</i> five, <i>X</i> ten, <i>L</i> fifty, <i>C</i> an hundred, <i>CC</i> two hundred, <i>CC</i> or <i>D</i> five hundred, <i>CC</i> or <i>CC</i> or <i>M</i> a thousand, <i>CC</i> five thousand, <i>CC</i> ten thousand, <i>CC</i> fifty thousand, <i>CC</i> an hundred thousand, <i>CC</i> five hundred thousand, <i>CC</i> ten hundred thousand or a Million.</p>
--	---	--

The lesser number set before take's away so much as it self is from the greater; but being set after, it add's so much to it; as *IV* makes four, but *VI* six, *LX* nine, but *XI* eleven.

A cross line made over a numeral letter implieth it to signifie so many thousands, as otherwise it would contain lesser sums; as *III* three thousand, *X* ten thousand, and so of the rest.

Chap.2. Of Syllables.

1. OF Syllables, **A** Syllable, is a taking letters together, and uttering them with one breath; as, *vir-tus*

And

In reliquis locis maximâ ex parte Minusculæ scribuntur, è quibus istæ sunt præcipuè notandæ, quæ duplicem obtinent characterem, ut *i* & *s*; nam *i* & *u* vocales sunt; *j* verò & *v* sunt consonæ, quas aliqui *ja* & *va* nominârunt. longam semper in principio, vel medio dictionis pingitur, sed *s* breve in fine, ut scripsimus.

Literæ majusculæ cum solæ aut paucæ scribuntur, significant aliquando

Integra vocabula; ut, *M. T. C. Marcus Tullius Cicero. S. P. D. Salutem plurimam dicit A. M. Anno mundi. A. D. Anno Domini. R. P. Respublica, P. C. Patres Conscripti. HS. aut LLS. Duæ libræ & semis (nota nummi sestertii valentis asses duos cum semisse) N. B. Nota bene;*

quæ significant Vocabulum.

aut

Numerum; ut, *I unum, V quinque, X decem, L quinquaginta, C centum, s. v. CCC ducenti, l. vel D quingenti, ∞ vel C l. vel M mille, l. quinque millia. CC l. decem millia. l. quinquaginta millia. CCC l. centena millia. l. quingenta millia. CCC l. decies centena millia.*

Numerum.

Minor numerus præpositus, tantundem demit majori sequenti; postpositus verò tantundem addit; ut *IV* valet quatuor, *VI* verò sex; *IX* valet novem, at *XI* undecim.

Linea transversa notis numericis superposita, eandem tot millia continere innuit, quot aliqui minores numeros continerent, ut *III* tria millia, *X* decem millia, & sic de cæteris.

Cap. 2. De Syllabis.

Syllaba est comprehensio literarum uno spiritu prolata; ut, *vir-tus*, 2. De Syllabis.

B

Estque

and

Improper, which consisteth of one only vowel or diphthong; as, *Ae-a-cus*.
 And it is Proper, which consisteth of one or more consonants taken together with a vowel or diphthong; as, *Ce-le-stis*.

Of parting
and putting
them toge-
ther.

He that would write rightly, must learn as he writes, to part syllables, and put them together.

Note therefore that

1. A Syllable in Latine doth not exceed the number of six letters; as, *Scirps*, *Scrobs*.
2. In words of many syllables a consonant set between two vowels belongs to the latter; as, *Do-m-nus*.
3. If a consonant be doubled, the first belongs to the foregoing, and the latter to the following syllable; as, *An-nus*.
4. Consonants, which cannot be joyned in the beginning of a word, must be parted in the middle of it; as, *Sul-cus*.
5. Consonants which can be joyned in the beginning of a word, must not be parted in the middle, as, *no-ster*.

6. In simple words these letters always belong to the following vowel, viz

bd
en
et
gn
mn
pbth
ps
pt
sb
sc
sm
sp
sq
st
tl
tm
tn

as
He-bdomas
Te-chna
Do-ctus
A-gnus
A-mnis
Na-phi-ba
Sci-psi
A-plus
Lo-sbia
Pi-sen
Co-smus
A-sper
Te-squa
Pa-ster
A-llas
La-tinus
A-nia

because we say
Adellium
Cneus
Ctesipha
Gnatus
Mnemofyne
Phibis
Psittacus
Ptolomaeus
Sceps
Scamnium
Smaragdus
Spero
Squalor
Sterea
Ileptolemus
Tmolus
Thnesko

Impropriæ, quæ constant ex solâ vocali vel diphthongo; ut, *Æ-a-cus*.
Propriæ, quæ constant ex consonante unâ vel pluribus, cum vocali vel diphthongo comprehensis; ut, *Cæ-li-sis*.

Rectè scripturo discendum est syllabas, inter scribendum, aptè distinguere, atque connectere.

Notandum igitur quod

earundem
 distinctione
 vel
 connexione

Syllaba apud Latinos numerum senarium literarum non excedit; ut, *Stirps*, *Scrôbs*.

In Polysyllabis consonans inter duas vocales posita ad posteriorem pertinet; ut, *Do-mi-nus*.

Si consonans gemineatur, prior ad præcedentem, posterior ad sequentem syllabam pertinet; ut, *An-nus*.

Consonæ, quæ in initio vocis conjungi non possunt, in medio sunt distinguendæ; ut, *Sul-cus*.

Consonæ quæ in initio vocis conjungi possunt, in medio non sunt distinguendæ; ut, *No-bis*.

bd	He-bdomas	Bdellium
cn	Te-cbna	Gneus.
et	Do-ctus	Ctesipho.
gn	A-gnus	Gnatus.
mn	A-mnis	Mnemôsyne
phth	Na-phtha	Phibifis.
ps	Scri-psi	Pittacus.
pt	A-ptus	Ptolomæus.
sb	Le-sbia	Sbesis.
sc	Pi-scis	Scamnum.
sm	Co-smus	Smaragdus
sp	A-sper	Spero.
sq	Te-squa	Squalor.
st	Pa-stor	Sterto.
tl	A-tilas	Tleptolemus.
tm	La-tinius	Tmolus
tn	A-tna	Tnesio.

quia dicitur

7. In words compounded every part must be separated from another; as, *Ab/ can-do*.
8. In words compounded with a preposition, we must respect the ear and good sound; as, *Aufero* not *Absfero*; and *Abstuli*, not *Autuli*; and therefore it is that consonants are often times put in; as *Redamo*, for *Reamo*; *Ambigo* for *Amigo*.
9. S is rightly written after X in compound words, whose simples begin with s; as *Exscribe* of *ex* and *scribe*, *exsul* of *ex* and *solum*; but not in others, as, *Exoro* of *Ex* and *oro*, *Exigo* of *Ex* and *ago*.
10. Ti before a vowel is pronounced like si; as *Oratio*. Except,
 1. In the beginning of a word, as *Tiava*.
 2. When i goeth immediately before it, as, *Questio*.
 3. In poetical Infinitive Moods, as, *mittier*, for *miti*.
 4. In words borrowed from other languages; as *Politia*.

Chap. 3. Of Right Utterance.

3. OF Right Uttering and amending the faults in Pronouncing.

O *Orthoëpie*, or Right Utterance, is the manner of right speaking out; as *Hom*, not *omo*.

Boyes must neither over hasten their speech, nor pause between every word, but must be made to avoid the usuall faults in pronouncing; such as are,

1. *Traulism*, when one uttereth or hammereth as *Cacacani* for *cavit*, which fault may be amended by quickly pattering over some ribble rabble made hard to pronounce on purpose; as,

Ara, tridens, rostris, splenx, præter, sorrida, seps, str
Pl

7. In compositi quæque pars ab alterâ separanda est; ut, *Abstinentio*.
8. In compositis cum præpositione auribus & *Euphonia* serviendum est; ut *Aufero* non *Ab sero*, & *abstuli* non *autuli*: id èque Consonantes non raro interseruntur; ut, *Redamo* pro *Reamo*, *Ambigo* pro *Amigo*.
9. Post *X* in compositis, quorum simplicia incipiunt ab *S* rectissimè scribitur *s*; ut, *Exscribo*, ab *ex* & *scribo*; *exul*, ab *ex* & *ul*. Id non in aliis; ut *exoro* ab *ex* & *oro*; *exigo*, ab *ex* & *ago*.
10. *Ti* ante vocalem liquescit; ut, *Oratio*.
Nisi,
1. In initio dictionis; ut, *Tiara*.
2. Quando *s* præcedit; ut, *Questio*.
11. In poëticis infinitivis; ut, *mittere*.
12. In dictionibus mutuatitiis; ut, *Politia*.

Cap. 3. De Orthoepia.

- O**Orthoëpia est rectè Enunciandi ratio; ut, *Homo* non *Omo*.
- Pueri nec sermonem præcipitent, nec ad singulas quasque voces consilescant. Deterrendi sunt autem a vitiis sermonis vulgò propriis, cujusmodi sunt.
1. *Trasilismus*, qui est hæsitantia vel titubantia oris ut, *Cacasanit* pro *canit*. Cui vitio facilè succurritur, si sententias quosdam affectatæ difficultatis, quàm citissimè volvant; ut,
Arx, tridens, refrax, sphinx, præter, torrida, seps, strux

3. De Orthoëpia, & vitiis sermonis emendanda

2. *Plateasm*, when one speaketh too broadly; as, *Agô* for *Ergô*. *Mountes* for *Montes*, *Taibai* for *Tibi*.

3. *Ischnotes*, when one speaketh too mincingly; as, *Nunc* for *nunc*. *Eliquis* for *Aliquis*. Or too lispingly as, *Apuh* for *Apud*. *Amath* for *Amat*.

Chap. 4. of Points in Sentences

4. Of Points
in Sentences

A *Point* or *Pauf* is a note of distinction, signifying the space of breathing, or how long one may stay his breath. There be eight of these especially to be noted.

1. Comma,

1. A *Comma* is an half circle, which stayeth a sentence a little, by distinguishing its shorter parts; as *Grammaticus, rhetor, geometres, pictor, aliptes, Graculus esuriens, in cœtum, iusseris, ibit.*

2. Colon :

2. A *Colon* is two pricks, which suspends a sentence somewhat long, by dividing it in the midst; as, *Utendum est etatē : cito pede præterit etas.*

3. Semi-
colon :

3. A *Semicolon* is a prick with a *Comma* under it staying a sentence longer than a *Comma*, and not so long as a *Colon*; as, *Tu, quid divitiæ possunt, consideras; quid virtus, non item.*

4. Period.

4. A *Period* is a full prick after a perfect sentence as *Deum time, Regem honora.*

5. Paren-
thesis ()

5. A *Parenthesis* is two half Moons including a sentence, which, though it be taken away, the speech nevertheless will be whole; as,

Princeps (quia bella minantur

Hostes,) militibus urbes præmunit & armis.

6. Interro-
gation ?

6. An *Interrogation* mark's a question with two pricks, whereof the higher hath a taile upward; as *Quomodo vales?*

7. Exclama-
tion !

7. An *Exclamation* is marked with two pricks whereof the upper is a line coming down upon a point as, *O tempora! O mores!*

8. Hyphe

2. *Plateasmus*, est iusto crassior pronuntiatio : ut, *Argo* pro *Ergo*. *M. nites* p. o. *Montes*. *Taibai* pro *Tibi*.
 3. *Isthmos*, est iusto exilior pronuntiatio : ut, *Nynt* pro *Nunt*. *Eliquis* pro *Aliquis*. Aut blavior, ut, *apub* pro *apud*. *Amah* pro *Amat*.

Cap. 4. De Sententiarum Punctis.

Punctum sive *Paula* est nota distinctio, respirandi intervallum significans. Horum octo sunt præcipue notanda.

1. *Comma* est semi-circulus, sententiam sustinens, breviores ejus clausulas diringendo : ut, *Grammaticus, hebetor, geometres, pictor, aliptes, Græculus esuriens, in celum, jussus, ibit.*

2. *Colon* sunt duo puncta, quæ sententiam diutius suspendunt, medias ejus partes dirimendo : ut, *videndum est etate : cito pede præterit etas.*

3. *Semicolon* est punctum cum Commate subiecto, sententiam diutius paulo sustinens quam *Comma* : colon ; minus diu verò quam *Colon* : ut, *Tu, quid divitiæ possint, consideras ; quid virtus, non item.*

4. *Periodus* est punctum plenum post perfectam sententiam : ut, *Deum time, Regem honora.*

5. *Parenthefs* sunt duæ semilunulæ sententiam includentes, quæ remota sermo tamen manet integer : ut, *Prædus*

Princeps (quia bella minantur

Hostes) militibus urbes premunt, & armis.

6. *Interrogatio* signat questionem duobus punctis, quorum superius est caudatum ; ut, *quomodo gatio ? vales ?*

7. *Exclamatio* item notatur duobus punctis, quorum superius est lineola in punctum descendens ; ut, *O tempora ! O mores !*

8. Hyphen. 8. *Hyphen* is a little stroke interposed in a word divided at the end of a line; as, *Humanissime*: or, in words that are united, but not compounded; as *Res-publica* a Common-wealth.



BOOK II.

Of Etymologia.

Etymologie

treateth

ETYMOLOGIE is the second part of Grammar, which teacheth how to know the difference of words, duly considering the properties or things belonging to every one of them.

Now, a word is a part or piece of a Speech, which it self doth signifie something, but cannot be divided into parts that signifie: as, *Pi-e-tas* Godliness.

Chap. I.

Of the eight Parts of Speech, and their general Accidents.

Of the eight
Parts of
Speech;
which are

There be
eight sorts
of words:

- | | | |
|---|----------------------------|-----------|
| { | 1. <i>A Noun.</i> | Chap. 2. |
| | 2. <i>A Pronoun.</i> | Chap. 23. |
| | 3. <i>A Verbe.</i> | Chap. 24. |
| | 4. <i>A Participle.</i> | Chap. 39. |
| | 5. <i>An Adverbe.</i> | Chap. 40. |
| | 6. <i>A Conjunction.</i> | Chap. 41. |
| | 7. <i>A Preposition.</i> | Chap. 42. |
| | 8. <i>An Interjection.</i> | Chap. 43. |

And

3. *Hyphen* est lineola interposita voci diffictæ in fine lineæ; ut, *Humanissime*; aut in vocibus unitis, sed non compositis; aut *Res publica*.



LIB. II.

De Etymologia.

ETYMOLOGIA est secunda pars Grammaticæ, quæ docet dictionum discrimina, singularum proprietates, sive Accidentia diligenter expendens. Etymologia

Est autem d-ctio sive vox, pars orationis, quæ ipsa aliquid significat, sed in partes significantes dividi non potest: ut, *Pi-e-tas*. apud

Chap. I.

De octo Partibus Orationis, & earum Accidentibus generalibus.

Octo sunt vocum genera:

- 1. Nomen.
- 2. Pronomen.
- 3. Verbum.
- 4. Participium.
- 5. Adverbium.
- 6. Conjunctio.
- 7. Prepositio.
- 8. Interjectio.

Chap. 2.

Chap. 23.

Chap. 24.

Chap. 30.

Chap. 40.

Chap. 41.

Chap. 42.

Chap. 43.

Atque

De octo
Partibus
Orationis
quæ sunt

And these be commonly called *Parts of Speech*, because of them every speech is made; though they are seldome all to be found in one Speech;

Declined or Undeclin'd: The ^{first} of these are Declined, which change their endings.
four } are Undeclin'd, which change not their endings.

There belong to every Part of Speech

1. *Species*, or *Kind*, according to which a word is
 { *Primitive*, which is not derived of any other word; as, *Arbor*, *Amo*.
 { *Derivative*, which is derived from another word; as, *Arbustum*, *Amiculus*.
 { *Simple*, or single; which is not compounded with another; as, *Amiculus*, *Amo*.
 { *Compound*, or mixt; which is made of two or more words; as, *Inimicus*, *Redamo*.

To which belong;

There belong to words Declined

1. *Analogie*, when a word agree's with a Common Rule; as, *Musa*, *Amo*.
 2. *Anomalie*, when a word swerves from the Common Rule; as, *Filia*, *Fero*.

Two Numbers, Singular, and Plural. Three Persons; The first, The second

3. *Two Numbers*, whereof
 { The *Singular* speaketh but of one; as, *Lapis* a Stone.
 { The *Plural* of more than one; as, *Lapides* Stones.

4. *Three Persons*

{ The *first* speaketh of himself; as, *Ego natus puer ludo*, I trifling boy do play.
 { The *second* is spoken to; as, *Tu natus puer ludis*, Thou trifling boy playest.
 { The *third* is spoken of; as, *Ille natus puer ludit*, He trifling boy playeth.

The third.

Ego and *Nos* be alwaies of the First Person.

Tu and *vos*, and every Vocative case of the Second,

All

Arque hæc vulgò vocantur *Partes Orationis*, quòd ex hisce omnis oratio conficiatur : etiam omnes in una oratione rarò admodum occurrant.

Harum quatuor	} <i>præiores</i>	} <i>funt</i>	} <i>Declinabiles, five variabiles, quæ in fine possunt variari.</i>	} <i>Declinabiles</i>
	} <i>posteriores</i>	}	} <i>Indeclinabiles, five invariabiles, quæ in fine non possunt variari.</i>	} <i>Indeclinabiles.</i>

Accidunt cuique Parti Orationis

1. *Species*, } secundum quam vox dicitur
 - Primitiva*, quæ aliunde non trahitur ; ut, *Arbor, Amo.*
 - Derivativa*, quæ aliunde formatur ; ut, *Arbustum, Amicus.*
 - Simplex*, quæ cum alia non componitur ; ut *Amicus, Amo.*
 - Composita*, quæ à duabus vel pluribus fit ; ut, *Inimicum, Redamo.*
2. *Figura*,

Accidunt vocibus Declinabilibus

1. *Analogia*, cum dictio convenit Communi Regulæ ; ut, *Musa, Amo.*
2. *Anomalia*, cum dictio recedit à Communi Regulæ ; ut, *Filia, Fero.*

Quibus
accidunt

3. *Numerus*
 - Singularis* } de uno ; ut, *Aspis,*
 - Pluralis* } loquitur de pluribus ; ut, *Lapides.*
 - Prima*, quæ loquitur de se ; ut, *Ego nugans puer ludo.*
 - Secunda*, ad quam loquimur ; ut, *Tu nugans puer ludis.*
 - Tertia*, de quâ loquimur ; ut, *Ille nugans puer ludit.*
4. *Persona*
 - tres, } *Prima, Secunda, Tertia.*

Tertia

Ego & Nos sunt semper Primæ Personæ.

Tu & Vos, & omnes Vocativi Secundæ.

• Cetera

All other Nouns, Pronouns, and Participles be of the Third, unless *Ego* or *Nos*, *Tu* or *Vos* be exprest or understood.

Chap. 2.

Of a Noun, and its proper Accidents.

A Noun
nameth a
thing,
and is
Substant.

A Noun is a Part of Speech which nameth a thing, without any difference of Time or Person, as, *Manus* a Hand, *Domus* a House.

or
Adjective.

And it is either { *Substantive* which may stand by it self in a Speech, and requireth nothing to be added to declare its signification; as, *Homo* a Man.
or { *Adj. &ive*, which stands in need of a Substantive to declare its signification; as, *Bonus* good.

A Substantive sheweth what a thing is; as *Equus* a Horse.

An Adjective sheweth what alike the things is; as *Albus* White.

Proper,

Both
which
or
are

Common,

{ *Proper*, which is spoken of some one thing onely; as, *Carolus* Charles, *Londinum* London, *Thamesis* the Thames, *Anglus*, English, *Scotus* Scotch.

{ *Common*, which signifieth a thing common to many; as, *Homo* a Man, *Urbs* a City, *fluvius* a River, *Regio* a Countrey, *Magnus* Great.

It hath

There belong to a { *Case*.
Noun, Pronoun, and { *Gender*.
a Participle. { *Declension*.
{ *Comparison*.

Chap. 3.

Chap. 4.

Chap. 11.

Chap. 17.

Cætera Nomina, Pronomina, & Participia sunt
tertiæ personæ, nisi Ego vel Nos, Tu vel Vos expri-
mantur vel subintelligantur.

Cap. 2.

De Nomine, & ejus Accidentibus specialibus.

Nomen est Pars Orationis quæ rem nominat, Nomen
sine ulla Temporis aut Personæ differentia, ut rem nomi-
Manus, Domus. nat,

Estque { *Substantivum*, quod per se in Oratione estque
subsistit, & nihil addi postulat ad suam Substanti-
significationem exprimendam; ut, *Ho-* vum,
mo: vel
Adjectivum, quod Substantivo indiget ad *Adjectivum*
suam significationem exprimendam; ut,
Bonus.

Substantivum indicat quid sit rei; ut, *Equus.*

Adjectivum indicat quale sit rei; ut, *Albus.*

Quorum { *Proprium*, quod rem uni individuo pro- *Proprium*
utrumque { priam significat; ut, *Carolus, Londinum*
est, { *Thamisis, Anglus, Scotus.*
{ *Commune*, sive Appellativum, quod rem *Commune*
multis communem signifi- *cat; ut, Ho-*
mo, *Urbs, Fluvius, Regio, Magnus.*

Accidunt Nomini, { *Casus.*
Pronomini, & { *Genus.*
Participio, { *Declinatio.*
{ *Comparatio.*

Chap. 3.
Chap. 4. *Ejus sunt*
Chap. 11.
Chap. 17.

Chap. 3.

Chap. 3. Of Case.

A Case is the special ending of a Noun, Pronoun or Participle.

Six Cases;

There be Six cases in both numbers.

The Nominative;

1. The *Nominative* case is the first word whereby we name any thing, and it goeth before the Verbe, and answereth to the question *who*, or *what*? as, *Magister docet*, the master teacheth.

Genitive;

2. The *Genitive* case signify's whose a thing is, and answereth to the question *whose* or *whereof*? as *Disciplina Magistri*, the learning of the master, or the master's learning.

Dative;

3. The *Dative* attributes, or gives something to one; and answereth to the question *to whom* or *to what*; as, *Do librum Magistro*, I give a book to the Master.

Accusative;

4. The *Accusative* case follows the Verbe, and signify's whereunto the Action of the Verbe referreth; and answereth to the question, *whom* or *what*? as *Amo Magistrum*, I love the Master.

Vocative;

5. The *Vocative* case is used in calling or speaking to; as, *O Magister*, O Master.

Ablative.

6. The *Ablative* case is commonly joyned with a Preposition that serveth thereunto; and answereth to the question *from whom*, or *from what*? and the like; as, *Accepi librum à Magistro*, I received a book from the Master.

The *Nominative* case is sometimes called the *right*, or *straight case*, and the rest *oblique* or *thwart cases*, because their endings swerve from the *Nominative*.

Chap. 4. Of Gender.

Gender is the differencing of Sex in respect of Speech.

For

Cap. 3. De Casu.

Casus est specialis Nominis, Pronominis, aut Participii terminatio.

Sunt autem sex casus in utroque numero:

1. **Nominativus** est prima vox, quæ rem aliquam nominans: præcedit autem Verbum, & respondet questioni *Quis*, aut *Quid?* ut, *Magister docet.*

Sex casus
Nominativus;

2. **Genitivus** significat ejus sit res quæpiam, & respondet questioni *Cujus?* ut *Doctrina Magistri.*

Genitivus;

3. **Dativus** quid cuiquam attribuit, & respondet questioni *Cui?* ut, *De liberum Magistro.*

Dativus;

4. **Accusativus** sequitur Verbum, utpote in quem actio Verbi immediate transit, & respondet questionibus, *Quem*, vel *Quid?* ut *Amo Magistrum.*

Accusativus;

5. **Vocativus** vocandis compellandisque personis accommodatur; ut, *O Magister.*

Vocativus;

6. **Ablativus** conjungitur ferè præpositioni Ablativo inservienti; & respondit questionibus, *à quo*, & *hinc*. ut, *Accepi librum à Magistro.*

Ablativus.

Nominativus aliquando *Rectus casus* dicitur: ceteri verò *Obliqui*, quod eorum terminationes *Restant à Nominativo*;

Cap. 4. De Genere.

Genus est secundus discretio rationis sermonis;

Discernit

For it make's a difference berwixt Nouns that are used as *Hees* or *Shees*, thereby to know the agreement of the Substantive or Adjective.

Seven
Genders.

Genders of Nouns be seven; whereof the three first may not unfily be termed *Simple*, and the four last *Compound* Genders.

They are known by their Articles (or notes) which are borrowed of the Pronoun, and be thus declined.

Singulariter		Mas.	Fœm.	Neut.	Pluraliter	Masc.	Fœm.	Neut.
	Nom.	<i>Hic</i>	<i>Hæc</i>	<i>Hoc</i>		<i>Hi</i>	<i>Hæ</i>	<i>Hæc</i>
	Gen.	<i>Huius</i>	<i>Huius</i>	<i>Huius</i>		<i>Horum</i>	<i>Harum</i>	<i>Idorum</i>
	Dat.	<i>Huic</i>	<i>Huic</i>	<i>Huic</i>		<i>His</i>	<i>His</i>	<i>His</i>
	Acc.	<i>Hunc</i>	<i>Hanc</i>	<i>Hoc</i>		<i>hos</i>	<i>has</i>	<i>Hæc</i>
	Voc.							
	Abl.	<i>Hôc</i>	<i>Hac</i>	<i>Hôc</i>		<i>His</i>	<i>His</i>	<i>His</i>

Masculine.

1. The *Masculine* gender is of Nouns which are given to *Hees*; and is declined with *Hic*; as, *Hic vir*, a Man.

Feminine.

2. The *Feminine* gender is of Nouns which are given to *Shees*; and is declined with *Hæc*; as *Hæc mulier*, a Woman.

Neuter.

3. The *Neuter* is of Nouns which are given to things that are accounted neither *Hees* nor *Shees*; and is declined with *Hoc*; as, *Hoc Saxum*, a Stone.

Common of two.

4. The *Common of two* is made of the *Masculine* and the *Feminine* joyned together; and is declined with *Hic* and *Hæc*; as, *Hic & Hæc Parens* a Parent.

Common of three.

5. The *Common of three* is made of all three simple Genders.

Discernit enim inter ea nomina, quæ tanquam
mares aut fœminæ construuntur, propter conveni-
entiam Substantivi & Adjectivi cognoscendam.

Genera Nominum sunt septem: quorum tria prima Genera
non ineptè *Simplicia*, quatuor vero postrema *Compo-* septem.
Sta dici queant.

Dignoscuntur autem suis *Articulis* (sive notis) qui
Pronominibus accipiuntur, & in hunc modum vari-
antur.

Singulariter		Mas.	Fœm.	Neut.	Pluraliter	Masc.	Fœm.	Neut.
	Nom.	Hic	Hæc	Hoc		Hi	Hæ	Hæc
	Gen.	Huius	Huius	Huius		Horum	Harum	Horum
	Dat.	Huic	Huic	Huic		His	His	His
	Acc.	Hunc	Hanc	Hoc		Hos	Has	Hæc
	Voc.							
	Abl.	Hôc	Hac	Hôc		His	His	His

1. *Masculinum* genus maribus attribuitur; cuius *Masculi-*
nota est *Hic*; ut *Hic vir*. *num*.

2. *Fœmininum* fœminis attribuitur; cuius nota est *Fœmini-*
Hæc; ut *Hæc mulier*. *num*.

3. *Neutrum* nec maribus, nec fœminis attribuitur; *Neutrum*.
cuius nota est *Hoc*; ut, *Hoc saxum*.

4. *Commune duorum* ex Masculino & Fœminino *Commune*
componitur; cuius nota est *Hic & Hæc*; ut, *Hic & duorum*.
Hæc Parens.

5. *Commune trium* ex omnibus simplicibus generi- *Commune*
bus *trium*.

Genders joyned together; and is declined with *Hic*, *Hæc*, and *Hoc*; as, *Hic, Hæc & Hoc Felix*, Happy.

Doubtful. 6. The *Doubtful* may be either the Masculine or the Feminine; and is declined with *Hic vel Hæc*; as, *Hic vel Hæc Dies*, a Day.

Epicene. 7. The *Epicene* comprehendeth both Sexes under one Article; as, *Hic Passer*, a Sparrow. And in this Gender, to avoid ambiguity, we use to express the Sex by *He*. or *She*; as, *Passer mas* a He, or Cock-sparrow: *Passer fœmina* a She, or Hen-sparrow.



Propria quæ Maribus :

O R,
WILLIAM LILIE'S Rule
OF THE
GENDERS of NOUNS.

Rules of the
Genders of
Nouns are

I. General.

I. Of Sub-

stantives

proper.

1. Proper

names.

1. Of Gods,

2. Of Men.

3. Of Rivers

4. Of months

5. Of winds

are of the

Masculine

Gender.

CHAP. 5.

Of the General Rules of Proper Names

I. *Proper Names which are given to Males, Hees, are Masculines :* As 1. Of Gods; Bacchus, chi. Mars, tis. Apollo, inis. 2. Of Men; as, Cato, tōnis. Virgilius, lii. 3. Of Rivers; Tybris, bris. Orontes, tis. 4. Of Months; as, October, bris. 5. Of winds; as, Lybs, ybis. Notus, Auster, stri, the South-winde.

II. *Pro*

bus componitur; cujus nota est *Hic, Hec & Hoc*; ut, *Hic, Hec & Hoc Felix*.

6. *Dubium* aut Masculinum aut Fœmininum Articulum indifferenter assumere potest; cujus nota est *Hic vel Hec*; ut, *Hic vel Hec Dies*, Dubium.

7. *Epicœnum* sub uno Articulo utrumque sexum Epicœnum complectitur; ut, *Hic Passer*. Hoc autem in genere, ad vitandam ambiguitatem, sexum exprimere solemus per marem & fœminam; ut, *Passer mas, Passer fœmina*.



Propria quæ Maribus :

VEL,

GULIELMI LILII Regulæ
DE
GENERIBUS NOMINUM.

CAP. 5.

De Regulis Generalibus Propriorum.

Propria, quæ Maribus tribuuntur, Mascula dicas; ut sunt 1. *Divorum*, Mars, Bacchus, Apollo. 2. *Virorum*;

ut, Cato, Virgilius; 3. *Fluviorum*; ut, Tiberis, Orontes.

4. *Mensium*; ut, October. 5. *Ventorum*; ut, Lybs, Notus, (Auster.

Regulæ de
generibus
nominum.

I Generales

I. Substan-

tivorum

Propriorum.

1. Propria,

1. Deorum

2. Virorum

3. Fluviorum

4. Mensium

5. Ventorum

mascula
sunt.

2. Proper Names,

1. Of Goddesses.

2. Of Women.

3. Of Cities.

4. Of Regions,

5. Of Islands,

are Feminine.

II. Proper Names shewing the female kinde are Feminines; as, 1. Of Goddesses, as Juno, nōnis. Venus, nēris. 2. Of Women, as Anna, nē. Philotis, lotidis. 3. Of Cities, as Elis, lēdis, Opus, pūntis. 4. Of Regions, as Græcia, æ. Persis, idis. 5. of Islands, as Creta, tæ; Britannia, nīæ. Cyprus, pri.

But some names of Cities are excepted, as, 1. These Masculines, Sulmo, mōnis. Agragas, gantis. 2. Some Neuters, as Argos, gi. Tibur, būris. Præneste, stis, and 3. Anxur xūris, which is both of the Masculine and Neuter gender.

Chap. 6.

Of the General Rules of Common Names.

II. General of Common Names

I. Common names of Trees are Feminines.

Common names of Trees are of the Feminine gender, as *Alnus*, nī, an Alder. *Cupressus*, fī, a Cypress. *Cedrus*, dri, a Cedar. But *Pinus*, nī, a Pine. *Oleaster*, firi, a wilde Olive are Masculines. *Siler*, lēris, an Elder. *Suber*, bēris, a Cork tree. Thus with the Frankincense tree, *Robur*, ōris, an Oak, and *Acer cēris*, a Maple, are Neuter,

2. Common names of Birds, Beasts and Fish be Epicenes.

3. All that end in *um*, and that change not there ending, are Neuters.

II. The names of Birds, as *Passer*, ēris, a Sparrow. *Hirundo*, dīnis, a Swallow. Of Beasts, as *Tigris*, grīdis, a Tiger. *Vulpis*, is, a Fox. And of Fish as, *Ostrea*, e, a Oyster. *Cetus*, is, a whale, are of the Epicene gender.

III. But here is to be noted, that of all the Nouns afore-mentioned, every Noun (except proper names of Men, and Women) in *um* is of the Neuter gender. And so are Nouns that change not their ending.

Propria ſæmineum referentia nomina ſexum,
 Fæmineo generi tribuuntur: ſive 1. Dearum
 Sunt; ut, Juno, Venus; 2. Mulierum; ſeu, Anna, Philotis
 3. Urbium; ut, Elis, Opus. 4. Regionum ut, Græcia, Perſis.
 5. Inſula item nomen; cen, Creta, Britannia, Cyprus.

2. Propria,
 1. Dearum,
 2. Mulierum,
 3. Urbium,
 4. Regionum,
 5. Inſularum, Fœminia ſunt.

Excipienda tamen quedam ſunt Urbium; ut iſta
 1. Mæſcula, Sulmo, Agragas; 2. quedã neutralia, ut, Argos
 Tybur, Preneste; & genus 3. Anxur quod dat utrumque.

Chap. 6.

De Regulis Generalibus Appellativorum.

I. **A**ppellativa arborum erunt muliebria; ut, Alnus,
 Cupreſſus, Cedrus, Maſ pinus, maſ olcaſter.
 Et ſunt neutra, filer, ſuber, thus, robur, acérque.

II. General
 les Appel
 lativorum.
 1. Appella
 tiva Arbo
 rum ſunt
 fœminina,

II. **S**unt etiam volucrum; cen, paſſer, hirundo; ſerarum
 ut, Tygris, Vulpes; & piſcium; ut, oſtrea cetus,
 Diſta Epicœna; quibus vox ipſa genus ſeret aptum.

2. Appella
 tiva volu
 crum, ſera
 rum, & pi
 ſcium Epi
 cœna ſunt.
 3. Omne in
 um, & in
 variabele
 ſunt neutra

III. Attamen ex cunctis, quæ diximus ante notandum,
 omne quod exit in urn, (ſc. hominum modò Propria tollas)
 eſſe genus neutrum; ſic invariabile nomen.

a. Speciall
Rules of
Common
Names are
three.

But now will I speak in order touching all other Common names, or which are as Common names for in these the Gender is always known by the Genitive case; as the three special rules following will shew.

Chap. 7.

Of the First Special Rule.

3.
A Noun
not encreas-
ing, is Fe-
minine.

A Noun not encreasing in the Genitive case singular, is of the Feminine Gender; as, *Caro*, *carnis*, *Flesh*. *Capra*, *caprae*, *a she Goat*. *Nubes*, *nubis*, *a cloud*.

Except
Masculines

I. M Any Names belonging to Men, ending in *as*, are of the Masculine gender; as, *Scriba*, *a Scribe*. *Assecla*, *clae*, *a Page*. *Scurra*, *rae*, *a Scouter*. *Rabula*, *lae*, *a Braboler*. *Lixa*, *xae*, *a Scullion*. *Lanista*, *tae*, *a Fencer*. 2. Such as come from the first Greek Declension and ends in *as*; as, *Satrapa*, *pe*, *a Peer*. Or in *es*; as, *Athletes*, *tae*, *a Wrestler*. And such as are made of them in *a*; as, *Satrapa*, *a*, *Ableta*, *tae*. 3. Likewise *verres*, *ris*, *a boar=pig*. *Natalis*, *lis*, *a birth=day*. *Aqualis*, *lis*, *an ewer*. 4. Words that are compounded of *as* (and signify more than a pound weight; as, *centussis*, *sis*, *an hundred pound weight*. 5. Add to these, *Lienis*, *nis*, *the milt*. *Orbis*, *a roundle*. *Callis*, *lis*, *a path*. *caulis*, *lis*, *a stalk*. *foliis*, *lis*, *a pair of bellows*. *collis*, *lis*, *a little hill*. *mensis*, *sis*, *a month*. *ensis*, *sis*, *a sword*. *fustis*, *sis*, *a club*. *funis*, *nis*, *a rope*. *panis*, *nis*, *bread*. *penis*, *nis*, *a man's yard*. *crinis*, *nis*, *hair*. *ignis*, *nis*, *fire*. *cassis*, *sis*, *a helmet*. *fascis*, *cis*, *a faggot*. *corris*, *ris*, *a firebrand*. *lentis*, *a thorn*. *piscis*, *cis*, *a fish*. *unguis*, *guis*, *a nail*. *vermis*, *mis*, *a worm*. *vestis*, *cis*, *a door=bar*. *postis*, *a post*. and *axis*, *xis*, *an axle tree*. 6. Nouns ending in

1. *er*, } *Venter*, *tris*, *a bellie*; } are of
in { *os*, } *as*, { *Logos*, *gi*, *a word*; } Masculine
2. *us*, } *Annus*, *ni*, *a year*; } gender.

Sed nunc de reliquis, quæ Appellativa vocantur, Aut quæ sunt tanquam Appellativa, ordine dicam: Nam genus his semper dignoscitur ex Genitivo: Infra ut monstrabit Specialis Regula triplex.

Regulæ speciales Appellativorum sunt tres.

Cap. 7.

De Prima Regula Speciali, & ejus Exceptionibus.

Nomen non crescens Genitivo, *cei*, caro, carnis; Capra, capræ, nubes, nubis; genus est muliebre.

1. Nomen non crescens, est Muliebre.

1. **M**ascula nomina in a dicuntur multa virorum;

Excipiuntur Masculina.

Ut, Scriba, asclecla, scurra, & rabula, lixa, lanista.

2. Mascula Græcorum quot Declinatio prima

Fundit in as & in es, & ab illis quot per a fiunt;

Ut, Satrapas, Satrapæ, Athletas, Athleta. 3. Leguntur

Mascula item verres, natalis, aqualis. 4. Ab asse

Nata; ut, centussis. 5. Conjunge lienis, & orbis,

Callis, caulis, follis, collis, mensis, & ensis,

Fustis, funis, panis, penis, crinis, & ignis,

Cassis, fascis, torris, sentis, piscis, & unguis,

Et vermis, vectis, postis, societur & axis.

6. Mascula in i, er, *cei* venter; in os, vel 2. us; ut, (logos, annus.

Faming

YET these are Feminines. 1. *Mater, tris*, a mother. 2. *Humus, mi*, the ground : *domus, mi, mūs*, an house or home : *Alvus, vi*, a panch : *colus, si, lūs*, a distaff : *ficus, ci, cūs*, a fig : *acus, cūs*, a needle : *porticus, cūs*, a gallerie : *tribus, būs*, a tribe : *socrus, cri*, a mother in law : *nurus, rūs*, a daughter in law : *manus, nūs*, a hand : *idus iduum*, the Ides of the month : *anus, nūs*, an old woman : *vannus, ni*, a van. 3. To these you may add Greek words which turn *os* into *us*, as *papyrus, ri*, paper : *antidotus, ti*, an antidote : *costus, sti*, the herb cost=Marie : *diphthongus, gi*, a diphthong : *byssus, si*, fine flax : *abyssus, si*, an abyss : *crystallus, li*, cristall : *Synodus, di*, a Synod : *sapphirus, ri*, a Sapphire : *eremus, mi*, a wilderness : *arctus, sti*, Charls=wain : with many more, which would be long to set down.

Neuters

II. Nouns ending in *e*, whose Genitive makes *is*, are of the Neuter gender ; as, *Mare, is*, the sea : *rete, ris*, a net. And 2. Nouns that end in *on* ; as *barbiton, ti*, a Lute : or in *um* ; as *ovum, vi*, an egg. 3. *Hippomanes, nis*, Mare=poison : *cacoëthes, this*, an evill custom : *virus*, poison : *pelagus, gi*, the sea. But 4. *Vulgus, gi*, the common people, is sometime Masculine, sometime Neuter :

Doubtfuls.

III. THese Nouns are of the Doubtfull gender ; *Talpa, pæ*, a mole : *dama, mæ*, a fallow deer : *canalis, li*, a Channel : *Balanus, ni*, mast : *finis, nis*, an end : *clunis, nis*, a buttock : *restis, sti*, a rope : *pennis, ni, nīs*, victuals : *amnis, amnis*, a river. *Pampinus, ni*, a vine=leaf : *corbis, bis*, a basket : *linter, tris*, a cock=boat : *torquis, quis*, a gold chain : *specus, cūs*, a den : *anguis, guis*, a snake : *ficus, ci*, a pile : *phaselus, si*, a barge : *Lecythus, thi*, an oil=glass : *pharus, ri*, a watch=tower : and *Paradisus, si*, Paradise,

IV. Nouns

Fæminei generis sunt 1. mater, 2. humus domus, alvus,
 Et colus, & quarta pro fructu ficus, acúsque,
 Porticus, atque tribus, focrus, nurus & manus, idus;
 Huc anus addenda est, huc mystica vannus Iacchi.
 3. His jungas os in us vertentia Græca, Papyrus,
 Antidorus, costus, diphthongus, byssus, abyssus,
 CrySTALLUS, Synodus, sapphirus, eremus & arcus,
 cum multis aliis quæ nunc perscribere longum est.

II. Neutrum nomen in e, si gignit is; ut mare, rete, Narra.
 2. Et quot in on vel in um sunt; ut, barbiton, ovum.
 3. Est neutrum hippomanes, genus & neutrû cacoëthes,
 Et virus, pelagus. 4. Neutrum modò, mas modò vulgus.

III. Incerti generis sunt talpa & dama, canalis, Dubit.
 Et balanus, finis, clunis, restis, penus, amnis;
 Pampinus, & corbis, linter, torquis, specus, anguis,
 Pro morbo ficus, fœi, dans; atque Thaselus,
 Lecythus, ac atomus, grossus, pharus, & Paradisus.

IV. Compositum

Commons
of two,

IV. **N**ouns derived of Verbs, and ending in *a* are of the Common-of-two-Gender; as, *Grajugeta, na, a* Grecian born, of *gigno* to beget; *Agricola, la, a* husband-man, of *colo* to till; *advena, na, a* stranger, of *venio* to come. To these add *Senex, nis, an* old man; *auriga, ge, a* waggoner; *vena, ne, a* bondslave; *sodalis, lis, a* companion; *vates, tis, a* Prophet; *exterritus, a* banished man; *Patruelis, lis, an* Uncles son; *Perduellus, lis, an* enemy in war; *Affinis, nis, a* kinsman; *juvenis, nis, a* youth; *testis, tis, a* witness; *civis, vis, a* citizen; *canis, nis, a* dog; *hostis, tis, a* foe, or enemy.

Chap 3.

Of the second special Rule, and its Exceptions.

II.
A noun
increasing
long is
Feminine.

It the last syllable but one of the genitive case singular increasing, sound long, a noun is of the Feminine gender; as, *Pietas, pietatis, godlines*; *virtus, virtutis, virtue*.

Except.
Malesines

I. **C**ertain nouns of one syllable are Malesines; as, *Sal, salis, salt*; *sol, solis, the Sun*; *ren, renis, the kidney*; *splen, splenis, the spleen*; *Car, caris, a man of Caria*; *Ser, seris, a man of Seres*; *vir, viri, a man*; *vas, vadis, a surety*; as, *as, assis, a pound weight*; *mas, maris, a male*; *Bes, bessis, eight ounces*; *præs, prædis, a surety*; *pes, pedis, a foot*; *glis, gliris, a dormouse*; *mos, moris, a manner*; *flos, floris, a flower*; *ros, rovis, dew*; *Tros, trovis, a Trojan*; *mus, muris, a mouse*; *dens, dentis, a tooth*; *mons, montis, a mountain*; *pons, pontis, a bridge*; *fons, fontis, a spring*; *Seps, septis, a serpent*; *gryps, gryphis, agryffon*; *Thrax, thracis, a Thracian*; *Rex Regis, a King*; *grex, gregis, a flock*; and *Phryx, Phrygis, a Phrygian*. 2. Nouns of many syllables in *n*; as, *Acarnan, nanis, one of Acarnania*; *lichen, chénis, liwertwort*; *delphin, phinis, a dolphin*. 3. Nouns that end in *o* and signifie a body; as, *Leo, ónis, a lion*; *curculio, ónis, a weevil*; so also *senio, ónis, size*; *ternio, ónis, trey*; *sermo, mónis, speech*. 4. Nouns

IV. *Compositum à verbo dans à commune duorum est, Communia.*

Grajugena, à gigno; agricola, à colo; id advena monstrat, *Excipe hæc Puerpera.*

A venio : adde senex, auriga, & verna, sodalis,

Vates, extorris, paruelis, perque duellis,

Affinis, juvenis, testis, civis, canis, hostis,

Cap. 3. De secundâ Speciali Regulâ, & ejus Exceptionibus.

Nomen, crescentis penultima si genitivi
Syllaba acuta sonat, velut hæc pietas, pietatis,
Virtus, virtutis monstrat, genus est muliebre.

II.
Nomen
acutè
crescens est
muliebre.

I **M**ascula dicuntur monosyllaba nomina quedâ,

Excipiuntur
Masculina.

Sal, sol, ren, & splen, Car, Ser, vir, vas-vadis, as, mas,

Beî, Cres, præ, & pes, glis-gliris habens genitivo,

Mes, flos, ros, & Tros, mus, dens, mons, pons,
simul & fons,

Seps pro serpente, gryps, Thrax, Rex, grex gregis, &
Phryx:

2. Mascula sunt etiam polysyllaba in n, ut, Acarnan,

Lichen, & delphin : 3. & in o signantia corpus,

Ut leo, curculio, sic senio, ternio, sermo.

4. Mascula

4. Nouns $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} er \\ or \\ os \end{array} \right\}$ as $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} crater, t\acute{e}ris \text{ a goblet} \\ conditor, t\acute{o}ris \text{ a builder} \\ Heros, r\acute{o}is \text{ a Nobleman.} \end{array} \right\}$ are masculine.

5. So are also *torrens, ventis* a brook: *nefrens, entis* and *dis* a pig: *Oriens, entis* the East: with many in *dens*, as *bidens, dentis*, a two grained fork. 6. Add to these *gigas, gantis*, a giant: *Elephas, phantis* an Elephant: *adamus, mantis* an adamant: *Garamas, mantis* one of *Garamatia*: *tapes, p\acute{e}tis* tapestry: *lebes, b\acute{e}tis* a cauldron: *Cures, y\acute{e}tis* one of *Cures*: *Magnes, n\acute{e}tis* a loadstone: *meridies, di\acute{e}i* noon. 7. Nouns compounded of *as* and signify part of *as*; as, *doctrans, antis* nine ounces: *sems, issis* half a pound: 8. To these add *Sampis, nitis* a Sampite: *hydrops, dr\acute{o}pis* the dropsc: *nycticorax, \acute{a}cis* a night-raven: *vervex, v\acute{e}cis* a wether: *phoenix, n\acute{e}cis* a Phoenix: *bombyx, byeis* a silk-worm: Yet of these *Syren, r\acute{e}nis* a mermaid: and also *soror, \acute{o}ris* a sister: and *uxor, \acute{o}ris* a wife are feminines.

Neuters.

II. **T**Hese nouns of one syllable be of the Neuter Gender, *mel, mellis* honie: *fel, sellis* gall: *lac, lactis* milk: *far, farris* bread-corn: *ver, veris* the spring: *cor, cordis* a heart: *vas, vasis* a vessel: *os, ossis* a bone: and *os, oris* a mouth: *rus, ruris* the countrey: *thus, thuris* frankincense: *ius, juris* right: *crus, cruris* the leg: *pus, puris* corrupt matter. 2. Nouns in *al* as *capital, talis* a quoit. And in *ar*, as *laquear, aris* a vault. 3. *Halec, lecis* an herring, is of the feminine and neuter gender.

III. These

4. *Mascula in er, or, & os; seu crater, conditor, heros;*
 5. *Sic torrens, nefrens, oriens, cum pluribus in dens,*
Quale bidens, quando pro instrumento reperitur.
 6. *Adde gigas, elephas, adamas, Garamásque tapésque,*
Atque lebes, Cures, magnes unumque meridi-
Es, nomen quinta. 7 Et quæ componentur ab affe,
Ut dodrans, semis. 8. Jungantur Mascula Samnis,
Hydrops nycticorax, thorax, & mascula vervex,
Phoenix, & bombyx, pro vermiculo. Attamen ex his
Sunt muliebri genus, Syren, nec non soror, uxor.

II. *Sunt neutralia & hæc monosyllaba nomina, mel, sel, Neutra*
Lac, far, ver, cor, æs, vas vasis, os-offis, & oris,
Rus, thus, jus, crus, pus, Et in al polysyllaba, in árque,
et capital, laquear: Neutrum haec, & muliebri;

III. *Sunt*

Doubtfuls. III. **T**Hese nouns be of the Doubtful gender: *Python ónis*, a spirit of Propheſie (*serpens*, *pentis* a serpent: *bubo, bónis* an owl: *rudens*, *dentis*, a cable: *grus*, *gruis* a crane: *Perdix*, *dicis* a partridge, *lynx, cis* a spotted beast: *limax, mácis* a ſnail: *ſtirps, pis*, a ſtock; *calx, cis* an heel: *dies, diei* a day, is onely masculine in the plural number.

Comm. 15

IV. **T**Hese nouns be of the Common of-two gender: *Parents, ventis* a parent: *author, toris* an Author: *infans, fantis*, a babe: *adolescens, ſcenis*, a youth: *dux, ducis*, a leader: *illex, légis*, a lawleſs perſon: *heres, rēdis*, an heir: *exlex, légis*, an outlaw: Words compounded of *ſions, tis* a forehead: as, *biſions, tis*, one having two foreheads: *cuſtos, ſtōdis*, a keeper, *bos, bovis* a neat: *fur, furis* a thief: *ſus, ſuis*, a ſwine: *sacerdos, dotis* a Priest:

Chap 9.

Of the third Special Rule, and its Exceptions.

III.
A noun
increaſing
ſhort is of
the Masculine
gender

A Noun is of the masculine gender, if the laſt ſyllable but one of the genitive caſe ſingular increaſing, ſound ſhort; as *sanguis, ſanguinis*, blood.

Except
Feminines

I. **A** Noun of more than two ſyllables, ending in *do*, which make's *dinis*, as *dulcedo, dinis*, ſweetneſs; and in *go* which make's *ginis*, as *compago, ginis*, a joint, are of the feminine gender, 2. Add *Virgo, ginis*, a maid; *grando, dinis*, hail; *fides, dei*, faith; *compes, pedis*, fetters; *teges, getis*, a mat; *seges, getis*, ſtanding corn; *arbor, boris*, a tree; *hyems, emis*, winter; *bacchar, charis*,

III **S**unt dubia hæc Python, scrobs, serpens, bubo, Dubia
rudens, grus,

Perdix, lynx, lymax, stirps, pro trunco, pedis & ca'x:

Adde dies numero tantùm mas esto secundo.

IV. **S**unt Commune, parens, autôrque, infans, adole- Communia
scens.

Dux, illex, hæres, exlex; à fronte creata,

ut bifrons; custos, bos, fur, sus, atque sacerdos;

Cap. 9.

De tertia Speciali Regula, & ejus exceptionibus.

Nomen, crescentis penultima si genitivi,
Sit gravis, ut sanguis, genitivo sanguinis, est mas.

III.
Nomen
graviter
crescens, est
mascu-
linum.

I. **F**eminei generis sit hyperdissyllabon in do,
Quod dinis; atque in go, quod dat ginis in genitivo
Id tibi dulcedo faciens dulcedinis, idque
Monstrat compago, compaginis: 2. Adjice virgo,
Grando, fides, compes, teges, & leges, arbor, hyemisque;

Excipiun-
tur Fœmī-
nina.

Sic

charis, the herb *Ladi's-globe* or *clowns-spike*: *indon*, *dōnis*, fine *linne*: *Gorgon*, *gōnis*, the monster *Gorgon*: *icon*, *cōnis*, an *image*: *Amazon*, *zōnis*, an *Amazon*. 3. Greek nouns ending in *as*, *as*, *lampas*, *pādis*, a *lamp*. Or in *is*, *as*, *jaspis*, *spādis* *jasper*: *caspis*, *sādis*, an *helmet*: *culpis*, *spīdis*, a *spear-point*. 4. One word in *us*, *as*, *pecus*, *cūdis*, *small-cattle*. 5. To these add, *forsex*, *ficus*, a *pair of shears*: *pellex licū*, an *harlot*: *Carex*, *ricis* *sedg*: *supellex*, *lētilis* *household-stuff*: *appendix*, *dicis* an *appendice*: *Histris*, *fricis* an *hedghog*: *coxendix*, *dicis* an *hip*: *filiis*, *licis* *fern*. 6. *Halcyon*, *onis* a *kings fisher*: and *mulier*, *liēris* a *Woman* may be put in this rank, or rule.

Neuters.

II. **A** Noun, signifying a thing without life, is of the neuter gender, if it end in *a*; *as*, *Problema*, *mātis*, a *problem*: In *en*, *as*, *omen*, *minis*, *luck*. In *ar*, *as*, *jubar*, *bāris* the *sun-beam*: In *ur*, *as*, *jecur*, *cōris* the *liber*: In *us*, *as*, *onus*, *nēris* a *burden*; In *ut*, *as*, *occiput*, *cipiū* is the *hinder part of the head*. 2. Yet of these, *pecten*, *stinis* a *comb*: *surfur*, *fūris* *bran* are masculines. 3. These are neuters, *Cadaver*, *vēris* a *carcase*: *verber*, *bēris* a *stripe*: *iter*, *tinēris*, a *journey*: *suber*, *bēris*, *cork*: *tuber*, *bēris* a *toad-stool*: *uber*, *bēris*, a *dug*: *gingiber*, *bēris* *ginger*: *laser*, *seris* the herb *Benjamin*: *cicer*, *ceris*, a *vetch*: *piper*, *pēris* *pepper*: *papaver*, *vēris* *popple*: *fiser*, *seris* a *parsnip*: *filer*, *leris* an *osier*. 4. *Aquor*, *ōris* the *sea*: *marmor*, *ōris* a *marble*: and *ador*, *dōris* *wheat*, are neuters. 5. And so is *pecus*, *cattle* when it make's *pecōris*.

Doubtfuls. III. **T**Hese nouns are of the Doubtfull gender; *cardo*, *dānis* the *hinge of a door*: *margo*, *gānis* a *margent*: *cinis*, *nēris* *ashes*: *ober*, *bicis*, a *bolt*: *pulvis*,

Sic bacchar, findon, Gorgon, icon, & Amazon.

3. *Gracula in as vel in is finita ; ut, Lampas, Iaspis,*

Et cassis, cussis. 4. Vox una pecus pecudis dans.

5. *His forfex, pellex, carex, simul atque supellex,*

Appendix, histrix, coxendix, adde filixque.

6. *Halcyon, & mulier possunt hâc-classe reponi;*

II. *Est neutrale genus signans rem non animatam, Neutro*

*Nomen in a ; ut, probléma ; en, ut omen ; ar, ut jubarg
ur dans,*

ut jecur, us, ut onus, pur, ut occiput. 2. Attamen ex his

mascula sunt pecten, fursur. 3. Sunt neutra cadaver,

Verber, iter, suber, profungo ruber, & uber,

Gingiber, & laser, cicer, & piper, atque papaver,

ut fiser, atque filer. 4. Neutra æquor, marmor, adôrque,

Atque pecus, quando pecoris facit in Genitivo.

I. *Sunt dubii generis cardo, margo, cinis, obex, Dutta*

D

Pulvis

pulvis, veris, dust; *adeps*, *dipis*, fat; *forceps*, *cipis* pair of tongs; *pumex*, *micis*, a pumice-stone, *rames micis*, *buttness*; *anas*, *nat* is a duck, *imbrex bricis* gutter-tile, *culex licis* a gnat, *natrix tricis* a water-snake, *onyx mychis* the nail of ones hand, with compounds, and *flex licis* a flint, though these be then used as masculines.

Commons; IV. **T**Hese Nouns be of the common of two genders. *vigil gilis* a watchman, *pugil gilis* a champion, *exsul sulis* a banished man, *praesul sulis* a superintendent, *Homo minis* a man, *nemo* wants the Genitive case, and in the Dative makes *nenimi* no body, *martyr tris* a martyr, *Ligur guris* one of Ligurian, *augur guris* a soothsayer, *Arcas cadis* an Arcadian, *Antistes stis* a President, *miles lis* a souldier, *pedes ditis* a footman, *interpre pretis* an interpreter, *comes mitis* a companion: *hospes spitis* an host, *ghost*, *ales lis* a bird of wing, *Praeses sidis* a President, *Princeps cipis* a Prince, *auceps cupis* a fowler, *eques quitis* an horseman, *obses sidis* an hostage. 2. And many other nouns derived of verbs; as, *conjugis* an husband of a wife, *judex dicis* a judge, *vindex dicis* a revenger, *opifex ficis* a workman, and *aurespex spicis* a soothsayer.

Chap. 10.

Of the Genders of Adjectives.

II. General Rules of Adjectives

1. Of one termination.
2. Of two terminations.

I. **A**Djectives of one termination are of all the three genders, as, *hic*, *haec*, & *hoc* *felix licis* happy, *hic*, *haec* & *hoc* *audax datus* bold.

II. Adjectives, if they have two terminations, the first is of the Common of two gender; the second is of the Neuter; as, *hic* & *haec* *omnis*, & *hoc* *omne* all.

ulvis, adeps, forceps, pumex, ramex, anas, imbrex,

Adde culex, natrix, & onyx, cum prole, filéxque.

Quamvis hæc melius vult mascula diciet usus.

IV. *Communis generis sunt ista, vigil, pugil, exsul, Communis,*

Præsul, homo, nemo, martyr, Ligur, augur, & Acras,

Antistes, miles, pedes, interpretes, comes, hospes,

Sic ales, præses, princeps, auceps, eques, obses,

Atque alia à verbis que nomina multa creantur;

Ut, conjux, judex, vindex, opifex, & aruspex.

Cap. 10.

De Generibus Adjectivorum.

I. *Adjectiva unam duntaxat habentia vocem,*

Ut felix, audax, retinent genus omne sub unâ.

II. *Sub geminâ si voce cadant, velut omnis, & omne,*

Vox commune duâ prior est, Vox altera neutrum.

D 2

III. 46

II. Regula
generales
Adjective-
rum.

1. Unius
vocis.

2. Gemine
vocis.

3 Of three terminations.

Except
1. Adjectives like Substantives.

2. Of Adjectives that are declined by *er* and *is*.

III. But if Adjectives do vary three terminations, as, *Sager, sacra, sacrum, holy*: the first termination Masculine, the second is Feminine, and the third Neuter.

1. But some are, by declining, almost Substantive yet by nature and use, rather Adjectives: such as *Pauper peris, poor*; *puber beris, of ripe age*; *degeneris, one that goes out of kinde*; *uber beris plentifull*; *dives vitis, rich*; *locuples plētis, wealthy*; *sosper spiritis, safe*; *comes mitis, a companion*; *superses sitis, a surbiter*, and some others which due reading will teach.

2. These Nouns have a certain manner of declining proper to themselves; *Campester* of the plain; *volucer* swift in flight; *celeber* famous, *celer* swift, *saluber* wholesome. To which add *Pedester* a footman, *equester* of an horseman; *paluster* of a fen; *alacer* cheerefull; *sylvester*, of wood. And these you shall decline thus; *Hic celer, celeris, hoc celere, swift*: or, *Hic and Hac celeris, hoc celere, swift, &c.*

Chap. II.

Of the first Declension.

DDeclension is the variation of a word by Cases.

There be five Declensions.

There be five declensions of nouns.
A Noun is known of what Declension it is by ending of the Genitive case singular; for the

nitive case	of the	1 st	2 ^d	3 ^d	4 th
ends in		<i>a</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>us</i>

III. At si tres variant voces, sacer, et sacra sacrum;

Vox prima est mas, altera femina, tertia neutrum;

1. At sunt quæ flexu propè Substantiva vocares;

Adjectiva tamen naturâ usûque reperta.

Talia sunt pauper, puber, cum degener, uber,

Et dives, locuples, sospes, comes, atque superstes;

Cum paucis aliis quæ lectio iusta docebit.

2. Hæc proprium quendâ sibi flexum adsciscere gaudent,

Campester, volucer, cèleber, celer, atque saluber:

Junge pedester, equester, & acer. junge paluster,

At alacer sylvester: At hæc tu sic variabis,

Hic celer, hæc céleris, neutro hoc célere; aut aliter sic,

Hic atq. hæc céleris, rursum hoc célere est tibi neutrû.

Cap. 11.

De Declinatione primâ.

Declinatio est variatio dictionis per Casus;

Sunt autem Declinationes nominum quinque.

Dignoscitur nomen cujus sit Declinationis ex terminatione genitivi singularis; definit enim genitivus | 1^{ma} | 2^{da} | 3^{ta} | 4^{ta} | 5^{ta} |

in | e | a | is | ñs | eñ |

D 3

Ge:

Adjectiva trium vocum, in prima sunt Masculini, in secunda feminini, in tertia neutrius generis.

Excl^o
r. Adjectiva propè Substantiva.

2. Adjectiva quæ per er & i variantur.

Declinationes sunt quinque.

The Genitive case is formed of the Nominative (which is the first word) by changing the termination; and other cases are formed of the Genitive.

The Vocative in the singular number; is, for the most part, like the Nominative; and in the plural, waies.

Nouns of the neuter gender have the Nominative, the Accusative, and Vocative cases alike in both numbers; which three cases end in *a* in the plural.

The Dative and Ablative plural are always alike.

The Genitive plural in many words, admits Syncope, i. e. the loss of a middle letter or syllable.

Nouns of the first declension are declined like *Musa*

The first Declension is of Latine nouns (for the most part Feminines) not encreasing, ending in *a* which are declined like *Musa*, a song.

The terminations of the first Declension are	Singularly in the	<div> <div> <div>Nominative</div> <div>Genitive</div> <div>Dative</div> <div>Accusative</div> <div>Vocative</div> <div>Ablative</div> </div> <div>} case,</div> </div>	<div> <div>a</div> <div>e</div> <div>e</div> <div>am</div> <div>a</div> <div>a</div> </div>	The Example, or Type thereof is	<div> <div>Musa</div> <div>Musæ</div> <div>Musæ</div> <div>Musam</div> <div>Musa</div> <div>Musa</div> </div>
	Plurally in the	<div> <div>Nominative</div> <div>Genitive</div> <div>Dative</div> <div>Accusative</div> <div>Vocative</div> <div>Ablative</div> </div> <div>} case,</div>	<div> <div>e</div> <div>arum</div> <div>is</div> <div>as</div> <div>e</div> <div>is</div> </div>	The Example, or Type thereof is	<div> <div>Musæ</div> <div>Musarum</div> <div>Musis</div> <div>Musas</div> <div>Musæ</div> <div>Musis</div> </div>

Prime Declension is termina-

Genitivus fit à Nominativo, qui est: prima vox
 uratâ terminatione; alii autem casus à Genitivo
 mantur.

Vocativus singularis plerumque similis est Nomina-
 vo; pluralis semper.

Nomina neutrius generis habent nominativum, ac-
 sativum, & vocativum similes in utroque numero;
 ui tres casus in plurali desinunt in *a*.

Dativus & Ablativus plurales semper sunt similes;

Genitivus pluralis in complurimis *Syncope*n admie-
 syt.

Prima Declinatio est nominum Latinorum (ple-
 unque foeminorum) non crescentium in *a*; quæ va-
 rantur sicut *Musa*.

Nomina
 Primæ va-
 riantur ut
Musa.

Primæ Declinationis terminationes sunt	Singulariter	{	Nominativo)	} casu	a		Musa
			Genitivo		e		Musæ
			Dativo		e		Musæ
			Accusativo		am		Musam
			Vocativo		a		Musa
			(Ablativo		â		Musâ
	Pluraliter,	{	Nominativo)	} casu	e		Musæ
			Genitivo		arum		Musarum
			Dativo		is		Musis
			Accusativo		as		Musas
			Vocativo		e		Musæ
			(Ablativo		is		Musis

As is found in the Genitive case singular in imitation of the Greeks; as, *Pater familias*, the good man of the house.

The antients dissolved *e* into *ai*; as *aulai* for *aula*, *Filia, nata, dea, equa*, with some few others; make their Dative and ablative plural in *abus*, to distinguish them from their Masculines, *filius natus, deus, equus*, which follow the forme of the second declension.

This Declension is also of Greek Nouns, viz. Masculines in *as* and *es*, and feminines in *a* and *e*.

Nouns in *as* and *a* make their accusative in *am*, and *an* sometimes in the Poëts, as,

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Aeneas</i>	<i>Aeneæ</i>	<i>Aeneæ</i>	<i>Aeneam, an</i>	<i>Aenea</i>	<i>Aeneâ</i>
<i>Maia</i>	<i>Maie</i>	<i>Maie</i>	<i>Maïam, an</i>	<i>Maia</i>	<i>Maïâ</i>

Greek words in the plural number are declined like Latine.

Es make's in the accusative case *en*, in the Vocative and Ablative *e*, or *a*.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc. or Ablat.
<i>Anchises</i>	<i>Anchisæ</i>	<i>Anchisæ</i>	<i>Anchisen</i>	<i>Anchise, vel Anchisæ</i>

E makes the Genitive in *es*, the Dative in *e*, the Accusative in *en*, the Vocative and Ablative in *e*, as,

Nom	Gen	Dat	Accus	Voc & Abl
<i>Penelope</i>	<i>Penelopes</i>	<i>Penelope</i>	<i>Penelopen</i>	<i>Penelope</i>

Some adde hereunto Hebrew words in *am*, as *Adam, Ade*, which are better reduced to the second Declension by putting to *us*, as, *Adamus, Adami, Adam*.

As in Genitivo reperitur ad Græcorum imitationem; as, *Pater-familias*.

Prisci dissolvebant *e* in *ai*; ut, *aulaī* pro *aule*.

Filia, nata, dea, equa, cum paucis aliis Dativum & Ablativum pluralem mittunt in *abus*, ut distinguantur à suis Masculinis, *Filius, natus, Deus, equus*, quæ sequuntur formam secundæ Declinationis.

Est etiam hæc Declinatio Græcorum Masculinorum in *as*, & *es*, & Fæmininorum in *a*, & *e*.

As & *a* Accusativum *am* faciunt, & *an* aliquando apud Poëtas; ut,

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Ablat.
<i>Eneas</i>	<i>Ence</i>	<i>Ence</i>	<i>Eneam, an</i>	<i>Enea</i>	<i>Ence</i>
<i>Maia</i>	<i>Maia</i>	<i>Maia</i>	<i>Maïam, an</i>	<i>Maia</i>	<i>Maïa</i>

Græca in plurali declinantur ut Latina.!

Es in Accusativo *en* sumit, in Vocativo vel Ablativo *e*, vel *a*, ut,

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc. & Ablat.
<i>An bife</i>	<i>Anchise</i>	<i>Anchise</i>	<i>Anchisen</i>	<i>Anchise, vel Anchisa</i>

E Genitivum in *es* mittit, Dativum in *e* Accusativum in *en*, Vocativum & Ablativum in *e*; ut,

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc & Abl.
<i>Penelope</i>	<i>Penelopes</i>	<i>Penelope</i>	<i>Penelopen</i>	<i>Penelope</i>

Sunt qui huc addunt Hebræa quædam in *am*; ut *Adam* *Ada*, quæ tamen melius ad secundam Declinationem reducuntur, addendo *us*; ut, *Adamus, Adami*.

Cap. 12:

Chap. 12.
Of the second Declension.

Of the Se-
cond like
Magister,
Dominus, or
Regnum.

THe second De-
clension is (for
the most part) of
Masculines in
(*er*)
as { *Magister,*
a Master
Dominus
a Lord. } Or of Neu-
ters in *um*,
as *Regnum,*
a kingdom

The Terminations of this Declension are

Singular.	Nom.	<i>us, um</i>
	Gen.	<i>i,</i>
	Dat.	<i>o,</i>
	Accu.	<i>um,</i>
	Voc.	<i>e, um,</i>
	Abl.	<i>o,</i>

Types of it are

Magister	Dominus	Regnum
Magistri	Domini	Regni
Magistro	Domino	Regno
Magistrum	Dominum	Regnum
Magister	Domine	Regnum
Magistro	Domino	Regno

Plural.	Nom.	<i>i, a,</i>
	Gen.	<i>orum,</i>
	Dat.	<i>is,</i>
	Acc.	<i>os, a,</i>
	Voc.	<i>i, a,</i>
	Abl.	<i>is,</i>

The Examples or

Magistri	Domini	Regna
Magistorum	Dominorum	Regnorum
Magistris	Dominis	Regnis
Magistros	Dominos	Regna
Magistri	Domini	Regna
Magistris	Dominis	Regnis

When the Nominative endeth in *us*, the Vocative endeth in *e*; but *Deus* God, maketh *o Deus*, and *Filius* a son, maketh *o fili*.

Proper names of Men in *ius* make their Vocative in *i*; as Nom. *Georgius* George; Voc. *o Georgi*.

Agnus, a lamb; *lucus*, a grove; *chorus*, a quire; *fluvius*, a river, do make their Vocative case in *e*, and in *us*.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
We read in the Plural Number	<i>Divi</i>	<i>Divorum</i>	<i>Divis</i>	<i>Divos</i>	<i>Divi</i>	<i>Diois</i>
	<i>Dii</i>	<i>Deorum</i>	<i>Dijis</i>	<i>Dios</i>	<i>Dii</i>	<i>Diois</i>

Greek

Greek Nouns of this Declension have three Terminations; *eus* of the Masculine, *os* of the Masculine and Feminine, and *on* of the Neuter Gender.

Eus makes the Genitive case in *ei*, or *eos*, the Dative in *ei*, the Accusative in *ea*, the Vocative in *eu*, the Ablative in *eo*.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Vocat.	Ablat.
<i>Orpheus</i>	<i>Orphei, pheos</i>	<i>Orphei</i>	<i>Orphea</i>	<i>Orpheu</i>	<i>Orpheo</i>

Os makes the Accusative case in *on*; as, Nom. *Delos*, Gen. *Deli*, Dat. *Delo*, Accus. *Delon*, Voc. *Dele*, Ablat. *Delo*.

But Attick Nouns in *os* make the Genitive in *o*; as, *Androgeos*, *Androgeo*, &c. And nouns contracted in *u* make their Vocative in *u*, as, *Oedipus*, *Oedipu*.

On is declined like other Neuters; as, Nom. *Ilion*, Gen. *Ilis*, Dat. *Ilio*, Accus. *Ilion*, Voc. *Ilion*, Ablat. *Ilia*.

Chap. 13. Of the third Declension.

Of the
Third, like
Lapis, or
Caput.

The third Declension is very diverse. For it contains all Genders, and (at the least) eleven Terminations in the Nominative case singular: in *a*, *i*, *l*, *n*, *o*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *x*.

The Terminations of this Declension are	Singular	Nom.	diverse.	The Examples or Types of it are	<i>Lapis</i>	<i>Caput</i>
		Gen.	<i>is</i> ,		<i>Lapidis</i>	<i>Capitis</i>
		Dat.	<i>i</i> ,		<i>Lapidi</i>	<i>Capiti</i>
		Accu	<i>em</i> ,		<i>Lapidem</i>	<i>Caput</i>
		Voc.	diverse.		<i>Lapis</i>	<i>Caput</i>
		Abl.	<i>e</i> ,		<i>Lapide</i>	<i>Capite</i>
	Plural	Nom.	<i>es</i> ,		<i>Lapides</i>	<i>Capita</i>
		Gen.	<i>um</i> ,		<i>Lapidum</i>	<i>Capitum</i>
		Dat.	<i>ibus</i> ,		<i>Lapidibus</i>	<i>Capitibus</i>
		Acc.	<i>es</i> ,		<i>Lapides</i>	<i>Capita</i>
		Voc.	<i>es</i> ,		<i>Lapides</i>	<i>Capita</i>
		Abl.	<i>ibus</i> ,		<i>Lapidibus</i>	<i>Capitibus</i>

The

Nomina Græca hujus Declinationis tres habent terminationes; viz. *eus* Masculini, *os* Masculini & Feminini, & *on* Neutrius.

Eus Genitivum facit in *ei*, vel *eos*, Dativum in *ei*, Accusativum in *ea*, Vocativum in *eu*, Ablativum in *eo*.

Nom	Gen	Dat	Accus	Vocat	Ablat
Orpheus	Orphei, pheos	Orphei	Orphea	O. pheu	Orphee

Os Accusativum in *on* mittit; ut, Nom. *Delos*, Gen. *Deli*, Dat. *Delo*, Acc. *Delon*. Voc. *Dele*, Abl. *Delo*.

Sed Attica in *os*, Genitivum in *o* mittunt; *Androgeos*, *Androgeo*, &c. Et contracta in *us* formant Vocativum in *u*; ut, *Oedipus*, *Oedipu*.

On formatur more aliorum Neutorum; ut, Nom. *Ilion*, Gen. *Ilī*, Dat. *Ilīo*, Acc. *Ilion*, Voc. *Ilion*, Abl. *Ilīo*.

Cap 13. De tertia Declinatione.

Tertia Declinatio est admodum varia. Continet enim omnia genera, & undecem (ad minimum) Terminationes in Nominativo singulari: *a, c, e, i, j, Caput, n, o, r, s, t, x*.

Terminationes hujus Declinationis sunt	Singulariter	N. variz	Ejus Exempli five Typi sunt	Lap ^u	Cap ^u
		G. u.		Lapidis	Capitis
		D. i.		Lapidi	Capiti
		A. em.		Lapidem	Caput
		V. variz		Lapis	Caput
		A. e.		Lapide	Capite
	Pluraliter	N. es.		Lapides	Capita
		G. um.		Lapidum	Capitum
		D. ibus.		Lapidibus	Capitibus
		A. es.		Lapides	Capita
		V. es.		Lapides	Capita
		A. ibus.		Lapidibus	Capitibus

Quo.

What
Nouns
makes the
Accusative
in *im*.

The Accusative cases of some words are declined onely in *im*; as, *vis*, strength; *ravis* hoarsnesse; *tis*, thirst; *tussis*, a cough; *magudera*, the stalk of the herb Benjamin; *Charybdis*, a gulf; and *amussis* a Carpenter's line; to which we may add the names of Rivers; as *Avaris*, the Soan in France; *Tybris*, *Cybris* by Rome.

in *im* and
em.

Some make their accusative in *im* and *em* indifferently; as, *Pelvis*, a basin; *turris*, a tower; *buris* a plow-stilt; *puppis*, a poop of a ship; *torquis* a chain to wear about ones neck; *securis*, an ax; *restis*, a rope; *febris* an Ague; *clavis*, a key *bipennis* a two-blade; *aqualis* a water-pot; *navis*, a ship.

The Ablat.
in *i*.

Their Ablative ends in *i* onely, whole Accusative ends onely in *im*; as *tussim*, Abl. *tussi*.

Names of Months in *er* and *is*, do make their Ablative in *i* onely; as, September, Abl. *bris*, Aprilis, Abl. *lis*.

Neuters, ending in *al*, *ar*, and *e*, for the most part makes their Ablative in *i*;

as, { *Vestigal*, Abl. *li*, toll. } For *Rete* in the Ab-
as, { *Calcar*, Abl. *ari*, a spur. } lative, is of *Retis*,
{ *Rete*, Abl. *ti*, a net; }

Yet these Nouns in *ar*, and *e*, keep *e*, in their Ablative case; as, *Far* bread-corn, *hepar*, the liver, *jubar*, the soft beam; *nectar*, sweet wine; *gausape*, a frize; *praesepe* a stall, *Soracte*, a hill in Italie; *Præneste*, the citie Pelestrina; *Reate*, the city Reati in Italie.

Adjectives, having the Nominative common in *is*, or *er*, and the Neuter in *e*, make their Ablative in *i* onely; as, *Fortis*, *ti*, strong, *Acer*, or *Acris*, *cri*, sharp.

Nouns, which take on them the nature of Adjectives, make their Ablative case for the most part in *i*. as, *Sodalis*, *li*.

Except

Quorundam Accusativi fleſcuntur tantum in *im*, Que nomi-
na formant
Accusativa
in *im*.
ut, *Vim, ravim, ſitim, tuſſim,*

Maguderim, Charybim, & amuſſim,
Quibus addas & Fluviorum nomina, ut, *Ararim,*
Tybrim.

Quorundam Accusativos fleſcunt in *im*, & *em* commu- in *em* & *im*,
niter, ut,

Pelvis, turris, buris,
Puppis, torquis, ſecuris,
Reſtis, febris, clavis,
Bipennis, aqualis, navis

Quorum Accusativus in *im* tantum deſinit, iis Ab- Ablat. in *i*,
latus exit in *i* ut, *tuſſim*. Abl. *tuſſi*.

Menſium nomina in *er*, & *is*, Ablativum in *i* ſo-
lum mittunt, *September*, Abl. *br̄i*, *Aprilis*, Abl. *Apriſi*

Neutra deſinentia in *al*, *ar*, & *e*, Ablativum ma-
gna ex parte mittunt in *i*,

ut, *Vestigal*, Abl. *ſi*. } Nam Rete in Ablati-
Calcar, Abl. *ari*. } vo, eſt à Rete.
Rete, Abl. *ti*. }

Hæc tamen in *ar* & *e* retinent *e* in Ablativo;
*Far, hep̄ar, jubar, neſtar, gauſape, præſepe, Soracte, Præ-
noſte, Reate.*

Adjectiva, quæ Nominativum communem in *i* vel,
er, & *e* Neutrum habent, Ablativum mittunt in *i*; ut
Fortis forti, *Acer vel acris acri*.

Quæ Adjectivorum naturam induunt, majori ex
parte mittunt Ablativum in *i*, ut *Sodaliſ, ſi*.

Excipe

Except Proper names; as *Clemens, tis, Clement*
 Nouns whose Accusative cases end in *em* or *im*
 in *e* and *i*. make their Ablative in *e*, and *i*; as, *Puppis*, Accu-
pe vel *pi*, Abl. *pe* vel *pi*.

Par also, with its compounds, makes both *e* and *i*.
 Also nouns of the Comparative degree; as, *melior*
 better, and the rest of the Adjectives, except those
 above mentioned in *er* or *is*. But *pauper* poor,
degener out of kind, *uber* plentiful, *sepes* safe,
 and *hospes* an host, make their Ablatives in *e* onely.

Some Substantives, as, *ignis* fire, *amnis* a river,
anguis a snake, *supellex* household-stuff, *vestis* a
 doot-bar, *unguis* a nail, or hoof: Gentiles; as,
Arpinas, one of *Arpinum*; and Verbals in *trix*; as, *Vict-*
rix, a Conquerer, make their Ablative in *e* and *i*.
 Neuters whose Ablative ends in *i*, or in *e* and
 in *is* make their Nominative plural in *ia*; as, *Fortis, ia*,
 strong, *felix, icia* happy.

Nom plural
in is

Except Comparatives; as, *fortiora* stronger, but
Plus makes *plura* and *pluria* more.

Es & eis.

Some Nouns make their Nominative & Accusative
 plural in *es* or *eis* the dipthong; as, *Omnes*, or *ommeis*,
 all; and *eis* is sometimes contracted into *is*; as, *Sardis*.

Gen. in ium.

Of Ablatives in *i* onely, or in *e* or *i*, the Genitive
 case plural ends in *ium*; as, *utis utilium* profitable,
puppi vel pe, puppinum. Except Comparatives; as, *meliorum*.

[Supplicum,]		[Supplex, a suppliant,
[Complicum,]		[Complex, a partner,
[Strigilum,]		[Strigil, an horsecorn,
[Artificum,]		[Artifex, an artificer,
[Veterum,]	> of <	[Vetus, old.
[Vigilum,]		[Vigil, a watchman,
[Memorum,]		[Memor, mindful,
[Inopum,]		[Inops, poor.
[Pugilum,]		[Pugil, a champion.

But *plus* makes *plurium*.

When

Excipe propria ; ut, *Clemens, te.*

Nomina quorum Accusativi per *em* & *im* finiunt, formant Ablativos in *e* & *i* ; ut, *Puppis, Acc. pem vel pim, Abl. pe vel pi.*

Par, quoque cum compositis *e* & *i* habet. Comparativa etiam, ut *melior*, & reliqua Adjectiva, præter ea quæ supra dicta sunt in *er* & *is*. Sed *Pauper, digener, uber, sospes, hospes*, in *e* tantum faciunt Ablativum.

Substantiva quædam ; ut,

Ignis, amnis, anguis,

Supellex, vestis, unguis.

Gentilia ; ut, *Arpinas* ; & Verbalia in *trix* ; ut, *Victrix*, Ablativum mittunt in *e* & *i*.

Neutra, quorum Ablativus exit in *i*, vel in *e* & *i*, Nom. pl. in *ia*. Nominativum pluralem mittunt in *ia* ; ut *fortis, fortia, felix, felicia.*

Præter Comparativa ; ut, *fortiora* ; *Plus* habet *plura* & *pluria*.

Nonnulla Nominativum & Accusativum pluralem E, & *eis*. mittunt per *es* & *eis* Diphthongum ; ut, *Omnes vel omneis*. *Eis* autem aliquando contrahitur in *is* ; ut, *Sardis*.

Ex Ablativis in *i* tantum, vel in *e* & *i*, fit pluraliter Gen. in *ium*. Genitivus in *ium* ; ut, *utili, utilium ; puppi vel puppe, puppium*. Præter Comparativa ; ut, *meliorum*.

Item præter ista ;

Supplicum, complicum, strigilum ;

Artificum, veterum, vigilum ;

Memorum, inopum, pugilum.

Et plus, plurium format.

The Latine Grammar.

When the Nominative cases singular end with two Consonants, the Genitives plural end in *ium*; as, *Pars, Partium*.

Except	{	<i>Hyemum</i>	}	of	{	<i>Hyems</i> winter.
	<i>Principum</i>	<i>Principes</i> a Prince.				
	<i>Forcipum</i>	<i>Forceps</i> a pair of tongs.				
	<i>Municipum</i>	<i>Municeps</i> , a free-man.				
	<i>Inopum</i>	<i>Inops</i> poor.				
	<i>Cœlibum</i>	<i>Cœlebs</i> a single-man.				
	<i>Clientum</i>	<i>Client</i> a Client.				
	{	<i>Participum</i>	}		{	<i>Particeps</i> a Partner.

When like syllables are found in the Nominative and Genitive cases singular, the Genitive case plural ends in *ium*; as, *collis*, a hill, makes *collum*.

To which add, { *Virium*, } of { *Vis* strength.
 { *Salium*, } { *Sal* salt
 { *Ditium*, } { *Dis* rich.

{ *Manium* } of { *Manes* spirits.
 { *Penatium* } { *Penates* household-gods.
 { *Litium* } { *Lis* controverſie.

Yet except, { *Valum* } of { *Vates* a Poet.
 { *Juvenum* } { *Juvenis* a youth.
 { *Canum* } { *Canis* a dog.

{ *Opum* } of { *Opes* wealth.
 { *Apum* } { *Apes* a Bee.
 { *Panum* } { *Panis* bread.

As a pound makes *assum*, *mas* a male *marium*, *vas-vadis* a surety *vadium*, *nox* night *noctium*, *nix* snow *nivium*, *os* a bone *ossum*, *faux* a jaw *faucium*, *mus* a mouse *murium*, *caro* flesh *carnium*, *cor* a heart *cordium*.

Vann

Ales a bird makes *alium*, and *calites* the heavily inhabitants *caelum*, by taking to them *u*.

COND

Quando Nominativi singulares duabus consonantibus finiuntur, genitivi plurales exeunt in *ium*; ut, *Pars, partium*.

Excipe,

Hyemum, principum, forcipum, municipum;
Inopum, cælibum, clientum, participum.

Ubi in Nominativis & Genitivis singularibus reperiuntur pares syllabæ, Genitivus pluralis exit in *ium*; ut, *Collis, collium*.

His adde;

Vrium, salium, ditium,
Manium, pevatium, litium.

Excipe tamen,

Vatum, juvenum, canum;
Opum, apum, panum.

As format assum; mas, marium; vas-vadis, vadium;
nox, noctium; nix, nivium; os, ossium; faux, faucium;
nixus, murium; caro, carniū; cor, cordium,

Ales facit alituum; et cælitæ, cælituum, assumen-

Boxm of *bos* *bovis* an ox, is an irregular word, as also *bobus* and *bubus*, for *bovibus*.

Orum &
ium.

The names of Feasts, which are onely Plural, make their Genitive case sometimes in *orum*; as, *Agonalia*, *litorum*; sometimes in *ium*; as, *Floralia*, *lium*; and sometimes both in *orum*, and *ium*; as *Saturnalia*, *liorum*, and *lium*.

Abl. in is &
ibus.

Neuters singular in *a* make the Dative and Ablative plural in *is* or *ibus*; as, *Problema*, *tis*, vel *matibus*. So also *Quinquatria*, *triis*, vel *tribus*.

Words derived from the Greek, when they are declined after their own manner, imitate these examples.

Sing.	Nom.	Gen	Dat.	Acc	V.	Abl.
<i>Titan</i>	<i>an</i>	<i>anos</i>	<i>ani</i>	<i>ana</i>	<i>an</i>	<i>ane</i>
<i>Arctas</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>ados</i>	<i>adi</i>	<i>ada</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>ade</i>
<i>Phyllis</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>idos</i>	<i>idi</i>	<i>ida</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>ide</i>
<i>Genesis</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is, eos</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>im, in</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>i</i>
<i>Opus</i>	<i>us</i>	<i>untos</i>	<i>unti</i>	<i>unta</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>unte</i>
<i>Tethys</i>	<i>ys</i>	<i>yos</i>	<i>yi</i>	<i>yn</i>	<i>y</i>	<i>y</i>
<i>Dido</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>ūs</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>
<i>Achilles</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>eos</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>e</i>

Some of these make the Genitive plural in *is* and *ium*.

Chap. 14.

Of the fourth Declension.

Of the fourth like
Manus or

Cornu.

The fourth Declension hath onely two terminations in the Nominative case singular, { *us*, Masculine and Feminine, } as { *Manus*, }
{ *u*, Neuter, } as { *Cornu*, }

Bovis à *bos* *bovis*, anomalum est; ut etiam *bobus* vel *bubus*, pro *bovibus*.

Festorum nomina quæ tantum pluralia sunt, Gen. *orum* & *ium*.
 nitivum aliquando in *orum*; ut, *Agonalia*, *liorum*; aliquando in *ium*; ut, *Floralia*, *lium*; aliquando tam in *orum*, quàm in *ium* mittunt; ut *Saturnalia*, *liorum* & *lium*.

Neutra Græca singularia in *a*, faciunt Dativum & Ablativum pluralem in *a* & *ibus*; ut, *Problema*, *ma-ibus*, vel *matibus*. Sic etiam *Quinquatria*, *triis*, vel *tribus*.

Græco fonte derivata, quando juxta linguæ suæ morem variantur, hæc exempla imitantur.

Sing.	N.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	V.	Abl.
<i>Titân</i>	<i>an</i>	<i>anos</i>	<i>ani</i>	<i>ana</i>	<i>an</i>	<i>ate</i>
<i>Arkas</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>ados</i>	<i>adi</i>	<i>ada</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>ade</i>
<i>Phyllis</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>idos</i>	<i>idi</i>	<i>ida</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>ide</i>
<i>Genesis</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is, eos</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>im, in</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>i</i>
<i>Opus</i>	<i>us</i>	<i>untos</i>	<i>unti</i>	<i>unta</i>	<i>us</i>	<i>unte</i>
<i>Terhys</i>	<i>ys</i>	<i>gos</i>	<i>yi</i>	<i>yn</i>	<i>y</i>	<i>y</i>
<i>Dido</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>
<i>Achilles</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>eos</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>e</i>

Horum nonnulla formant Genitivum pluralem in *ay* vel *ium*.

Cap. 14.

De quarta Declinatione.

Quarta Declinatio duas tantum sortitur terminationes in Recto singulari,
 { Masculinorum & Femininorum in *us* } ut { *Mannus*; *Cornu*;
 { Neutrorum in *u*, }

Quarta, ut
Mannus est
Cornu

E;

Termini-

The Terminations of this Declension are	Singularly,	Nom.	<i>us, u</i>	The Examples, or Types of it are	<i>Manus</i>	<i>Cornu</i>
		Gen.	<i>ūs, u</i>		<i>Manūs</i>	<i>Cornū</i>
		Dat.	<i>ui, u</i>		<i>Manui</i>	<i>Cornu</i>
		Acc.	<i>um, u</i>		<i>Manum</i>	<i>Cornu</i>
		Voc.	<i>us, u</i>		<i>Manus</i>	<i>Cornu</i>
		Abl.	<i>u, u</i>		<i>Manu</i>	<i>Cornu</i>
	Plurally	Nom.	<i>us, u a</i>		<i>Manus</i>	<i>Cornua</i>
		Gen.	<i>uum</i>		<i>Manuum</i>	<i>Cornuum</i>
		Dat.	<i>ibus</i>		<i>Manibus</i>	<i>Cornibus</i>
		Acc.	<i>us, na</i>		<i>Manus</i>	<i>Cornua</i>
		Voc.	<i>us, ua</i>		<i>Manus</i>	<i>Cornua</i>
		Abl.	<i>ibus</i>		<i>Manibus</i>	<i>Cornibus</i>

Antiently the Genitive singular ended in *i*, and *ūs*, thence the Antients said *fructi* for *fructūs*; and *anūs* for *anūs*.

The most holy name *Jesus*, makes *Jesum* in the Accusative, and in other cases *Jesu*.

The Dative case hath sometimes *u*; as, *fructu* for *fructui*.

These words make their Dative and Ablative plural in *ibus*; viz. *Artus*, a joynt; *arcus* a bow; *tribus*, a stock; *acus*, a needle; *ficus*, a fig; *specus*, a hole; *quercus*, an oak; *lacus* a lake; *partus* young; *veru* a spit; *genu* a knee.

All other nouns make *ibus*.

Chap. 15.

Of the fifth Declension.

Of the fifth,
like *Facies*

THE fifth Declension hath one onely termination in *es*; as, *Facies*, a face.

All nouns of this Declension are Feminines; except *Dies* a day, and *Meridies* noon-day.

Nom.

Terminationes hujus Declinationis sunt	Singulariter,	N.	us, u.	Ejus Exempla, five Typi sunt	Manus	Cornu
		G.	us, u.		Manūs	Cornu
		D.	ui, u.		Manui	Cornu
		Ac.	um, u.		Manum	Cornu
		V.	us, u.		Manus	Cornu
		Ab.	u, u.		Manu	Cornu
	Pluraliter,	No.	us, ua.		Manus	Cornua
		Ge.	uum.		Manuum	Cornuum
		Da.	ibus.		Manibus	Cornibus
		Ac.	us, ua.		Manus	Cornua
		Vo.	us, ua.		Manus	Cornua
		Ab.	ibus.		Manibus	Cornibus

Olim Genitivus singularis exhibet in *i* & *uis*; in-
dè Veteres dixerunt *fructi* pro *fructus*, & *aniis* pro
annis.

Sacro-sanctum nomen *Iesus* habet in accusati-
vo *Iesum*, in reliquis verò casibus *Iesu*.

Dativus interdum *u* habet; ut, *fructu* pro *fructui*.

Hæc Dativum & Ablativum pluralem in *ibus* for-
mant; viz. *Artus, arcus, tribus, acus*;
ficus, specus, quercus, lacus;
partus, veru, genu.

Cætera omnia in *ibus*.

Cap. 15.

De quinta Declinatione.

Quinta Declinatio unicam habet terminationem *Quintæ, ut*
in *es*; ut, *Facies*. *Facies*

Omnia nomina hujus Declinationis sunt fœminina,
exceptis *Dies, & meridies*.

The Terminations of this Declension are	Singularly,	Nom.	es	Their Example or Type is	Facies	The Genitive singular once ended in <i>es</i> , <i>ii</i> , and <i>e</i> , & the Dative sometimes in <i>e</i> . Some Nouns of the third Declension were declined after this; as, <i>plebs</i> , <i>p'ebri</i> . No nouns of this Declension have the Gen. Dat. and Ablative plural, except <i>Res</i> a thing, <i>species</i> a kinde, <i>facies</i> a face, <i>acies</i> an edg, <i>dies</i> a day, <i>meridies</i> mid-day, or noon.
		Gen.	ei		Faciēi	
		Dat.	ei		Faciēi	
		Acc.	em		Faciem	
		Voc.	es		Facies	
		Abl.	e		Facie	
	Plurally,	Nom.	es	Their Example or Type is	Facies	
		Gen.	erum		Faciērum	
		Dat.	ebus		Faciēbus	
		Accu.	es		Facies	
		Voc.	es		Facies	
		Abl.	ebus		Faciebus	

Chap. 17. Of the declining of Adjectives.

Adjectives of three Terminations, are declined like *Bonus*

Adjectives are declined with three Terminations, or three Articles.

Adjectives of three Terminations are varied after the first and second Declension; viz. The termination *r*, like *Magister*; *us*, like *Dominus*; *a*, like *Musa*; *um*, like *Regnum*.

Their Example or Type is	Singulariter,	Nom.	Bónus	Bóna	Bónum
		Gen.	Boni	Bonæ	Boni
		Dat.	Bono	Bonæ	Bono
		Acc.	Bonum	Bonam	Bonum
		Voc.	Bone	Bona	Bonum
		Abl.	Bono	Bona	Bono
	Pluraliter,	Nom.	Boni	Bonæ	Bona
		Gen.	Bonórum	Bonárum	Bonórum
		Dat.	Bonis	Bonis	Bonis
		Acc.	Bonos	Bonas	Bona
		Voc.	Boni	Bonæ	Bona
		Abl.	Bonis	Bonis	Bonis

Terminationes hujus Declinat.	Singulariter,	N.	es	Eius Exemplum five Typus est.	Facies	Genitivus singularis olim etiam in <i>es</i> , <i>is</i> , & <i>e</i> , exhibat, & Dativus aliquando in <i>e</i> .
		G.	ei		Faciēi	
		D.	ei		Faciēi	
		A.	em		Faciem	
		V.	es		Facies	
		A.	e		Facie	
	Pluraliter	N.	es	Eius Exemplum five Typus est.	Facies	Quædam nomina tertiæ Declinationis juxta hanc flectebantur; ut, <i>Plebs</i> , <i>plebei</i> . Hæc Declinatio Genit. Dat. & Ablativum pluralem in nullis sortita est, præter <i>Res</i> , <i>species</i> , <i>facies</i> , <i>acies</i> , <i>dies</i> & <i>meredies</i> .
		G.	erum		Faciērum	
		D.	ebus		Faciēbus	
		A.	es		Facies	
		V.	es		Facies	
		A.	ebus		Faciēbus	

Cap. 16. De flexione Adjectivorum.

Adjectiva flectuntur tribus Terminationibus, vel tribus Articulis.

Adjectiva trium Terminationum variantur ad formam primæ & secundæ Declinationis, viz. *r*, sicut *Magister*; *us*, sicut *Dominus*; *a*, sicut *Musa*; *um*, sicut *Regnum*.

Horum Exemplum, five Typus est	Singulariter	Nom.	Bonus	Bona	Bonum
		Gen.	Boni	Bonæ	Boni
		Dat.	Bono	Bonæ	Bono
		Acc.	Bonum	Bonam	Bonum
		Voc.	Bone	Bona	Bonum
		Abl.	Bono	Bonâ	Bono
	Pluraliter	Nom.	Boni	Bonæ	Bona
		Gen.	Bonorum	Bonarum	Bonorum
		Dat.	Bonis	Bonis	Bonis
		Acc.	Bonos	Bonas	Bona
		Voc.	Boni	Bonæ	Bona
		Abl.	Bonis	Bonis	Bonis

Unus, one; *totus*, whole; *solus*, alone; *ullus*, any; *alter*, another; *uter*, whether, and their compounds, make their Genitive in *ius*, and the Dative in *i*.

So also doth *alius*, *alia*, *aliud*, Gen. *alius*, Dat. *alii*, &c.

Ambo both, *duo* two, are irregular, and make their neuter gender in *o*. and be thus declined.

Plura liter	}	Nom.	<i>Ambo</i>	<i>Ambæ</i>	<i>Ambo</i>
		Gen.	<i>Amborum</i>	<i>Ambarum</i>	<i>Amborum</i>
		Dat.	<i>Ambobus</i>	<i>Ambabus</i>	<i>Ambobus</i>
		Acc.	<i>Ambos</i>	<i>Ambas</i>	<i>Ambo</i>
		Voc.	<i>Ambo</i>	<i>Ambæ</i>	<i>Ambo</i>
		Abl.	<i>Ambobus</i>	<i>Ambabus</i>	<i>Ambobus</i>

Of
three
Artic-
like fe-
lix or
Tristis.

Adjectives of one or two Terminations follow the rule of the third Declension, and are declined with three Articles.

Singularly,	N.	<i>Hic, hæc, & hoc, Felix</i>	Singularly,	N.	<i>Hic, & hæc, Tristis</i>
	G.	<i>Hujus, Felicis</i>			<i>& hoc, Triste</i>
	D.	<i>Huic, Felici</i>		G.	<i>Hujus, Tristis</i>
	A.	<i>Hunc, & hanc, Felicæ</i>		D.	<i>Huic, Tristi</i>
		<i>& hoc Felix</i>		A.	<i>Hunc, & hanc, Tri-</i>
	V.	<i>Felix</i>			<i>stem, & hoc Triste</i>
Plurally,	A.	<i>Hoc, hæc & hoc Felice</i>	Plurally,	V.	<i>Tristis, & Triste</i>
		<i>vel Felici.</i>		A.	<i>Hoc, hæc, & hoc, tristis</i>
	N.	<i>Hi, & hæ, Felices, & hæc, Felicia.</i>		N.	<i>Hi, & hæ, Tristes, & hæc, Tristia</i>
	G.	<i>Horum, harum, & horum, Felicum</i>		G.	<i>Horum, harum, & horum, Tristium</i>
	D.	<i>His, Felicibus</i>		D.	<i>His, Tristibus</i>
	A.	<i>Hos, & has, Felices, & hæc, Felicia</i>		A.	<i>Hos, & has Tristes, & hæc, Tristia</i>
Purality,	V.	<i>Felices & Felicia</i>	Purality,	V.	<i>Tristes, Tristia</i>
	A.	<i>His, Felicibus</i>		A.	<i>Tristibus.</i>

Nouns

unus, totus, solus, ullus, alter, uter, & eorum composita, formant Genitivum in ius, & Dativum in i.

Sic & alius, alia, aliud, Gen. alius, Dat. alii, &c.

Ambo & duo sunt anomala, & formant neutrum genus per o: sic autem variantur.

Plura liter,	}	Nom	Ambo	Ambæ	Ambo
		Gen	Amborum	Ambarum	Amborum
		Dat.	Ambobus	Ambabus	Ambobus
		Acc.	Ambos	Ambas	Ambo
		Voc.	ambo	Ambæ	Ambo
		Abl	Ambobus	Ambabus	Ambobus

Adjectiva unius vel duarum Terminationum sequuntur formam tertiæ Declinationis, & auctuntur tribus Articulis.

Adjectiva trium Articulorum variantur, ut, Felix, aut Tristis.

Singular. Singular.	Singular.	N. Hic, hæc, & hoc, Felix	N. Hic, & hæc, Tristis,
		G. Hujus, Felicis.	& hoc, Triste.
		D. Huic, Felici.	G. Hujus, Tristis.
		A. Hunc & hanc, Felicē,	D. Huic, Tristi.
		& hoc, Felix.	A. Hunc, & hanc Tristem & hoc Triste.
		V. Felix.	V. Tristis, & Triste.
Plural.	Plural.	A. Hoc, hæc, & hoc Felice,	A. Hoc, hæc, & hoc Tristi.
		vel Felici.	

Plural. Plural.	Plural.	N. Hi, & hæ, Felices, & hæc, Felicia.	N. Hi, & hæ, Tristes, & hæc, Tristia.
		G. Horum, harum, & horum, Felicium.	G. Horum, harum, & horum, Tristium.
		D. His Felicibus.	D. His, Tristibus.
		A. Hos, & has, Felices, & hæc Felicia.	A. Hos, & has, Tristes, & hæc Tristia.
		V. Felices, & Felicia.	V. Tristes, & Tristia.
		A. Felicibus.	A. His, Tristibus.

Nomina

Nouns compounded of a Substantive and Adjective are declined in both; as, *Res-publica*, *Rei-publica*, *Jus-jurandum*, *Juris-jurandi*.

But such as are compounded of two Substantives, are declined onely in the former; as, *Pater-familiás*, *Patris-familiás*.

Chap. 17. Of Comparison.

There be
three de-
grees of
Compa-
rison.
The Posi-
tive,

The Com-
parative,

The Super-
lative,

Nouns, whose signification may encrease or be diminished, do form Comparison.

Comparison is the varying of a word by Degree.

There be three Degrees of Comparison, {
The Positive.
The Comparative.
The Superlative.

The Positive Degree is the first word signifying a thing Simply, and without Excess; as, *Tristis*, sad; *durus*, hard.

The Comparative somewhat exceeds the signification of his Positive by more; as, *Tristior*, sadder, or more sad. *durior*, harder, or more hard.

The Superlative exceedeth far above the Positive by very, or most. as, *Tristissimus*, very sad; *durissimus*, most hard.

The Comparative is formed of the Positive, that endeth in *i*, by putting thereto *or*, and *us*; as of *Tristis* is made *tristior*, and *tristius*; of *Duri*, *duri-*or, and *durius*.

The Superlative is made of the Comparative, that endeth in *ius*, by putting thereto *issimus*; as of *Tristior* is made *tristissimus*; of *Durior*, *durissimus*.

But the
Compari-
son of some
words is
irregular.

Positives in *r*, make their Superlative by putting to *rimus*; as, *Pulcer*, fair, *pulcerimus*,

Nomina Composita à duobus rectis declinantur in utrisque; ut, *Res-publica, Rei-publica, Jus-jurandum, Juris-jurandi.*

Composita verò à recto & obliquo, declinantur tantum ex parte recti; ut, *Pater-familiás, Patrís-familiás.*

Cap. 17. De Comparatione.

Comparantur nomina, quorum significatio augeri, minuive potest.

Comparatio est variatio dictionis per Gradus.

Gradus Comparationis sunt tres { *Positivus.*
Comparativus.
Superlativus.

Comparationis Gradus sunt tres. Positivus.

Positivus Gradus est prima vox quæ rem simpliciter, & sine excessu significat; ut, *Tristis, durus.*

Comparativus Positivi significationem per magis auget; ut, *Tristior, durior.* Comparativus.

Superlativus supra Positivum cum Adverbio valde vel maxime significat; ut, *Tristissimus, durissimus.* Superlativus.

Comparativus { fit regulariter or, & us; ut, à *Tristi* fit *tristior*, & *tristius*; à *Duri*, *durior*, & *durius*.
 à primo Positivi casu in i, *ssimus*; ut, à *Tristi*, fit *tristissimus*; à *Duri*, *durissimus*.
 Superlativus { addendo

Quærendum verò Comparatio est regulatio.

Positiva in r, formant Superlativum assumendo *rimus*; ut, *Pulcer, pulcerimus.*

Ita.

But *dexter*, on the right hand, *dexterior*, more on the right hand, *dextimus*, most on the right hand, and *sinister*, on the left hand, *sinisterior*, more on the left hand, *sinistimus*, most on the left hand, as the antients formed them, are excepted.

These six ending in *lis*, do make their Superlative by changing *lis* into *limus*; viz *Ducilis*, *docillimus*, docible; *agilis*, *agillimus*, nimble; *gracilis*, *gracillimus*, slender; *humilis*, *humillimus*, humble; *similis*, *simillimus*, like; *facilis*, *facillimus*, easie.

Such as are derived of *dico*, *loquor*, *volo*, *facio*, are compared as Positives in *ens*, as, *Maledicior*, *maledicentior*, *maledicentissimus*, cursing; *magniloquus*, *magniloquentior*, *magniloquentissimus*, brag; *benevolus*, *benevolentior*, *benevolentissimus* kinde; *magnificus*, *magnificentior*, *magnificentissimus*, stately.

If a Vowel come before *us* in the end, the Comparative degree is made by *magis*, and the Superlative by *maximè*; as, *Pius*, godly; *magis Pius*, more godly; *maximè pius*, most godly.

These also are excepted from the Generall Rule aforegoing:

Bonus good, *melior* better, *optimus* the best.

Malus bad, *pejor* worse, *pessimus* the worst.

Magnus great, *major* greater, *maximus* the greatest.

Parvus little, *minor* less, *minimus*, the least.

Multus much, *plus* more, *plurimus* the most.

Vetus old, *veterior* older, *veterrimus* oldest.

Maturus ripe, *maturior* riper, *maturimus*, & *maturrissimus* very ripe.

Nequam naught, *nequior*, *nequissimus* the naughtiest.

And many such like whose Positives are derived of Adverbs, and Prepositions; as,

Citer, hitherly, *citarior*, *civimus*, of *citra* on this side.

Exterius

Excipiuntur autem *Dexter, dexterior, dextimus*; et *sinister, sinisterior, sinistimus*, prout antiqui formabant.

Sex ista in *lis* formant Superlativum mutando *lis* in *limus*; viz. *Docilis, docillimus*; *agilis, agilissimus*; *gracilis, gracilissimus*; *humilis, humillimus*; *similis, simillimus*; *facilis, facillimus*.

Quæ derivantur à *dico, loquor, volo, facio*, comparantur tanquam à Positivis in *ens*; ut,

Maledicus, Maledicentior, Maledicentissimus.

Magniloquus, Magniloquentior, Magniloquentissimus
Benevolus, Benevolentior, Benevolentissimus.

Magnificus, Magnificentior, Magnificentissimus.

Si vocalis præcedit *us* finale, fit gradus Comparativus per *magis*, & Superlativus per *maximè*; ut, *Pius, magis Pius, maximè Pius.*

Hæc etiam à Regula Generali præcedente excipiuntur.

<i>Bonus, melior, optimus.</i>	<i>Multus, plurimus, multa plurima, multum plus plurimum.</i>
<i>Malus, pejor, pessimus.</i>	<i>Vetus, veterior, veterrimus</i>
<i>Magnus, major, maximus.</i>	<i>Maturus, maturior, maturissimus & maturissimus.</i>
<i>Parvus, minor, minimus.</i>	<i>Nequam, nequior, nequissimus.</i>

Et istiusmodi multa, quorum Positivi ab Adverbis & Præpositionibus derivantur; ut, *Citer, citerior, citissimus, à Citra.*

Exterus,

Exterus, outerly, *Extimus*, } of extra without,
exterior, } *extremus*
inferus, netherly, *inferior*, *infimus* of *infra* beneath,
Posterus, afterly, *posterior*, *postremus* of *post* after,
Superus, overly, { *supremus*, } of *supra* above.
superior; } *summus*, }

To which are wont to be added, *ultra*, beyond, *ulterior*, further, *ultimus*, furthest; *Prope*, near, *propior*, nearer, *proximus*, the next; *Prædum*, long afore, *prior*, former; *primus*, the first; and *Diu*, long, *diutior* longer, *diuissimus*, very long.

Unusual,

These words are very seldom met withall in reading Authors, and therefore seldom to be used; viz. *Arsiduior*, more dailly: *Srenuior*, more stout; *Egregissimus*, very excellent: *Mirificissimus*, very wonderfull: *Pientissimus*, vel *pissimus*, very godly: *ipsissimus*, the very he: *perpetuissimus*, most perpetual: *tuisissimus*, most yours: *exiguissimus*, the lest that may be: *multissimus*, the most: *proximior*, nearer than the nearest.

Defective.

Some want the Positive; *Ocyor*, swifter, *ocysissimus*, very swift: *potior*, better able: *potissimus*, the best able: *deterior*, worse: *deterrimus*, the worst: *penitior*, inner: *penitissimus*, most innerly.

Some want the Comparative, *Novus*, new, *novissimus*, the newest. *inclytus*, famous, *inclitissimus*, most famous: *invius*, unwilling; *invitissimus*, most unwilling; *meritus*, deserved, *meritissimus*, most deserved; *sacer*, holy, *sacerrimus*, most holy; *falsus*, false, *falsissimus*, very false, *fidus*, trusty, *fidissimus* most trusty: *nuper*, nuperus late; *nuperrimus*, very late; *diversus*, diverse; *diversissimus*, very diverse.

Some want the Superlative, as, *Optimus*, wealthie; *opimior*, more wealthie; *juvenis*, young; *junior*, younger: *senex*, old; *senior*, older: *declivis*, down-hill: *declivior*, more down-hill: *longinquus*, afar off: *longinquior*,

Exterus, exterior, {extimus, } ab Extra;
extremus, }

Inferus, inferior, infimus, ab Infra.

Posterus, posterior, postremus, à Post.

Superus, superior {supremus, } à Supra.
summus, }

Quibus addi solent, *Ultra, ulterior, ultimus, Propè,*
propior, proximus. Pridem, prior, primus; & Diu, di-
utior, diutissimus.

Hæc in legendis auctoribus raro occurrunt, raro igitur sunt usurpanda, viz *Assiduior, Strenuior, Egre-* Inusitati-
gius, Mirificissimus, Pientissimus, vel piissimus, ip- ora
sius, perpetuissimus, tuissimus, exquisissimus, multif-
issimus, proximior.

Quædam carent Positivo, *Ocyor, ocyssimus, Potior, Defectiva,*
potissimus, Deterior, deterrimus, Penitior, penitissimus.

Quædam carent Comparativo; *Novus, novissimus;*
Inclutus, inclutissimus; Invitus, invitissimus; Meri-
tus, meritissimus; Sacer, sacerrimus; Falsus, falsissi-
mus; Fidus, fidissimus; Nuper, nuperus, nuperimus;
Diversus, diversissimus.

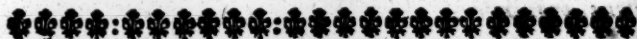
Quædam carent Superlativo; ut, *Optimus, optimior, Juvè-*
nis, junior, Senex, senior, Declivis, declivior, Longinquus,
longinquior;

gingulor, further off: *salutaris*, wholesome: *salutarior*, more wholesome: *supinus*, careless: *supinior*, more careless: *adolescens*, youthfull: *adolescencior*, more youthfull: *ingens*, huge: *ingentior*, more huge: *satius*, full: *saturius*, fuller: *ante*, before: *anterior*, more before: *infinitus*, infinite: *infinitior*, more infinite: *taciturnus*, silent: *taciturnior*, more silent: *communis*, common: *communior*, more common.

Licentior, more licentious, is onely the Comparative.

Improper

Sometimes also Comparison is made of Substantives, but abusively; as, *Nero*, *Neronior*, more cruel than *Nero*; *Pænus*, *Pænior*, more perfidious than a *Carthaginian*.



Quæ Genus :

OR,

ROB. ROBINSON'S Rules of Nouns
Heteroclits, or Irregular.

Chap. 18. Of varying *Heteroclits*.

Heteroclits
are,

Nouns which 1. vary or change their Gender or Declining. 2. Those which want of any new fashion. 3. And those which have too much, are *Heteroclits*.

These nouns change their gender and declining, which are,

1.
Variant

1. Feminines in the singular number, and Neuters in the plural; as,

Perge-

longinquior ; salutaris, salutarior ; supinus, supinior ;
adolescens, adolescentior ; ingens, ingenior ; satur, satu-
rior ; ante anterior ; infinitus, infinitior ; taciturnus,
taciturnior ; communis, communior.

Ligentior est solus Comparativus:

Interdum etiam à Substantivis fit Comparatio, sed
abusive ; ut, Nero, Neronior ; Pænus, Pænior. Abusiva



Que Genus :

SIVE,

ROE. ROBINSONI Regulæ de
Heteroclitis, seu Anomalis.

Cap. 18. De Heteroclitis variantibus.

*Q*ue genus aut flexum variant, 1. quæcunque, novato Heterocli-
ta sunt
Ritu deficiunt, 3. superantive, Heteroclitæ sunt.

Hæc genus ac partim flexum variantia cernis, Variant,

1. *Pergamus, mi*, the town Pergamus, makes *Pergama, morum*: *Supellex, lectilis*, household-stuff, makes *supellecilia*, unless it want the plural.

2. Neuters in the singular, and masculines and neuters in the plural; as, *Rastrum, stri*, a rake, makes *rastri, & rastra, strorum*: *frænum, ni*, a bridle, makes *fræni, & fræna, norum*: *filum, li*, a thread, makes *filii, & fila, lorum*: *Capistrum, stri*, an halter, makes *capistri, & stra, strorum*.

3. Neuters in the singular, and masculines onely in the plural; as, *Argos, gi*, the city of Argos, makes *Argi, gorum*: *cælum, li*, heaven, makes *cæli, lorum*.

4. Neuters in the singular, and feminines in the plural; as, *Nundinum, ni*, a fair, makes *nundine, narum*: *epulum, li*, a banquet, makes *epula, larum*: *balneum, nei*, a bath, makes *balnea, nearum*, though JUVENAL hath *balnea* in the plural number.

5. Masculines in the singular, and neuters in the plural; as, *Menalus, li*, a hill in Arcadia, makes *Manala, lorum*: *Dindymus, mi*, the top of Ida, makes *Dindyma, morum*: *Ismarus, ri*, a hill in Thrace, makes *Ismara, rorum*: *Tartarus, ri*, hell, makes *Tartara, rorum*: *Tâygêtus, ti*, a hill in Lacedæmonia, makes *Tâygêta, torum*: *Tanarus, ri*, a hill in Laconia, makes *Tanera, rorum*: *Massicus, ci*, a hill in Italy, makes *Massica, corum*: *Gargarus, ri*, a top of Ida, makes *Gargara, rorum*.

6. Masculines singular, and masculine and neuter in the plural; as, *Sibilus, li*, an hissing, makes *sibili, & sibila, lorum*: *jocus, ci*, a jest, makes *joci, & joca, corum*: *locus, ci*, a place, makes *loci, & loca, corum*: *Avernus, ni*, a lake in Campania, makes *Averni, & Averno, norum*.

1. Pergamus infelix urbs Troum Pergama gignit ;

Quod nisi plurali caveat facit ipsa supellex ;

Singula scæmineis, neutris pluralia gaudent.

2. Dat prior his numerus neutrum genus, alter utrumque ;

Rastrum, cum fræno, filum, simul atque capistrum.

3. Argos item & cœlum sunt singula neutra ; sed audi,

Mascula duntaxat cœlos vocitabis & Argos.

4. Nundinum, & hinc epulum, quibus addito balne-

(um, & hæc sunt

Neutra quidem primo, muliebria ritè secundo.

Balnea plurali Juvenalem constat habere.

5. Hæc maribus dantur singularia, plurima neutris ;

Mænalus, atq; sacer mons Dindymus, Ismarus, atq;

Tartara, Táygëus, sic Tænera, Massica, & alius

Gargarus. 6. At numerus genus his dabit alter utrunque ;

Sibilus, atq; jocus, locus, & Campanus Avernus.

Of Heteroclits that want Case.

2.
Defective
in Case.

2 **T**Hose Heteroclits which follow are defective in Case, or Number.

1. Aptotes are such as vary no case; as, *Fas*, right: *nil*, nothing: *nihil*, nothing: *instar*, like: such as end in *u* and *i*; as, *cornu*, a horn: *genu*, a knee: *gummi*, gum: *frugi*, thrifty: Likewise *Tempe*, a pleasant field: *tot*, so many: *quot*, how many: and all nouns of number from three to an hundred.

2 A Monoptote is a noun of one onely case; as *Noctu*, by night: *natu*, by birth: *jussu*, by bidding: *injussu*, without bidding: *astu*, by craft: *promptu*, in readiness: *permissu*, by sufferance: but we read *astus* in the Accusative case plural, and *inficias* a Denial, which word is onely found.

3. Those are Diptotes which have two cases onely, as, Nom. *fors*, Abl. *forte*, hap: Gen. *spontis*, Abl. *sponte*, of one's own accord: Nom. *plus*, Gen. *pluris*, more: Gen. *repetundarum*, of bribery: Abl. *repetundis*: Gen. *jugeriis*, of an acre, Abl. *jugere*: Gen. *verberis*, of a stroke, Abl. *verbere*: Nom. *suppetiis*, aid, Acc. *suppetias*: Nom. *tantundem*, so much, Gen. *tantidem*: Gen. *impetis*, violence, Abl. *impete*: Acc. *vicem*, a turn, Abl. *vice*: whereof *verberis*, *vicem*, *plus*, and *jugeriis*, have all their cases in the plural number.

4. Those are Triptotes which have three cases onely; as, Gen. *precis*, Acc. *precem*, Abl. *prece*, prayer: Gen. *opis*, Acc. *opem*, Abl. *ope*, help.

Vis, force, wanteth no case except the Dative. And these have all their cases in the plural number.

5 Relatives; as, *qui* which: Interrogatives; as, *ecquis*, who: Distributives; as, *nullus*, none: neuter, neither, and *omnis* all.

Cap. 19.

De Heteroclitis defectivis Casu.

1 *Quæ sequitur manca est Numero, casique propago.*

2.
Defectiva
Casu.

1 *Quæ nullum variant casum; ut, fas, nil, nihil, instar;
Multa & in u simul i, ut sunt hæc cornūque, genūque;
Sic gummi, frugi; sic Tempe, tor, quor, & omnes
A tribus ad centum numeros aptota vocabis.*

2 *Estque Monoptoton nomen, cui vox cadit una;
Cen noctu, natu, jussu, injussu, simul astu,
Promptu, permittu, plurali legimus astus,
Legimus inficias, sed vox ea sola reperta est.*

3 *Sunt Diptota, quibus duplex flexura remansit,
ut, fors, forte dabit sexto; spontis quoque sponte;
Sic plus, pluris habet; repetundarum, repetundis;
Jugeris, & sexto dat jugere; verberis autem
Verbere; suppetiz quarto quoque suppetias dant.
Tantundem dat tantidem, simul impetis hoc dat
Impete; junge vicem sexto vice; nec lego plura.
Verberis, atque vicem, sic plus cum jugere, cunctos
Quatuor hæc numero casus tenere secundo.*

4 *Tres quibus inflectis casus Triptota vocantur,
ut, precis, atque precem, petit & prece blandus amicam,
Sic opis est nostra, fer opem legi, atque ope dignum.
Integra vox vis est, nisi desit forte Dativus;
Omnibus his nullus numerus prior, integer alter.*

5 *Quæ referunt, ut, qui; quæ percontantur, ut, ecquis;
Et quæ distribuunt; ut, nullus, neuter, & omnis.*

Indefinites ; as, *quilibet*, any one: *alter*, another: want the Vocative case, and all Pronouns, except *Noster*, ours: *nostras*, on our side: *meus*, mine: *tu*, thou.

Cap. 20.

Of Heteroclits that want Number.

Defective
In the
Singular
Number.

1. ALL Proper Names, having a restraining nature, do want the plural number ; as, *Mars, is*, Mars: *Cato, tonis*, Cato: *Gallia, lie*, France: *Roma, me*, Rome: *Ida, de*, a hill near Troy: *Tagus, gi*, the river Cato in Spain: *Lelaps, pis*, Tempest, a dogs name: *Pernassus, fi*, a hill in Phocis: *Bucephalus, li*, Alexanders horse. Add to these, the names of Corns, as, *tritium*, wheat. Things sold by Weight ; as, *Lana*, wool: Of Herbs, as *salvia*, sage: Of Liquors, as, *Cervisia*, beer: Of Metals, as, *aurum*, gold; wherein observe the opinion of Authors, for sometimes they keep, sometimes they reject the plural number.

2. *Hordeum, dei*, barley: *far, ris*, bread-corn: *forum, ri*, a market: *mel, id*, hony: *mulsum, fi*, wine mingled with hony: *defrutum, ti*, wine boiled to the half: and *thus, thuris*, frankincense, have onely three like cases in the plural number.

3. These Masculines want the plural number ; *Hesperus, ri*, the evening star: *vesper, ris*, the evening: *pontus, ti*, the sea: *limus, mi*, mud: *sternus, mi*, dung: *penus, mi*, vel *penus*, victuals: *sanguis, guinis*, blood: *aether, ris*, the skie: and *nemo*, no body: but *nemo* wants the Genitive and vocative singular, as well as the plural number.

4. These Feminines have seldome the plural number ; *Pubes, bu*, ripeness of age: *salus, latus*, health: *talio, onis*, like for like: *indoles, lis*, towardliness: *infus, fis*, the cough.

*Infinita solent his jungi, ut, quilibet, alter ;
 Quinto hæc sæpe carent casu ; & Pronomina præter
 Quatuor hæc infra, noster, nostras, meus, & tu.*

Cap. 20.

De Heteroclitis defectivis Numero.

1. **P**ROPRIA cuncta notes, quibus est natura coërens, Defective
Numero
Singulari.
 Plurima nè fuerint, ut, Mars, Caro, Gallia, Roma,

Ida, Tagus, Lælaps, Parnassius, Bucephalusque.

His frumenta dabis, pensa, herbas, uva, metalla ;

In quibus Autorum que sint placita ipse requiras ;

Est ubi pluralem retinent hæc, est ubi spernunt.

2. Hordea, farra, forum, mel, mullum, defrutum ;
 (thusque,
 Tres tantum similes voces pluralia servant.

3. Hesperus, & vespër, pontus, limusque, fimusque,

Sic penus, & sanguis, sic æther, nemo ; sed ista

Mascula sunt numerum vix excedentia primum.

Nemo caret genito, quinto, numeroque secundo,

4. Singula feminei generis pluralia raro ;

Pubes atque salus, sic talio cum indole, tussis,

pis, cū, pitch : *humus, mī, the ground* : *lues, is, the murrain* : *sitis, tis, thirst* : *fuga, gē, flight* : *quies, ētis, rest* : *cholera, rē, choler* : *fames, mis, hunger* : *bilis, lis, choler* : *senectā, tē, old age* : *juventus, ūtis, youth* : But *joboles, lis, an offspring* : *labes, bis, a spot* : and all nouns of the fifth Declension will have three like cases in the plural number, except, *res, rei, a thing* : *species, ciēi, a kinde* : *facies, ciēi, a face* : *acies, ciēi, an edge* : and *dies, diēi, a day* : which words are whole in the plural number. To these they are wont to add many Feminines ; as, *Stultitia, tiē, foolishness* : *invidia, diē, envy* : *sapientia, tiē, wisdom* : *desidia, diē, sloth* : and a many words of like sort, which reading afford's : and these sometimes, but very seldome, have the plural number.

5 These Neuters have not the plural number ; *Delicium, cū, one's delight* : *senium, nī, old age* : *letibum, thi, death* : *canum, vi, dirt* : *salum, li, the salt sea* : *baratrum, thri, hell* : *virus, poison* : *vitrum, tri, glass* : *viscum, sci, bird-line* : *pœnum, ni, provision* : *iussitium, cii, vacation-time* : *nihilum, li, nothing* : *ver, veris, the spring* : *lac, ſtis, milk* : *gluten, tinis, glue* : *balet, lectis, an herring* : *gelu, frost* : *solum, ti, a throne* : *jubar, baris, the sun-beam*. Here also you may put many such like, which you shall meet with as you read.

And Plural 6 These masculines have onely the plural number ; *Mares, rium, spirits* : *maiores, rum, Ancestors* : *cancelli, lorum, a lattice* : *liberi, rorum, children* : *antes, tium, the first rank of vines* : *menes, sium, women's flowers* : *lemures, rum, hobgoblins* : *fasti, forum, a Register-book* : *minores, rum, posterity* : *natales, sium, ones stock* : *penates, tium, household gods* and names of places ; as, *Gabii, biorum, Locri, trorum* ; and whatsoever the like you read any where.

7 These are of the Feminine gender and plural Number ; Exuvie,

Pix, humus, atque lues, sitis & fuga jūge, quīetē;
 Sic cholera, atque fames, bilisq̄ue, senectū, juvenitū;
 Sed tamen hæc, soboles, labes, ut & omnia quintæ,
 Tres similes casus plurali sæpe tenebunt;
 Excipe res, species, facies, aciēsque, diēsque,
 Quas voces numero totas licet esse secundo.

Istis multa solent muliebria nectere, ut hæc sunt;
 Stultitia, invidia, sapientia, desidia, atque
 Id genus innumere voces, quas lectio præbet.
 Rariùs his numerum, quandoque sed adde secundum.

5 Nec licet his Neutris numerum deferre secundum;
 Delicium, senium, lethum, coenūq̄ue, salūq̄ue;
 Sic barathrum, virus, vitrum, viscūq̄ue, penūq̄ue;
 Justitium, nihilum, ver, lac, gluten, simul hæc;
 Adde gelu, solium, jubar. Hic quoque talia parat,

Quæ tibi, si observes, occurrent multa legenti.

6 Mascula sunt numero tantū contenta secundo; Et plurali
 Manes, majores, cancelli, liberi, & anres;
 Menses [profluvium] lémures, fasti, atque minores;
 Cū genus assignant, narales: adde penates;
 Et loca plurali, quales Gabiique, Locriq̄ue,
 Et quæcūque legas passim similis rationis.

7 Hæc sunt Faminei generis, numerique secundi;
 Exuviae,

Exuvia, arum, an Adder's slough: *phalera, yarum*, hoise-trappings: *Nom. grates, Acc. grates*, thanks: *manubie, arum*, spoil: *Idus, iduū*, the Ides of months: *antie, arum*, fore-locks: *inducia, arum*, truce: *insidia, arum*, lying in wait: *mine, narū*, threatenings: *excubie, arum*, watch and ward: *Nonæ narum*, the Nones of a month: *nugæ, garum*, trifles: *trice, carum*, gew-gaws: *Calendæ, arum*, the first day of the month: *quisquilie, arum*, sweepings: *thermæ, marum*, hot bathes: *cunæ, narum*, a cradle: *diræ, yarum*, curling: *exequie, arum*, rites at funerals: *inferiæ, arum*, sacrifices to the infernal spirits: *feriæ, arum*, holidays: *primitiæ, arum*, the first fruits: *plagæ, arum*, hunters nets: *valvæ, yarum*, double, or two leav'd doors: *divitiæ, arum*, riches: *nuptiæ, arum*, a wedding: *lactes etium*, the small guts. To these may be added *Thebæ, barum*, Thebes: *Athene, narum*, Athens in Greece; of which sort you may finde many names of places.

3. These Neuters have seldome the singular number; *Menia, ium*, the walls of a Town: *tesqua, squorum*, rough places: *precordia, orum*, the midriff: *lustra, strorum*, dens of wild-beasts: *arma, morum*, weapons: *mapalia, liorum*, cottages: *bellaria, riorum*, juncates: *munia, niorū*, an office: *castra, strorum*, tents: *justa, storum*, Rites at funerals: *sponsalia, liorum*, betrothing: *rostra, strorum*, a pulpit: *crepundia, orum*, a rattle: *cunabula, torum*, a cradle: *exta, torum*, the entrails of beasts: *effata, torum*, a Douthlayer's mutterings. To these may be added the Heathenish Festival names; as, *Bacchanalia, liorum*, a Feast to Bacchus; and if you shall read more, you may put them under this Rule.

Exuvix, phalerx, gratxque, manubix, & idus,
 Antix, & inducix, simul infidixque, minixque,
 Excubix, nonx, nugx, tricxque, calendx,
 Quisquilix, thermx, cunx, dirx, exequixque,
 Inferix, & ferix, sic primitixque, plagxque,
 Retia signantes, & valvx, divitixque,
 Nuptix item & lactes. Addantur Thebx, & Athenx;
 Quod genus invenias & nomina plura locorum.

8. Rariùs hæc primo plurali neutra leguntur;
 Atroxia, cum telquis, præcordia, lustra ferarum,
 Arma, mapalia, sic bellaria, munia castra,
 Funus iusta petit, petit & sponsalia virgo,
 Rostra desertus amat, pueriq; crepundia gessat;
 Infantéq; colunt cunabula, consulit extra
 Augur, & absolvens superis effata recantat.
 Festa Deüm poterunt, teu Bacchanalia, jungi.
 Quod si plura leges, licet hæc quoq; classe reponas.

Chap. 21.

Of redundant or abounding Heteroclits.

3.
Redundant

THese nouns (as it were) have too much, following divers forms; for they vary both their gender, and termination; viz. *tonitrus*, & *tonitru*, thunder; *clypeus*, *pei*, & *clypeum*, *pei*, a buckler; *baculus*, *li*, & *baculum*, *li*, & *bacillum*, *li*, a staff: *sensus*, *sūs*, a sense & *sensum* *f*, a conceit, or meaning; *tignus*, *ni*, & *tignum* *ni*, a rafter: *tapetum*, *ti*, *tapete*, *tis*, & *tapes*, *pētis*, *tapestry*: *punctus*, *eli*, & *punctum*, *eli*, a point: *sinapi*, & *sinapis*, *pis*, mustard: *sinus*, *ni*, & *sinum*, *ni*, a milk vessel: *menda*, *de*, & *mendum*, *di*, a fault: *viscus*, *sci*, & *viscum*, *sci*, birdlime: *cornu* & *cornum*, *ni*, an horn: and *cornus*, *nūs*, the wing of an army: (as Lucane saith) *eventus*, *iūs*, & *eventum*, *ti*, an hap: and a thousand such, which reading will afford thee.

2 Some Greek words doe make a new Latine word in their Accusative case: as *Panther*, *theris* make's *Panthera*, *re*, a Panther: *crater*, *teris*, make's *cratera*, *re*, a goblet: *casus*, *fidis*, make's *casida*, *de*, an helmet: *aether*, *theris*, make's *aethera*, *re*, the skie.

3 In these nouns the Nominative case is diverse, but the sense and gender are all one; viz. *Gibbus*, *bi*, & *gibber*, *beris*, a bunch or swelling: *cucumis*, *mis*, & *cucumber*, *meris*, a cucumber: *stipis*, *pis*, & *stips*, *pis*, wages: *cinis*, *neris*, & *ciner*, *neris*, ashes: *vomis*, *meris*, & *vomer*, *meris*, a ploughshare: *scobis*, *bis*, & *scobs*, *bis*, sawdust: *pulvis*, *veris*, & *pulver*, *veris*, dust: *pubes*, *bis*, & *puber*, *beris*, ripeness of age. Adde hereunto nouns ending in *or*, and *os*; as, *Honor*, *nōris*, & *honor*, *nōris*, honor, *labor*, *bōris*, & *labos*, *bōris*, labor: *arbor*, *boris*, & *arbos*, *boris*, a tree: *odor*, *dōris*, & *odos*, *dōris*, labor:

Also

Cap. 21.

De Heteroclitis Redundantibus.

1. **H**Æ quasi luxuriant varias imitantia formas :
 Nam genus & vocem variant, tonitrus, tonitrûq; Redundantia.
 Sic clypeus, clypeum; baculus, baculum, atq; bacillum;
 Sensus, & hoc sensum; tignus, tignûmq; tapetum,
 Atque tapete, tapes; punctus, punctûmq; sinapi,
 Quod genus immutans fertur scelerata sinapis;
 Sinus, & hoc sinum [vas lactis;] mendâque, mendum;
 Viscus & hoc viscum; sic cornu, & flexile cornum;
 At Lucanus ait cornûs tibi cura finire.
 Eventus, simul eventum; Sed quid moror istus?
 Talia doctorum tibi lectio mille ministrat.

2. Sed tibi præterea quædam sunt Græca notanda;
 Quæ quarto casu satum peperere Latinum:
 Nam panther, panthera creat, craterâque crater,
 Cassida cassis habet, sed & æther, æthera fundis.
 Hinc cratera venit, venit æthera; sic caput ipsum
 Cassida magna tegit, nec vult panthera domari.

3. Vertitur his rectus, sensus manet & genus æquum;
 Gibbus, & hic gibber; cucumis, cucumer; stipis, (stips;
 Sic cinis, atque ciner; vomis, vomer; scobis & scobs;
 Pulvis, item pulver; pubes, puber; quibus addes

Quæ pariunt or & os; honor, & labor, arbor, odorque.
 His

Also *apes*, *pis*, and *apis*, *pis*, a Bee : *plebs*, *bi*, and *plebes*, *bei*, the common people. There be also many nouns coming from the Greeks, having this double manner ; as, *Delphin*, *phini*, and *Delphinus*, *phini*, a Dolphin : *Elephas*, *phantis*, and *Elephantus*, *ti*, an Elephant : *Congrus*, *gri*, and *Conger*, *gri*, a Conger Eel : *Meleagrus*, *gri*, and *Meleager*, *gri* ; *Tencrus*, *cri*, and *Tencer*, *cri*. And hitherto you shall refer all such as these, which your reading affordeth.

4. These nouns are both of the second and fourth Declension ; viz. *Laurus*, *vi*, and *rus*, a Bay tree : *quercus*, *ci*, and *cus*, an Oak : *pinus*, *ni*, and *nus*, a Pine tree : *figus*, *ci*, and *chs*, a fig, or a fig tree : *colus*, *li*, and *lus*, a distaff : *penus*, *ni*, and *nus*, provision : *cornus*, *ni*, and *nus*, a Dog tree : *lacus*, *ci*, and *cus*, a lake : and *domus*, *mi*, and *mus*, an house, or home. Though these be not thus found in every case, You shall read also more than these, which you may leave to old Authors.

When you decline *Domus*, omit the cases ending in *me*, *mu*, in the singular ; and *mi*, *mis*, in the plural number.

5. Many Adjectives also doe abound, but especially such as come of these Substantives ; *Arma*, *marum*, Arms : *jugum*, *gi*, a yoke : *nervus*, *vi*, a sinew : *somnus*, *ni*, sleep : *clivus*, *vi*, a side of an hill : *animus*, *mi*, a minde : *limus*, *mi*, mud : *frenum*, *ni*, a bridle : *cera*, *re*, wax : *bacillum*, *li*, a staff : of which Substantives you may make Adjectives in *us* and *is* ; as of *Arma*, is made *inermus* and *inermis*, unarmed : *Hilarus*, merry, is seldome used, but *hilaris*, is well known to be used,

His & apes, & apis, plebes, plebes. Sunt quoque multa

Accepta à Græcis geminam referentia formam;

Ut, delphin, delphinus, & hic elephas, elephæus;

Sic congrus, conger, Meleagrus, sic Meleager;

Teucus, item Teucer. Dabis huc & cætera cuncta,

Quæ tibi par ratio dederint & lectio casta.

4. *Hæc simul & quarti flexûs simul atque secundi;*

Laurus enim lauri facit, & laurus genitivo;

Sic quercus, pinus, pro fructu ac arbore ficus,

Sic colus, atque penus, cornus quando arbor habetur;

Sic lacus atque domus; licet hæc nec ubique recurrant.

His quoque p'ura leges, quæ præcis jure relinquant.

Tolle me, mu, mi, mîs, si declinare domum vis.

5. *Et quæ luxuriant sunt, Adjectiva notanda*

Multa, sed imprimis quot & hæc tibi nomina fundunt:

Arma, jugum, nervus, somnus, cævusque, animusque,

Et quot limus habet, quot frænum, & cera, bacillum;

A quibus us, simul is formes, ut, inermus, inermis;

Ravior est hilarus, vox est hilaris bene nota;

Chap. 22. Of the kindes of Nouns.

Nouns,
are,I.
Primitive.I. **T**Hese Nouns which follow, and such like be
Primitives, viz.1. A noun *Collective*, which signifieth a multitude
in the singular number; as, *Turba*, a rout: *grex*, a
flock.2. *Fictitious*, which is feigned of the sound; as,
Sibilus, an hissing: *tintinnabulum*, a tinkling.3. *Interrogatives*, which we use in asking; as,
Quot, how many: *qualis*, what an one?4. *Redditive*, which gives answer to the interro-
gative; as, *Tot*, so many: *talis*, such an one.*Indefinites*, which do not define a
certain thingAnd these two *Relatives*, which are referred to
do sometimes the word aforegoing; as, *Talis*
turn into *erat*, *qualem nunquam vidi*.
He was such an one as I never
*saw.*5. *Numeral*, which signifies a number on any
fashion, whose kindes are also many, viz.1. *Cardinal*, from which numerals proceed; as,
Unus, one: *duo*, two.2. *Ordinals*, which denotes an order; as, *Primus*,
the first: *secundus*, the second.3. *Distributive*, which divides the whole into parts,
as, *Singuli*, several: *bini*, two and two.4. *Partitives*, which signifieth either many sever-
ally; as, *Quisque*, evertie one: *uterque*, both: or one
of many; as, *Alter*, one of the two: *aliquis*, some one.5. *Universal*, which signifies a thing universally;
as, *Omnis*, all: *nullus*, none.6. *Particular*, which signifieth part of the univer-
sal; as, *Quidam*, one: *aliquis*, some bodie.7. *Multi*.

Cap. 22. De Speciebus Nominum.

I. **N**omina *Primitiva* sunt hæc quæ sequuntur, & Nomina
hujusmodi, viz. sunt.

1. *Collectivum*, quod singulari numero multitudi-
nem significat; ut, *Turba, grex.*

I.
Primitiva.

2. *Fictitium*, quod à sono fingitur; ut, *Sibilus, tin-
tinnabulum.*

3. *Interrogativum*, quo in interrogando utimur;
ut, *Quot? qualis?*

4. *Redditivum*, quod Interrogativo responsum red-
dit; ut, *Tot, talis.*

Atque hæc duo } *Indefinita*, quæ certam rem non defi-
migrant ali- } niunt.
quando in } *Relativa*, quæ ad vocem præceden-
tem referuntur; ut, *Talis erat,*
} *quæ em nunquam vidi.*

5. *Numerale*, quod numerum aliquo modo signifi-
cat, cujus etiam species multæ sunt, viz.

1. *Cardinale*, à quo alia numeralia dimanant; ut,
Unus, duo.

2. *Ordinale*, quod ordinem denotat; ut, *Primus,
secundus.*

3. *Distributivum*, quod totum in partes distribuit;
ut, *singuli, bini.*

4. *Partitivum*, quod significat vel multa singula-
tim; ut, *Quisque, uterque;* vel unum è multis; ut,
Alter, aliquis.

5. *Universale*, quod universaliter rem significat;
ut, *Omnis, nullus.*

6. *Particulare*, quod partem universalis significat;
ut, *Quidam, aliquis.*

7. *Multi-*

7. *Multiplicative*, which signifieth the multiplicity of a thing; as, *Simplex*, single: *duplex*, double.

8. *Proportional* which signifieth proportion; as, *Simplem*, a single part: *duplum* a double part.

9. *Temporal*, which signifieth time, as, *Binus*, two years old: *trinus*, three years old. and *biennis*, of two year's standing, *triennis*, of three years standing, or continuance.

10. *Ponderal*, which signifieth the weight of a thing; as *Binarius*, of two pound weight: *ternarius*, three pound weight.

2. *Derivative* 11. *Derivatives*, are also of many sorts, whereof these be the chief.

1. *Verbal*, which is derived of a Verb; as, *Lectio*, reading: *flexilis*, flexible.

2. *Patril*, which signifieth the Countrey; as *Londonensis*, a Londoner.

3. *Gentile*, which betokeneth the Nation Side, or Sect, as, *Græcus*, a Greek: *Ciceronianus* one of Ciceros side: *Christianus* a Christian, or follower of Christ.

4. *Patronymic* which is derived either from the Father, or some other person of the familie; as, *Æacides*, the son of Æacus.

5 Patro- nymic nouns end in	{ des, }	as,	{ Latoïdes the son of Latona Iapetion, the son of Iapetus. }	{ Masculi- lines. }
	{ ion, }			
	{ as, }	as,	{ Ilias, the daughter of Iliæ. }	{ Femini- nes. }
	{ is, }			
		{ as,	{ Menelæis, the wife of Menelæus. Nerine, the daugh- ter of Nereus. }	
	{ ne: }			

6. *Diminutive*, which lesseneth the signification of its Primitive; as, *Stultulus* a little fool: *lapillulus*, a little stone.

7. *Possessive*,

7. *Multiplicativum*, quod multiplicatam rei significat; ut *Simplex*, *duplex*.

8. *Proportionale*, quod proportionem significat; ut *Simplum*, *duplum*.

9. *Temporale*, quod tempus significat; ut, *Binus*, *trinus*, & *Biennis*, *triennis*.

10. *Ponderale*, quod pondus significat; ut, *Ternarius*, *centenarius*.

11. *Derivativa*, etiam sunt multiplicia, horum hæ sunt præcipuæ species.

2.
Derivativa

1. *Verale*, quod à verbo derivatur; ut, *Lectio*, *scixilis*.

2. *Patrium*, quod patriam significat; ut, *Londinensis*.

3. *Gentile*, quod gentem, partes, aut sectam significat; ut *Græcus*, *Ciceronianus*, *Christianus*.

4. *Patronymicum*, quod vel à patre, vel ab alia quâpiam suæ familiæ personâ derivatur; ut, *Atides*.

5. Desinunt autem Patronymica vel in	{ des, }	} ut	{ Latoïdes }	} Masculina.
	{ ion, }		{ Iapétion }	
	{ as }	} ut	{ Ilias, }	} Fœminina.
	{ is }		{ Mene'âis, }	
	{ ne, }		{ Nerine, }	

6. *Diminutivum*, quod significationem sui Primitivi minuit; ut *Stultulus*, *lapillulus*.

7. *Possessive*, which signifieth owing, or Possession; as, *Regius*, the King's, or, of the King: *pater-nus*, the father's, or of a father.

8. *Denominative*, which hath its name from another, which differeth from it in termination onely; as, *Justitia*, justice, of *justus*, just.

9. *Material*, which signifieth matter; as, *Aureus*, golden.

10. *Local*, which denoteth a place; as, *Hortensis*, of the garden; *agrestis*, of the field.

11. *Participial*, which is made of a participle, as, *Sapiens* wise.

12. *Adverbial*, which is derived of an Adverb; as, *Crastinus*, of to morrow: And here we must diligently observe,

1. All words whose original is unknown or uncertain, may be accounted Primitives in the Latine tongue; yea, though they flow from another Language; as, *Ego, musa*.

2. Lest you be ridiculous in finding the beginnings of words, you may observe diligently the terminations which come to the Primitives; as of *Amor* I love, is made *amator* a lover; *amicus* a friend; *amabilis*, lovely, &c.



Chap. 23. Of a Pronoun.

A Pronoun
is put for a
Noun.
There be
fifteen
Pronouns.

A Pronoun is a Part of Speech put for a Noun, and supplying its stead.

There be fifteen Pronouns; *Ego*, I, *tu*, thou, *sui*, of himself, *ille*, he, *ipse*, himself, *iste*, yond, *hic*, this, *is*, it, *meus*, mine, *tuus*, thine, *suius*, his own, *nostrus* ours, *vester*, yours, *nostras*, our countrey-man, *vestras*, yours.

To

7. *Possessivum*, quod possessionem significat; ut, *Regius, paternus*.

8. *Denominativum*, quod ab alio solâ terminatione differt; ut, *Iustitia à iustus*.

9. *Materiale*, quod materiam significat; ut, *Aureus*.

10. *Locale*, quod locum denotat; ut, *Hortensis, agrestis*.

11. *Participiale*, quod à Participio fit; ut, *Sapiens*.

12. *Adverbiale*, quod ab Adverbio derivatur; ut, *Crastinus, à cras*. Diligenter autem hic observandum, quòd,

1. Omnes voces habeantur pro Primitivis in Latina linguâ, quarum origo in eadem vel ignota vel incerta est; imò, licet ab alia linguâ dimanent, ut, *Ego, musa*.

2. Nè ridiculus sis in investigandis dictionum originibus, diligenter observes terminationes quæ Primitivis accedunt; ut, ab *Amo*, fit *amator, amicus, amabilis*, &c.



Cap. 23. De Pronomine.

Pronomen est pars Orationis pro Nomine posita, & vicem ejus supplens.

Pronomina sunt quindecim; *Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, nostras, vestras*.

Pronomen
pro Nomi-
ne ponitur.
Sunt autem
Pronomina
quindecim.

To which may be added, *Qui*, which: *quis*, who: *cujus*; whose: *cujas*, whose countrie-man

Whereof
som: be

And some of these be called

{ Pronoun Substantives, viz *Ego, tu, sui*
which are referred to three genders,
without varying their termination
Pronoun Adjectives, viz. all the rest
which be varied by three genders;
as, *Meus, mea, meum*.

Primitives,

and some

Derivative

According to their Species. Pro- nouns are called

1. *Primitives*, which are the first word; as; *Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, iste, hic, is*, and *qui*.
and { *Demonstratives*, which are used in
these { shewing a thing not spoken of be-
be { fore; as *Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, hic, is*.
call'd { *Relatives*, which we use in rehear-
ing a thing that was spoken of be-
fore; as *Ille, ipse, iste, is*, and *qui*.
2. *Derivatives*, are such as are derived of their
Primitives; as, *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*,
Nostras, vestras. cujus, cujas, are derived from
the Genitive cases of their Primitives, *Mi*
tui, sui, nostri, vestri, nostrum, vestrum, and *quis*
from the Nominative case *qui*.

Of these some are

Possessives, which signifie owning or Possession; as,
Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester.

Gentiles, which signifie belonging to Countries, or
Nations, to Sects or Factions; as, *nostras, vestras*; and
cujas, which were once used as Nouns in *atis*, and *ate*.

Finites, which define, or set out a certain person;
as, *Ego, tu*;

Indefinites, which do not define a certain person;
as, *Quis, cujus*.

Reciprocals, which betake themselves to the same
third person which went before it; as *Sui, suus*.

Peter intreateth thou wouldst not forsake him,

Every man spareth his own Errors.

Every man is drawn of his own pleasure. There

Quibus addi possint, *Qui, quis, cujus & cujas*

Horum autem alia dicuntur.

{ *Substantiva*, viz. *Ego, tu, sui*, quæ ad tria genera referuntur sine variatione

{ *Adjectiva*, viz. omnia reliqua quæ per tria genera variantur; ut *Meus, mea, meum*.

Secundum Speciem suam dicuntur

{ 1. *Primitiva*, quæ sunt primæ voces, viz. *Ego, tu, sui, ille ipse, iste, hic, is, & qui*. Quorum alia *Primitiva*.

{ *Demonstrativa*, quæ in re aliquâ non prius dictâ demonstrantur usurpantur; ut *Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, hic, is*.

{ *Relativa*, quibus in repetenda re aliquâ prius dictâ utimur; ut, *ille, ipse, iste, hic, is & qui*.

{ 2. *Derivativa*, quæ derivantur à suis *Primitivis*, Et alia *Derivativa*.
ut, *Mens, tuus suus, noster, vester, nostras vestras*,
(*quis, cujus, & cujas*).

Ex his etiam alia sunt.

Possessiva, quæ possessionem significant; ut, *Mens, tuus suus, noster, vester*.

Gentilia, quæ gentem aut nationem, vel partes & sectas significant; ut, *Nostras, vestras, & cujas*, quæ proferebantur olim ut nomina in *ais, ate*.

Finita, quæ definiunt certam personam; ut, *Ego, tu*.

Indefinita, quæ certam personam non definiunt; ut, *Quis, cujus*,

Reciproca, quæ recipiunt se ad eandem tertiam personam quæ præcessit; ut, *Sui, suus*.

Petrus rogat nè se deferat.

Parcit quisque erroribus suis.

Trahit sua quemque voluptas, i, e, Quisque trahitur à voluptate suâ.

Declin-

There be foure Declensions of Pronouns.

Pronouns
have four
Declensions

The Genitive case singular of the first Declension endeth in *i*: of the Second in *ius*, or *jus*: of the Third in *i*, *e*, *i*: of the Fourth in *atis*.

Of the first *Ego*, *tu*, *sui*, be of the first Declension, and are thus declined.

Singulariter,	N.	<i>Ego</i> , I.	Pluraliter,	N.	<i>Nos</i> , we.
	G.	<i>Mei</i> of me.		G.	<i>Nostm</i> , <i>nostri</i> , of us.
	D.	<i>Mibi</i> to me		D.	<i>Nobis</i> to us.
	A.	<i>Me</i> , me.		A.	<i>Nos</i> , us.
	V.			V.	
	A.	<i>à Me</i> , from me		A.	<i>à Nobis</i> , from us.

Singulariter,	N.	<i>Tu</i> , thou.	Pluraliter,	N.	<i>Vos</i> , yee.
	G.	<i>Tui</i> , of thee.		G.	<i>Vestm</i> , <i>vestri</i> , of you.
	D.	<i>Tibi</i> , to thee		D.	<i>Vobis</i> , to you.
	A.	<i>Te</i> , thee.		A.	<i>Vos</i> , you.
	V.	<i>ô Tu</i> , ô thou.		V.	<i>ô Vos</i> , ô yee.
	A.	<i>à Te</i> , from thee		A.	<i>à Vobis</i> , from you.

Sing. and Plur.	Gen.	<i>Sui</i> , of himself, or	But it wants the Nominat. and Vocative case in both Numbers.
	Dar.	<i>Sibi</i> , them selves	
	Acc.	<i>Se</i> .	
	Abl.	<i>à Se</i> .	

Of the second *Ille*, *ipse*, *iste*.

Ille, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *qui*, and *quis* be of the second Declension, and be thus declined.

Singulariter,	N.	<i>Iste</i> , <i>ista</i> , <i>istud</i> .	Pluraliter,	N.	<i>Isti</i> , <i>iste</i> , <i>ista</i> .
	G.	<i>Istius</i> .		G.	<i>Istorum</i> , <i>istarum</i> , <i>istorum</i> .
	D.	<i>Isti</i> .		D.	<i>Istis</i> .
	A.	<i>Istū</i> , <i>istam</i> , <i>istud</i>		A.	<i>Istos</i> , <i>istas</i> , <i>ista</i> .
	V.			V.	
	A.	<i>Isto</i> , <i>istā</i> , <i>isto</i> .		A.	<i>Istis</i> .

Ille, and *ipse* are declined like *iste*, saving that *ipse* in the Neuter Gender, in the Nominative and the Accusative case singular maketh *ipsum*.

Hic

Declinationes Pronominum sunt quatuor.

Pronomina
quatuor
habent De-
clinationes

Genitivus Singularis Primæ Declinationis exit in *i* : Secundæ in *ius*, vel *jus* : Tertiæ in *i*, *e*, *i* : Quartæ in *ais*.

Ego, tu, sui, Primæ sunt Declinationis, & sic variantur.

Primæ sunt
Ego, tu, sui.

Singular.	Nom.	<i>Ego.</i>	Plural.	Nom.	<i>Nos.</i>
	Gen.	<i>Mei.</i>		Gen.	<i>Nostrum</i> , vel <i>Nostri</i> .
	Dat.	<i>Mibi.</i>		Dat.	<i>Nobis</i>
	Acc.	<i>Me.</i>		Accu	<i>Nos.</i>
	Voc.			Voc.	
	Abl.	<i>à Me.</i>		Abl.	<i>à Nobis.</i>

Singular.	Nom.	<i>Tu.</i>	Plural.	Nom.	<i>Vos.</i>
	Gen.	<i>Tui.</i>		Gen.	<i>Vestrum</i> ; vel <i>Vestri</i> .
	Dat.	<i>Tibi.</i>		Dat.	<i>Vobis.</i>
	Acc.	<i>Te.</i>		Acc.	<i>Vos.</i>
	Voc.	<i>ô Tu.</i>		Voc.	<i>ô Vos.</i>
	Abl.	<i>à Te.</i>		Abl.	<i>à Vobis.</i>

Sing. & Plur.	{	Gen.	<i>Sui.</i>	{	Caret autem Nominativo & Vocativo utriusque Nu- meri.
		Dat.	<i>Sibi.</i>		
		Acc.	<i>Se.</i>		
		Abl.	<i>à Se</i>		

Ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, qui, & quis, secundæ sunt Declinationis, & sic variantur.

Secundæ
Ille, ipse, iste

Singulariter,	N.	<i>Iste, ista, istud.</i>	Pluraliter,	N.	<i>Isti, ista, ista.</i>
	G.	<i>Istius.</i>		G.	<i>Istorum, istarum, istorum.</i>
	D.	<i>Isti.</i>		D.	<i>Istis.</i>
	A.	<i>Istum, istam, istud.</i>		A.	<i>Istos, istas, ista.</i>
	V.			V.	
	A.	<i>Isto, ista, isto.</i>		A.	<i>Istis.</i>

Ille, & *ipse* variantur sicut *iste*, nisi quod *ipse* in Neutro genere in Nominativo & Accusativo singulari facit *ipsum*.

Hic

Hic, is.

Hic is declined as is aforefaid in the Articles,
page 24.

Singular.	Nom.	Is, ea, id,	Plural.	Nom.	i, ea, ea
	Gen.	Ejus		Gen.	Eorum, earum, eorum
	Dat.	Ei		Dat.	Iis, vel eis
	Acc.	Eum, eam, id		Accu.	Eos, eas, ea
	Voc.			Voc.	
	Abl.	Eo, e, eo		Abl.	Iis, vel eis

So also is the
Compound of *is*
and *demum* de-
clined

Sing.	Nom.	Idem, eadem, idem.
	Gen.	Ej, idem
	Dat.	Eidem
	Acc.	Eundem, eandem, idem.

Singulariter,	N.	Qui, quæ, quod,	Singulariter,	N.	Qui, quæ, quæ
	G.	Cujus		G.	Quorum, quærum, quorum
	D.	Qui		D.	Quibus, vel quibus
	A.	Quem, quæ, quod,		A.	Quos, quas, quæ
	V.			V.	
	A.	Quo, } quæ, quo		A.	{ Quibus Quibus

After this manner also is declined *Quis, quæ, quid,*

But its compound thus,	No.	Quisquis, quic, quid
	Acc.	Quicquid
	Abl.	Quoquo, quaquæ, quoquo

Of the third
Meus, tuus
suus, noster
vester, cujus

Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester and *cujus* be of the
third Declension, and are declined like Adjectives of
three Terminations on this manner.

Nominativo	<i>Meus, mea, meum</i>	Genitivo	<i>Mei, meæ, mei</i>	And so in the other cases,
	<i>Tuus, tua, tuum</i>		<i>Tui, tuæ, tui</i>	
	<i>Suus, sua, suum</i>		<i>Sui, suæ, sui</i>	
	<i>Noster, nostra, nostrum</i>		<i>Nostri, nostræ, nostri</i>	
	<i>Vester, vestra, vestrum</i>		<i>Vestri, vestræ, vestri</i>	
	<i>Cujus, cujæ, cujum</i>			

But *Meus* hath *Mi, meæ, meum*, in the Vocative case
singular.

Nostros,

Hic declinatur ut prius in Articulis dictum est, Hic, &c.

p. 25.

Singulariter,	Nom.	Is, ea, id.	Pluraliter,	{ N.	Is, ea, ea,
	Gen.	Ejus.		{ G.	Eorum, earum, eorum.
	Dat.	Ei.		{ D.	Iis, vel eis.
	Accu.	Eum, eam, id.		{ Ac.	Eos, eas, ea.
	Voc.			{ Vo.	
	Abl.	Eo, ea, eo.		{ Ab.	Iis, vel eis.

Sic variatur etiam compositum ab is & demum :	Sing.	Nom.	Idem, eadem, idem.
		Gen.	Ejusdem.
		Dat.	Eidem.
		Accu.	Eundem, eandem, idem.

Singulariter,	{ N.	Qui quæ quod.	Pluraliter,	{ N.	Qui quæ quæ
	{ G.	Cujus.		{ G.	Quorū quarū quorū
	{ D.	Cui.		{ D.	Quibus, vel queis
	{ A.	Quem quam quod		{ A.	Quos quas quæ
	{ V.			{ V.	
	{ A.	{ Quo, } quā, { Qui, } quo,		{ A.	{ Quibus { Queis

Ad hunc modum etiam variatur Quis quæ quid &c

Ejus compositum sic :	{ Nom	Quisquis quicquid
	{ Acc	Quitquid
	{ Abl	Quoquo quaquā quoquo

Meus tuus suus noster vester & cujus tertiæ sunt Declinationis & variantur ad formam Adjectivorum trium Terminationum in hunc modum.

Tertiæ
Meus, tuus
tuus, no-
ster, vester,
& cujus.

Nominativo	{ Meus mea meum	Genitivo	{ Mei mea mei	Et sic in reli- quis casibus.
	{ Tuus tua tuum		{ Tui tue tui	
	{ Suus sua suum		{ Sui sue sui	
	{ Noster nostra nostrū		{ Nostrī nostræ nostrī	
	{ Vester vestra vestrū		{ Vestrī vestræ vestrī	
	{ Cujus cuja cujum			

Sed Meus habet Mi mea meum in Vocativo singulari.

Nostræ

Of the
Fourth,
Noſtras,
veſtras,
& *cujas.*

Noſtras, *veſtras* and *cujas*, be of the fourth Declenſion, and are declined like Adjectives of three Articles.

As, Nom. { *Noſtras,* } { *Noſtratis,* }
 { *Veſtras,* } Gen. { *Veſtratis,* } &c.
 { *Cujas,* } { *Cujatis,* }

Pronouns are compounded,

Of the
Compoſi-
tion of
Pronouns

1. Among themſelves; as, *Ego-iſſe, mei-iſſus, mihi iſſi. Iſtic, & illic.*

Iſtic, and *illic* be thus declined, | Nom. | *Iſtic, iſtac, iſtoc, vel. iſtuc.*
 | Acc. | *Iſtinc, iſtanc, iſtoc.*
 | Abl. | *Iſtoc, iſtac, iſtac.*
 Plur. Nom. & Acc. *iſtac.*

2. With Nouns; as, *Aliquis, huiusmodi.*

3. With Verbs; as, *Quivis, quilibet.*

4. With Adverbs; as, *Nequis.*

So alſo { *Eccum, eccam,* } of *ecce* { *Ellū, ellam,* } of *ecce*,
 { *Eccos, eccas,* } and *is.* { *Ellos, ellas.* } & *ille*

5. VVith a Conjunction; as, *Quiſnam: ſiquis.*

6. VVith a Prepoſition; as, *Mecum, nobiſcum.*

7. VVirh Syllabical additions; *met, te, pte, ce, cine*, of which *met*, is added to the firſt and ſecond perſon; as *Egomēt, tuimēt*: alſo we ſay *ſibimēt* and *ſemēt*, but we do not ſay *tumēt*, leſt it ſhould ſeem a Verb of *tumeo*, to ſwell.

Te is added onely to *tu* and *te*; as *Tute, tete.*

Pte is added to theſe Ablatives Feminine; *Meā, tuā, ſuā, noſtrā, veſtrā*; as, *Meāpte, tuāpte, ſuāpte, noſtrāpte, veſtrāpte*; and ſometimes to their Maſculines and Neuters; as *Meopte, labore, ſuopte jumento.*

Ce is added to all caſes of theſe Pronouns, *hic, ille, iſſe*, as oft as they end in *s*; as, *Huiusce, hocce, hiſſe*: we ſay alſo, *hicce, huncce, and ejuſce*; and ſometimes *bige* is read.

Gine.

Nostros, vestros, & cujas, quartæ sunt Declinationis, & variantur ad formam Adjectivorum trium Articulorum.

Quartæ,
Nostros,
vestros,
cujas.

ut, { *Nostros,* } { *Nostratis.* }
{ *Vestros,* } Gen { *Vestratis.* } &c,
{ *Cujas,* } { *Cujatis.* }

Pronomina componuntur,

1. Inter se; ut, *Ego ipse, mi-ipsius, mihi-ipsi. Istic, & illic.*

Istic & illic sic variantur,	Nom.	Istic, istec, istoc, vel istuc.
	Accus.	Istinc, istanc, istoc vel istuc.
	Abl.	Istoc, istac, istoc.

Plur. Nom. & Acc. *istec.*

2. Cum Nominibus; ut, *Aliquis, hujusmodi.*

3. Cum Verbis; ut, *Quivis, quilibet.*

4. Cum Adverbis; ut, *Nequis.*

Sic { *Mecum, eccum,* } ab ecce { *Ellum, ellam,* } ab ecce
etiam { *Eccos, eccas,* } & *is,* { *Ellos, ellas,* } & *ille*

5. Cum Conjunctione; ut, *Quisnam, siquis.*

6. Cum Præpositione; ut, *Mecum, nobiscum.*

7. Cum syllabicis adjectionibus, *met, te, pte, ce, cine;* quarum *met* adjicitur primæ & secundæ personæ; ut, *Egomet, tuimet, sibimet,* etiam & *semet* dicimus. Sed *tuimet* non dicimus, nè videatur esse Verbum à *tumeo*.

Te adjicitur tantum *tu* & *te*; ut, *Tute, tete.*

Pte apponitur istis Ablativis scemininis, *Meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ,* ut, *Meâpte, tuâpte, suâpte, nostrâpte, vestrâpte,* & interdum eorundem masculinis & neutris; ut, *Meôpte labore, suopte jumento.*

Ce adjicitur obliquis horum Pronominum, *Hic ille, isto,* quoties in s desinunt; ut, *Hujusce, hoscce, bisce.* Dicimus etiam *bisce, huncce, & ejusce,* & interdum *bice* legitur.

cine

Cine is put to the Nominative and Accusative of *Hic*; as *Hiccine*, *baccine*, *hoccine*; *Huncine*, *hancine* *boccine*, &c.

Quis and *qui* are compounded on this manner ;

Quis in composition is set after these particles,

viz

<i>Et</i> ,	} as,	} {	<i>Ecquis</i> , what one.
<i>Ne</i> ,			<i>Nequis</i> , no one.
<i>Alius</i> ,			<i>Aliquis</i> , some one.
<i>Num</i> ,			<i>Nunquæ</i> , whether any one.
<i>Si</i> ,	} {	} {	<i>Siquis</i> , if any one

And these in the Feminine gender singular, and in the Neuter plural make *qua*, not *que* ; as, *Siqua mulier*, If any woman. *Nequa flagitia*, Not any villainy. But *Ecquis* make's *ecqua* and *ecquæ* in the Feminine gender.

Quis in composition is set before these particles,

viz.

<i>Nam</i> ,	} as,	} {	<i>Quisnam</i> ,
<i>Piam</i> ,			<i>Quispiam</i> ,
<i>Putas</i> ,			<i>Quisputas</i> ,
<i>Quam</i> ,			<i>Quisquam</i> ,
<i>Que</i> ,	} {	} {	<i>Quisque</i> ,

Qui in composition is set before these particles ;

viz.

<i>Dam</i> ,	} as,	} {	<i>Quidam</i> , a certain one.
<i>Vis</i> ,			<i>Quivis</i> , who you will.
<i>Libet</i> ,			<i>Quilibet</i> , who that will.
<i>Cunque</i>			<i>Quicunque</i> , whosoever.

And these every where keep *que*; as, *Quanam doctrina*, what learning; *quacunque negotia*, whatsoever business.

Cine apponitur casibus in e desinentibus; ut, *Hic cine*
hæccine, hoccine; hunc cine, hancine, hoccine &c.

Quis & *qui* in hunc modum componuntur.

Quis in compositione hæc particulis postponitur,
 viz.

Et	} ut,	{ <i>Ecquis,</i>
Ne		{ <i>Nequis,</i>
<i>Alius</i>		{ <i>Aliquis</i>
<i>Num</i>		{ <i>Numquis</i>
Si	}	{ <i>Siquis.</i>

Et hæc tam in fœminino singulari, quàm in neutro
 plurali *quæ* habent, non *que*; ut, *Siqua mulier, Ne-*
qua flagitia. Sed *Ecquis* habet *ecquæ* & *ecqua* in fœ-
 minino.

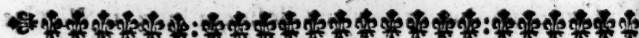
His autem particulis præponitur *Quis* in compo-
 sitione, viz,

<i>Nam</i>	} ut,	{ <i>Quisnam</i>
<i>Piam</i>		{ <i>Quispiam</i>
<i>Putas</i>		{ <i>Quisputas</i>
<i>Quam</i>		{ <i>Quisquam</i>
<i>Que,</i>	}	{ <i>Qui qua</i>

Qui in compositione præponitur his particulis,
 viz,

<i>Dam</i>	} ut,	{ <i>Quidam</i>
<i>Vis</i>		{ <i>Quivis</i>
<i>Libet</i>		{ <i>Quilibet</i>
<i>Cunque</i>		{ <i>Quicumque</i>

Et hæc ubique *quæ* retinent; ut, *Quenam doctrina,*
quæcunque negotia.



III.

A Verb signifieth to be, to do, or to suffer
It is Personal,

or,

Impersonal.

A Verb is first divided into

Chap. 24. Of a Verb and its Kindes.

A Verb is a part of Speech which signifieth to be, to do, or to suffer; as, *Sum*, I am, *Amo*, I love: *Amor*, I am loved.

(Personal, which is distinguished by three Persons in both Numbers; as, Singul *Amo*, I love: *Amas*, thou lovest: *Amat*, he loveth, Plur. *Amamus*, we love: *Amatis*, ye love: *Amant*, they love.

Impersonal, which hath no certain signification of Person or Number, unless it be by means of an oblique case; as, *Oportet me*, It becometh me: *oportet te*, it becometh thee: *statui à me*, it is stood of me, or I stand: *statui à te*, it is stood of thee, or thou standest.

There belong to a Verb, five Kindes,

There belong to a Verb, I. Kinde. II. Mood, III. Tense. IV. Conjugation.

I. There be five Kindes of Verbs.

Active,

1. *Active*, which signifieth to do, and endeth in *o*, as, *Amo*, I love: and by taking to it *r*, may be made a *Passive*, as, *Amor*, I am loved.

Passive,

2. *Passive*, which signifieth to suffer, and endeth in *or*; and by taking away *r*, it may be an *Active*; as, *amo*, I love.

Neuter,

3. A *Neuter*, endeth in *o* or *m*, and cannot take *r* to make it a *Passive*; as, *Curro*, I run: *Sum*, I am.

There be three Kindes of *Neuters*, according to their signification.

Substantive, which signifieth the Being of a thing; as, *Sum*, I am.

Absolute, which by it self maketh up the sense; as, *Dormio*, I sleep.

Transitive, whose action passeth into a thing of near signification; as, *Curro stadium*, I run a race.

4. A.

Cap. 24. De Verbo, & ejus Accidentibus.

VERBUM est pars Orationis, quæ esse aliquid agereve; aut pati significat; ut, *Sum, Amo, Amor.*

III.

Verbum,
esse, agere,
aut pati
significat.
Estque
Personale,

Verbum dividitur in
primis in

(*Personale*, quod tribus personis in utroque numero distinguitur; ut, *Singul. Amo, Amas, Amat. Plur. Amamus, Amatis, Amant.*

vel,

(*Impersonale*, quod nullius personæ aut numeri certam significationem, nisi ex adjuncto casu obliquo, sortitur; ut, *Oportet me, oportet te; Statuer à me, statuer à te.*

Imperso-
nale.

Verbo quidem accidunt, I. *Genus.* II. *Modus.* III. *Tempus.* IV. *Conjugatio.*

Accidunt
Verbo
quinque
genera,

I. Quinque sunt *Genera Verborum.*

1. *Activum*, quod *agere* significat, & in *o* finitur; ut, *Amo.* assumendo verò & *Passivum* formare potest; ut, *Amor.*

Activum,

2. *Passivum*, quod *pati* significat, & in *or* finitur, dempto verò & *Activi* formam resumere potest; ut, *Amor.*

Passivum,

3. *Neutrum*, quod in *o* vel *m* finitur, nec admittit ut fiat *Passivum*; ut, *Curro, Sum.*

Neutrum,

Neutorum tria sunt genera secundum eorum significationem.

Substantivum, quod substantentiam rei significat; ut, *Sum.*

Absolutum, quod ipsum per se sensum absolvit; ut, *Dormio.*

Transitivum, cujus actio in rem cognatæ significationis transit; ut, *Curro stadium.*

H 2

4. De;

Deponent. 4 A *Deponent* endeth in *or*, and hath either the *Active* signification; as, *Loquor verbum*, I speak a word: or the *Neuter*; as, *Glorior*, I boast.

Commune. 5 A *Commune* endeth in *or*, and hath both the *Active* and *Passive* signification; as, *Osculor*, I kiss, or am kissed.

Four Moods. 11. There be four *Moods*.

Indicative 1. The *Indicative* simply sheweth a thing, or asketh a question, as, *Ego amo*, I love: *Amas tu?* lovest thou?

Imperative 2. The *Imperative* biddeth or increateth; as, *Amatu*, do thou love: *Da mihi* gibe me.

Subjunctive 3. The *Subjunctive* is joyned with another Verb in the same sentence; as, *Cum amarem, eram miser*, when I loved, I was a wretch.

And this mood is called the *Optative*, when it is used in wishing; and the *Potential*, when it is construed by *may*, *can*, *would*, *should*, or *ought*.

Infinitive. 4 The *Infinitive* doth not define a certain person, or number; as, *Amare*, to love. And to this mood belong three *Gerunds*, which have their case or ending of a Noun, and their signification of a Verb.

Three Gerunds, *Di*, *Ab. Do*, *N. Ac Dum*, } as, { *Amandi*, of loving, or being loved.
Di, do, dum. } *Amando*, in loving, or being loved.
 } *Amandum*, to love, or to be loved.

Two Supines, } The first endeth in *um*, and signifieth
am and *u*. } *Actively*; as, *Amatum*, to love.
 } The latter endeth in *u*, and signifieth
 } *Passively*; as, *Amatu*, to be loved.

III. Verbs have five *Tenses*.

Five Tenses. Three onely distinct; *Present*, *Preterperfect*, *Future*.

Present. 1. The *Present tense* which speaketh of the time present, and signifies now to do, or to be done; as, *Amo*, I love.

2. The

4. *Deponens*, quod in *or* finitum, vel activi significationem habet; ut, *Loquor verbum*; vel neutrius, ut, *Glorior*. Deponens

5. *Commune*, quod in *or* finitum tam Activam, quàm Passivam significationem habet, ut, *Osculor*, Commune.

II. *Modi Verborum* sunt quatuor :

1. *Indicativus* simpliciter aliquid indicat, aut interrogat; ut *Ego Amo, amas tu?* Modi quatuor. Indicativus

2. *Imperativus* imperat aut rogat, ut, *Ama tu, Da mihi*. Imperativus.

3. *Subjunctivus* subjungitur alteri Verbo in eadem sententiâ, ut, *Cum amarem, etiam miser*. Subjunctivus.

Atque hic Modus dicitur *Optativus*, quando in optando usurpatur, *Potentialis* verò quando per

Possum, volo, aut debeo exponitur.

4. *Infinitivus* certam personam aut numerum non definit, ut, *Amare*, Et ad hunc Modum pertinent *Tria Gerundia* quæ à nomine casum, & à Verbo significationem accipiunt. Infinitivus. Ad quem pertinent

G Di } ut, { *Amandi*
D Ab. Do, } { *Amando*
N Ac Dum, } { *Amandum*

Gerundia,
di, do, dum.

Duo *Supina* } Primus exit in *um*, & Activè significat,
quorum } ut, *Amatum*,
} Posterius exit in *u*, & Passivè significat,
} ut *Amatu*,

Supina duo
um & u.

III. *Tempora Verborum* sunt quinque, Tria tantum distincta; *Præsens, Perfectum, Futurum*.

1. *Præsens*, quod de tempore præsentis loquitur, & aliquid nunc agere vel fieri significat, ut, *Amo*, Præsens.

Imperfect. 2. The *Preterimperfect tense* speaketh of the time not yet perfectly past; and signifieth a thing to be done, but not yet finished; as, *Amabam* I loved, or *I did love*.

Preterperfect. 3. The *Preterperfect tense* speaketh of the time perfectly past, and signifieth a thing to be now finished as a *Amavi*, *I have loved*.

Preterpluperfect. 4. The *Preterpluperfect tense* speaketh of the time more than perfectly past, and signifieth a thing to be long since finished, as, *Amaveram*, *I had loved*.

Future. 5. The *Future tense* speaketh of the time to come, and signifieth something to be done for the future; as, *Amabo* *I will love*.

The *Future tense* of the *Subjunctive moode* is called *Exalt*; because it hath the signification both of the *Preter tense*, and *Future tense* together; as, *Cum Amavero*, when *I shall have loved*.

IV. Conjugation is the Varying of a Verb by Moods and Tenses.

Four Conjugations.

Verbs have four *Conjugations*, which are known one from another by certain tokens, or characteristic letters.

Whereof the First hath a long

1. The first Conjugation hath a long before *re* and *ris*; as, *Amare* *amaris*.

Seconde long.

2. The second Conjugation hath e long before *re* and *ris*; as, *Docere* *doceris*.

Third e short.

3. The third Conjugation hath e short before *re* and *ris*; as, *Legere* *legeris*.

Fourth hath i long before re and ris.

4. The fourth Conjugation hath i long before *re* and *ris*; as, *Audire* *audiris*.

in the Infinitive Mood Present tense of Verbs in e, and in the second person singular of the Indicative moode Present tense of Verbs in o.

2. *Preteritum imperfectum*, de tempore nondum perfecte præterito loquitur, & aliquid fieri, sed nondum absolvi significat, ut, *Amabam*. Imperfectum.

3. *Preteritum Perfectum* de tempore perfecte præterito loquitur, & aliquid jam perfici significat, ut, *Amavi*. Perfectum.

4. *Preteritum plusquam perfectum* de tempore plusquam perfecto loquitur, & aliquid jamdiu perfectum significat, ut, *Amaveram*. Plusquam perfectum.

5. *Futurum* loquitur de tempore futuro, & aliquid de futuro significat, ut, *Amabo*. Futurum.

Subjunctivi Futurum dicitur *Exactum*, quod præteriti simul & futuri significationem habeat, ut, *Cum Amavero*.

IV. Conjugatio est variatio Verbi per Modos & Tempora.

Verborum quatuor sunt Conjugationes, quæ à se invicem certis indicibus, sive literis caracteristicis distinguuntur.

1. Prima Conjugatio habet a productum ante *re* & *ris*; ut, *Amare, Amaris*.

2. Secunda Conjugatio habet e productum ante *re* & *ris*; ut, *Docere Doceris*.

3. Tertia Conjugatio habet e correptum ante *re* & *ris*; ut, *Legere legeris*.

4. Quarta Conjugatio habet i productum ante *re* & *ris*; ut, *Audire, Audiris*.

in Infinitive præsentis Verborum in *a*, & in secunda personâ singulari Indicativi præsentis Verborum in *or*.

Conjugationes quatuor.

Prima habet a longum.

Secunda e longum.

Tertia e breve.

Quarta i longum.

Chap 25. Of the form of the fourth Conjugation.

Verbain(o)prima Coniugationis variantur sicut Amo.	Verbs in(o)of the first Coniuga- tion be varied like Amo, &c.	Verba in(or)prima Coniugationis variantur sicut Amor	Verbs in(or) of the first Con- iuga ion be va- ried like Amor
---	--	---	--

Amo, amas, amavi, amare, amatum

A	{ amaris }	am-	{ sum }	an-
mor,	{ amare, }	tus,	{ fui, }	ri.

The Indicative Mood.

Present tense.	Sing.	1	<i>Amo,</i>	I love	thou lovest	he loveth	Amor	I am	}	loved		
		2	<i>Amas,</i>								Amaris	thou art
		3	<i>Amat,</i>									
	Plur.	1	<i>Amamus,</i>	Amatur	Amamur	Amamini	Amantur	we are				
		2	<i>Amatis,</i>								ye are	
		3	<i>Amant,</i>									they

Preterimperfect.	Sing.	1 Amābam	I did	} love.	Amabar	I was	} loved
	2 Amābas	thou didst	Amabaris		thou wast		
	3 Amābat	he did	Amabare		he was		
	1 Amabānus	we did	Amabatur		we were		
	2 Amabātis	ye did	Amabamur		ye were		
	3 Amabant	they did	Amabamini		they were		
					Amabantur		

Preterperfect.	Sing.	1 2 3	Plur.	1 2 3	I have thou hast he hath we have ye have they have }	Amavi Amavisti Amavit Amavimus Amavistis Amaverunt Amaverunt	{ sum fui es fuisti est fuit sumus fuimus estis fuistis sunt fuerunt fuerunt }	I have thou hast he hath we have ye have they have }	}	been loved

Præter.

Preterplupst. Plur. Sing.	1	<i>Amaveram</i>	I had	loved	<i>amavis</i>	<i>eram</i>	I had	been loved
	2	<i>Amaveras</i>	thou hadst			<i>fueram</i>	thou hadst	
	3	<i>Amaverat</i>	he had			<i>eras</i>	he had	
	1	<i>Amaveramus</i>	we had			<i>fuerat</i>	we had	
	2	<i>Amaveratis</i>	ye had			<i>eramus</i>	ye had	
	3	<i>Amaverant</i>	they had			<i>eratis</i>	they had	
						<i>fueratis</i>		
						<i>erant</i>		
						<i>fuerant</i>		
Future Plur. Sing.	1	<i>Amabo</i>	I shall	love	<i>amabor</i>	<i>Amabo</i>	I shall be	loved
	2	<i>Amabis</i>	thou shalt			<i>Amaberis</i>	thou shalt be	
	3	<i>Amabit</i>	he shall			<i>Amabere</i>	he shall be	
	1	<i>Amabimus</i>	we shall			<i>Amabitur</i>	we shall be	
	2	<i>Amabitis</i>	ye shall			<i>Amabimur</i>	ye shall be	
	3	<i>Amabunt</i>	they shall			<i>Amabimini</i>	they shall be	
						<i>Amabuntur</i>		

The Imperative Mood hath one onely Tense,
viz. the Present Tense.

Present tense Plur. Sing.	2	<i>Amas</i>	Lobe thou	love	<i>Amare</i>	Be thou
	3	<i>Amato</i>	let him love		<i>Amator</i>	let him be
	1	<i>Amemus</i>	Let us love		<i>Ametur</i>	let us be
	2	<i>Amate</i>	love ye		<i>Amator</i>	be ye
	3	<i>Amant</i>	let them love		<i>Amantur</i>	be they
		<i>Amanto</i>			<i>Amantor</i>	

The

The Potential Mood.

Sing. I Present tense	1 <i>Amerm,</i>	I may	love	<i>Amer,</i>	I may	be loved	Future
	2 <i>Ameris,</i>	thou maist		<i>Ameris</i>	thou maist		
	3 <i>Amet.</i>	he may		<i>Amere,</i>	he may		
Plural.	1 <i>Ame'mus.</i>	We may	love	<i>Ametur,</i>	We may	be loved	Future
	2 <i>Ametis.</i>	ye may		<i>Amemus,</i>	We may		
	3 <i>Ament.</i>	they may		<i>Amentur,</i>	ye may		
Sing. I Imperfect.	1 <i>Amerem,</i>	I might (test)	love	<i>Amerer,</i>	I might	be loved	Future
	2 <i>Ameres.</i>	thou might		<i>Amereris</i>	thou might (test)		
	3 <i>Ameret.</i>	he might		<i>Amerere</i>	he might		
Plural.	1 <i>Ameremus</i>	We might	love	<i>Ameretur</i>	We might	be loved	Future
	2 <i>Ameretis</i>	ye might		<i>Ameremur</i>	We might		
	3 <i>Amerent</i>	they might		<i>Ameremini</i>	ye might		
Sing. I Pluperfect.	1 <i>Amaverim,</i>	I might	have loved	<i>Amaverer,</i>	I might	have been loved	Future
	2 <i>Amaveris</i>	thou might (test)		<i>Amavereris</i>	thou might (test)		
	3 <i>Amaverit</i>	he might		<i>Amaverere</i>	he might		
Plural.	1 <i>Amaverimus</i>	We might	have loved	<i>Amaveretur</i>	We might	have been loved	Future
	2 <i>Amaveritis</i>	ye might		<i>Amaveremur</i>	We might		
	3 <i>Amaverint</i>	they might		<i>Amaveremini</i>	ye might		
Sing. I Pluperfect.	1 <i>Amavissem</i>	I might	have loved	<i>Amaviserem,</i>	I might	have had been loved	Future
	2 <i>Amavisses</i>	thou might (test)		<i>Amaviseres</i>	thou might (test)		
	3 <i>Amavisset</i>	he might		<i>Amaviserere</i>	he might		
Plural.	1 <i>Amavissemus</i>	We might	have loved	<i>Amaviseretur</i>	We might	have had been loved	Future
	2 <i>Amavissetis</i>	ye might		<i>Amaviseremur</i>	We might		
	3 <i>Amavissent</i>	they might		<i>Amaviseremini</i>	ye might		

Future

Futur.	1	<i>Amavero</i>	I may	} love hereafter.	} <i>Amabo</i>	I may	} beloved hereafter.
	2	<i>Amaveris</i>	thou maist			thou maist	
	3	<i>Amaverit</i>	he may			he may	
Pur.	1	<i>Amaverimus</i>	we may	} love hereafter.	} <i>Amabimus</i>	we may	} beloved hereafter.
	2	<i>Amaveritis</i>	y may			ye may	
	3	<i>Amaverint</i>	they may			they may	

The Infinitive Mood.

Present and Imperfect tense	<i>Amare</i>	{ to love }	<i>Amari</i>	{ to be loved. }
Preterite f. and Preterplup.	<i>Amavisse</i>	{ to have or had loved }	<i>Amatum esse vel fuisse</i>	{ to have or had been loved. }
Future	<i>Amaturum esse</i>	{ (to love hereafter) }	<i>Amatum iri, vel Amandum esse</i>	{ (to be loved hereafter. }

Gerunds.

Amandi, of loving or of being loved.
Amando, in loving, or of being loved.
Amandum, to love, or to be loved.

Supines.

Amatum, to love. *Amatum*, to be loved.

Participles.

Of the Present tense	}	<i>Amans</i> , loving.
Future in <i>am</i>		<i>Amaturus</i> , to love.
Of the Preter tense		<i>Amatus</i> , loved
Future in <i>am</i>		<i>Amandus</i> , to be loved.

Chap.

Chap. 26. Of the form of the Second Conjugation.

Verba in (o) se-
cundæ Conjugati-
onis formantur
sicut *Doc.o.*

Verbis in (o) of
the second Con-
jugation be for-
med like *Dico.*

Verba in (or) se-
cundæ Conjugati-
onis formantur
sicut *Doc.or.*

Verbis in (or) of the
second Conjugati-
on be formed
like *Doc.or.*

Docet, doces, docui, docere, d. Num.

*Docet. { doceris, } do- { sum, } doce-
or, { docere, } sus { sum, } ri-*

The Indicative Mood:

Present tense	1 <i>Doces,</i>	I teach.	<i>Doc.or,</i>	I am taught.
	2 <i>Docet,</i>	thou teachest	{ <i>Doceris</i>	thou art taught.
	3 <i>Docet.</i>	he teacheth	{ <i>Docere</i>	he is taught.
Plur. 1 Sing.	1 <i>Docemus,</i>	we teach.	<i>Docetur.</i>	we are taught.
	2 <i>Docetis</i>	ye teach.	<i>Docemini</i>	ye are taught.
	3 <i>Docent</i>	they teach.	<i>Docentur</i>	they are taught.

Imperfect	1 <i>Docebam,</i>	I didst	<i>Docer</i>	I was
	2 <i>Docebas</i>	thou didst	{ <i>Doceris</i>	thou wert
	3 <i>Docebat</i>	he did	{ <i>Docere</i>	he was
Plur. 1 Sing.	1 <i>Docebamus,</i>	we did	<i>Docebatur</i>	we were
	2 <i>Docebatis</i>	ye did	<i>Docebamini</i>	ye were
	3 <i>Docebant</i>	they did	<i>Docebantur</i>	they were

Preterperfect.	1 <i>Docui</i>	I have	{ <i>sum</i>	I have
	2 <i>Docuisti.</i>	thou hast	{ <i>fui.</i>	thou hast
	3 <i>Docuit.</i>	he hath	{ <i>es,</i>	he hath
Plur. 1 Sing.	1 <i>Docuimus.</i>	we have	{ <i>fui.</i>	we have
	2 <i>Docuistis</i>	ye have	{ <i>sumus</i>	ye have
	3 { <i>Docuerunt</i>	they have	{ <i>fuerunt</i>	they have

Preter-

Preterperfect.

Future

Preterperfect

Pretinperf. Sing.	1	Docueram	I had	taught	Doctus	Scravi	I had	been taught
	2	Docueras	thou hadst			Scravisti	thou hadst	
	3	Docuerat	he had			Scraverat	he had	
	1	Docueramus	we had			Scravimus	we had	
	2	Docueratis	ye had			Scravistis	ye had	
	3	Docuerant	they had			Scraverant	they had	
Plur.								
	1	Docueram	I had			Scravi	I had	
	2	Docueras	thou hadst			Scravisti	thou hadst	
	3	Docuerat	he had			Scraverat	he had	
	1	Docueramus	we had			Scravimus	we had	
	2	Docueratis	ye had			Scravistis	ye had	
	3	Docuerant	they had			Scraverant	they had	

Future Sing.	1	Docēbo	I will	teach	Doctus	Docēbor	I will be taught	been taught
	2	Docēbis	thou wilt			Docēberis	thou wilt be taught	
	3	Docēbit	he will			Docēbitur	he will be taught	
	1	Docēbimus	we will			Docēbimur	we will be taught	
	2	Docēbitis	ye will			Docēbimini	ye will be taught	
	3	Docēbunt	they will			Docēbuntur	they will be taught	
Plur.								
	1	Docēbo	I will			Docēbor	I will be taught	
	2	Docēbis	thou wilt			Docēberis	thou wilt be taught	
	3	Docēbit	he will			Docēbitur	he will be taught	
	1	Docēbimus	we will			Docēbimur	we will be taught	
	2	Docēbitis	ye will			Docēbimini	ye will be taught	
	3	Docēbunt	they will			Docēbuntur	they will be taught	

The Imperative Mood.

Present tense Sing.	2	Docere	Teach thou	taught	Doctus	Docere	Be thou	been taught
	3	Docet	let him teach			Docetur	let him be	
	1	Docemur	Let us teach			Docemur	Let us be	
	2	Docetis	teach ye			Docemini	te ye	
	3	Docent	let them teach			Docentur	let them	
Plur.								
	2	Docere	Teach thou			Docere	Be thou	
	3	Docet	let him teach			Docetur	let him be	
	1	Docemur	Let us teach			Docemur	Let us be	
	2	Docetis	teach ye			Docemini	te ye	
	3	Docent	let them teach			Docentur	let them	

The Potential Mood.

Present tense Sing.	1	Docēam	I may	teach	Doctus	Docēam	I may	be taught
	2	Docēas	thou mayest			Docēaris	thou mayest	
	3	Docēat	he may			Docēatur	he may	
	1	Docēamus	we may			Docēamur	we may	
	2	Docēatis	ye may			Docēamini	ye may	
	3	Docēant	they may			Docēantur	they may	
Plur.								
	1	Docēam	I may			Docēam	I may	
	2	Docēas	thou mayest			Docēaris	thou mayest	
	3	Docēat	he may			Docēatur	he may	
	1	Docēamus	we may			Docēamur	we may	
	2	Docēatis	ye may			Docēamini	ye may	
	3	Docēant	they may			Docēantur	they may	

Imper

Imperfect.	Sing.	1 Docerem	I might
		2 Doceres	thou mightest
		3 Doceret	he might
Plur.	1	Doceremus	we might
		Doceremini	ye might
		Docerent	they might

Doceret	I might	} be taught
Doceraris	thou mightest	
Docerere	(test)	
Doceretur	he might	
Doceremur	we might	
Doceremini	ye might	
Docerentur	they might	

Preterperfect.	Sing.	1 Docuerim	I might
		2 Docueris	thou mightest
		3 Docuerit	he might
Plur.	1	Docuerimus	we might
		2 Docueritis	ye might
		3 Docuerint	they might

} have been taught	} Docui	1 Docui	I might
		2 Docuisti	thou mightest
		3 Docuit	he might
		4 Docuimus	we might
		5 Docuistis	ye might
		6 Docuerunt	they might

Preterpluperf.	Sing.	1 Docuissim	I might
		2 Docuisses	thou mightest
		3 Docuisset	he might
Plur.	1	Docuissimus	we might
		2 Docuissetis	ye might
		3 Docuissent	they might

} have had been taught	} Docui	1 Docui	I might
		2 Docuisti	thou mightest
		3 Docuit	he might
		4 Docuimus	we might
		5 Docuistis	ye might
		6 Docuerunt	they might

Future

Future Plur. I Sing.	1 Docuero	I may	teach hereafter	Doctus	{ ero fueris eris fueris eris fueris	I may	be taught hereafter
	2 Docueris	thou maist				thou maist	
	3 Docuerit	he may				he may	
	1 Docuerimus	We may		Docti	{ erimus fuerimus eritis fueritis erint fuerint	We may	
	2 Docueritis	ye may				ye may	
	3 Docuerint	They may				they may	

The Infinitive Mood.

Present and Imperfect tense	{ Docere	{ to teach	{ Doceri	{ to be taught.
Preterp. and Pe. terp.	{ Docuisse	{ to have or had taught	{ Doctum esse vel fuisse	{ to have or had been taught
Future	{ Dociturum esse	{ (to teach) (hereafter)	{ Doctum iri, vel Docendum esse	{ (to be taught) (hereafter).

Gerunds.

Docendi, of teaching, or of being taught.
Docendi, in teaching, or of being taught.
Docendum, to teach, or to be taught.

Supines.

Docum, to teach. Doctum, to be taught.

Participles.

Of the Present tense	{ Docens	{ teaching	Of the Preter tense	{ Doctus	{ taught
Of the Future tense	{ Dociturus	{ about to teach	Of the Future in dnt.	{ Docendus	{ to be taught

Chap. 27. Of the form of the third Conjugation

Verba in (o) tertiz Conjugationis formantur sicut Lego.	Verbs in(o) of the third Conjugation be formed like Lego.	Verba in (or) tertiz Conjugationis formantur sicut Lego.	Verbs in(o) of the third Con- jugation be for- med lik. Legor.
--	--	---	---

Lego legis legi legere lectum.

Legor, {legeris, } {sum, } {legi, }
 {legere, } {fui, } {l.gi. }

The Indicative Mood.

Present tense	I Sing.	1 Ego. I read.	Legor, I am	} read.
		2 Legis, thou readest.	{ Legeris, thou art	
		3 Legit. he readeth.	{ Legere, } Legitur, best	
Plural.	I	1 Legimus. we } read.	Legimur, we were	}
		2 Legitis. ye }	Legimini, ye were	
		3 Legunt. they }	Legunt. er. they were,	
Imperfect.	I Sing.	1 Legebam. I did read,	Legebam I was	} read.
		2 Legebas. thou readest,	{ Legebas. thou wast	
		3 Legebat. he did read.	{ Legebare. he was	
Plur.	I	1 Legebamus. we did } read.	Legebatur. we were	}
		2 Legebatis. ye did }	Legebamini. ye were	
		3 Legebant. they did }	Legebantur. they were	
Perfect.	I Sing.	1 Legi. I have	{ sum. I have	} been read.
		2 Legisti. thou hast	{ fuisti. thou hast.	
		3 Legit. he hath	{ est. he hath	
Plur.	I	1 Legimus. we have	{ sumus. we have	}
		2 Legistis. ye have	{ fuistis. ye have	
		3 Legerunt. they have	{ sunt fuerunt. they have	

Preter.

Pre & pluperf.	Sing.	1	Legeram	I had	read	Lectus	1	Legeram	I had	been read
		2	Legeras	thou hadst			2	Legeras	thou hadst	
		3	Legerat	he had			3	Legerat	he had	
	Plur.	1	Legeramus	we had		Lecti	1	Legeramus	we had	
		2	Legeratis	ye had			2	Legeratis	ye had	
		3	Legerant	they had			3	Legerant	they had	

Future	Sing.	1	Legam	I will	read	Legatur	1	Legam	I shall	be read
		2	Legas	thou wilt			2	Legas	thou shalt	
		3	Leget	he will			3	Leget	he shall	
	Plur.	1	Legamus	we will		Legamur	1	Legamus	we shall	
		2	Legatis	ye will			2	Legatis	ye shall	
		3	Legent	they will			3	Legent	they shall	

The Imperative Mood.

Present tense	Sing.	2	Legito	Read thou	read	Legatur	2	Legito	Be thou	read
		3	Legas	let him read			3	Legas	let him be	
		1	Legamini	Let us read			1	Legamini	Let us be	
	Plur.	2	Legite	read ye		Legantur	2	Legite	be ye	
		3	Legant	let them read			3	Legant	let them	

The Potential Mood.

Present tense	Sing.	1	Legam	I may	read	Legatur	1	Legam	I may	be read
		2	Legas	thou mayest			2	Legas	thou mayest	
		3	Legat	he may			3	Legat	he may	
	Plur.	1	Legamus	we may		Legamur	1	Legamus	we may	
		2	Legatis	ye may			2	Legatis	ye may	
		3	Legant	they may			3	Legant	they may	

Imper.

Imperfect.	Sing.	1	Legerem	I might	read	Leger	I might	be read
		2	Legeres	thou mightst		Legereris	thou mightst	
		3	Legeret	he might		Legeretur	he might	
Plur.	I Sing.	1	Legeremus	we might	read	Legeremur	we might	be read
		2	Legeretis	ye might		Legeremini	ye might	
		3	Legerent	they might		Legerentur	they might	
Peterperfect.	Sing.	1	Legerim	I might	have read	Lectus	I might	have been read
		2	Legeris	thou mightst		Lectus	thou mightst	
		3	Legerit	he might		Lectus	he might	
Plur.	I Sing.	1	Legerimus	we might	have read	Lecti	we might	have been read
		2	Legeritis	ye might		Lecti	ye might	
		3	Legerint	they might		Lecti	they might	
Preterpluperf.	Sing.	1	Legissem	I might	have had read	Lectus	I might	have had been read
		2	Legisses	thou mightst		Lectus	thou mightst	
		3	Legisset	he might		Lectus	he might	
Plur.	I Sing.	1	Legissemus	we might	have had read	Lecti	we might	have had been read
		2	Legissetis	ye might		Lecti	ye might	
		3	Legissent	they might		Lecti	they might	
Future	Sing.	1	Legero	I may	read hereafter	Lectus	I may	be read hereafter
		2	Legeris	thou mayst		Lectus	thou mayst	
		3	Legerit	he may		Lectus	he may	
Plur.	I Sing.	1	Legerimus	we may	read hereafter	Lecti	we may	be read hereafter
		2	Legeritis	ye may		Lecti	ye may	
		3	Legerint	they may		Lecti	they may	

The Infinitive Mood.

Present and
Imperfect
tense } *Legere* { to read } *Legi* { to be read.

Preterperf.
and
Perterplup. } *Legisse* { to have or
had read } *Legum esse*
vel fuisse { to have or had
been read.

Future } *Legiturum* (to read
esse (hereafter) } *Legum iri, vel*
legendum esse { to be read
hereafter.

Gerunds.

Legendi, of reading, or of being read.
Legendo, in reading, or of being read.
Legendum, to read, or to be read.

Supines.

Legum, to read. *Legu*, to be read.

Participles.

Of the Pre-
sent tense } *Legens* { reading } Of the
Preter
tense } *Legens* { read.

Of the Fu-
ture in
ras. } *Legentis* { to read } Of the
Future
in *du*. } *Legendus* { to be read.

Chap 28. Of the form of the fourth Conjugation.

Verba in (o) quar
ta Conjugationis
variantur sicut
Audio.

Verbs in (o) of the
fourth Conjugation
be varied
like Audior,

Verba in (or) quar
ta Conjugationis
variantur sicut
Audior

Verbs in (or) of
the fourth Conjugation
be varied like Audior

Audire, audis, audivi, audire, auditum

Au { audire } audi- { sum } au-
dior, { audire, } tus, { sui, } diu.

The Indicative Mood.

Present tense.	Sing.	1	A udio,	I hear	Audior	I am	} heard	
		2	Audis,	thou hearest		{ Audiri,		thou art
		3	Audir,	he heareth		{ Audire		he is
	Plur.	1	Audimus,	} we hear	Auditor	} ye are		
		2	Auditis,		Audimur			
		3	Audiunt,		Audimini			ye are
				Audiuntur	they are			

Preterimperfect.	Sing.	1 Audiebam,	I did	} hear.	Audiebar	I was	} heard
		2 Audiebas,	thou didst		Audiebaris	thou wast	
		3 Audiebat	he did		Audiebatur	he was	
	Plur.	1 Audiebamus	} we did	Audiebamur	ye were		
		2 Audiebatis		Audiebamini			
		3 Audiebant		Audiebantur			they were

Preterperfect.	Sing.	1 Audivi	I have	} <i>audire</i>	{	sum	I have	{	<i>audire</i>	fuisti	thou hast	{	} been heard
		2 audisti,	thou hast			es	thou hast						
		3 audivit	he hath			fuisti	he hath						
	Plur.	1 audivimus	we have			fuit	we have			fuimus	ye have		
		2 audistis	ye have			fuistis	ye have						
		3 audiverunt	they have			fuere	they have						

Preter

Preterperfect. Plur. Sing.	1	<i>Audieram</i>	I had	heard	<i>Audistis</i>	<i>eram</i>	I had	been heard
	2	<i>Audiveras</i>	thou hadst			<i>fueras</i>	thou hadst	
	3	<i>Audiverat</i>	he had			<i>fueraſ</i>	he had	
	1	<i>Audieramus</i>	we had			<i>fueraſ</i>	we had	
	2	<i>Audieratis</i>	ye had			<i>eramus</i>	ye had	
	3	<i>Audierant</i>	they had			<i>fueraſ</i>	they had	

Future Plur. Sing.	1	<i>Audiam</i>	I shall	hear	<i>Audietur</i>	<i>Audiam</i>	I shall be	be heard
	2	<i>Audies</i>	thou shalt			<i>Audieris</i>	thou shalt be	
	3	<i>Audiet</i>	he shall			<i>Audiere</i>	he shall be	
	1	<i>Audiamus</i>	we shall			<i>Audietur</i>	we shall be	
	2	<i>Audietis</i>	ye shall			<i>Audiamur</i>	ye shall be	
	3	<i>Audient</i>	they shall			<i>Audiemini</i>	they shall be	

The Imperative Mood.

Present tense Plur. Sing.	2	<i>Audi</i>	Hear thou	be heard	<i>Audire</i>	<i>Audire</i>	Be thou	be heard
	3	<i>Audis</i>	let him hear			<i>Auditor</i>	let him be	
	1	<i>Audiamus</i>	Let us hear			<i>Audiat</i>	let us be	
	2	<i>Auditis</i>	hear ye			<i>Audiamur</i>	be ye	
	3	<i>Audiant</i>	let them hear			<i>Audimini</i>	let them be	
		<i>Audiant</i>				<i>Audiantur</i>		

The Potential Mood.

Present tense Plur. Sing.	1	<i>Audiam</i>	I may	be heard	<i>Audiam</i>	<i>Audiam</i>	I may	be heard
	2	<i>Audias</i>	thou mayst			<i>Audias</i>	thou mayst	
	3	<i>Audiat</i>	he may			<i>Audiat</i>	he may	
	1	<i>Audiamus</i>	we may			<i>Audiamur</i>	we may	
	2	<i>Auditis</i>	ye may			<i>Audiamini</i>	ye may	
	3	<i>Audiant</i>	they may			<i>Audiantur</i>	they may	

Sing.	1	Audirem	I might	hear	Audire	I might	be heard
	2	Audires	thou mightst		Audireris	thou mightst	
	3	Audiret	he might		Audiret	he might	
Plural.	1	Audiremus	We might	hear	Audiretur	We might	be heard
	2	Audiretis	ye might		Audiremini	ye might	
	3	Audirent	they might		Audirentur	they might	
Sing.	1	Audiverim	I might	have heard	Audivissim	I might	have heard
	2	Audiveris	thou mightst		Audiveris	thou mightst	
	3	Audiverit	he might		Audiverit	he might	
Plural.	1	Audiverimus	We might	have heard	Audiverimus	We might	have heard
	2	Audiveritis	ye might		Audiveritis	ye might	
	3	Audiverint	they might		Audiverint	they might	
Sing.	1	Audivissem	I might	have heard	Audivissem	I might	have heard
	2	Audivisses	thou mightst		Audivisses	thou mightst	
	3	Audivisset	he might		Audivisset	he might	
Plural.	1	Audivissemus	We might	have heard	Audivissemus	We might	have heard
	2	Audivissetis	ye might		Audivissetis	ye might	
	3	Audivissent	they might		Audivissent	they might	
Sing.	1	Audiero	I may	hear hereafter	Audiero	I may	be heard hereafter
	2	Audieris	thou mayst		Audieris	thou mayst	
	3	Audierit	he may		Audierit	he may	
Plural.	1	Audierimus	We may	hear hereafter	Audierimus	We may	be heard hereafter
	2	Audieritis	ye may		Audieritis	ye may	
	3	Audierint	they may		Audierint	they may	

The Infinitive Mood.

Present and
Imperfect
tense } *Audire* { to hear } *Audiri* { to be heard.

Preterite f.
and
Preterplup. } *Audiuisse* { to have
heard } { *Auditum
esse vel
fuisse* } to have or
had been
heard.

Future { *Auditurum
esse* { to hear
(hereafter) } { *Auditum iri, vel
Audendum esse* { to be heard
(hereafter).

Gerunds.

Audiendi, of hearing or of being heard.
Audiendo, in hearing, or of being heard.
Audiendum, to hear, or to be heard;

Supines.

Auditum, to hear. *Auditu*, to be heard.

Participles.

Of the Present tense } *Audiens*, hearing.
Future in *rum*. } *Auditurus*, to hear.
Of the Preter tense } *Auditus*, heard.
Future in *du*, } *Audiendus*, to be heard.



As in *Præsenti*.

O R,

WILLIAM LILIE'S Rules of
the Preterperfect tenses and Su-
pines of Verbs.

Chap. 29.

Of the Preterperfect tenses of Simple Verbs.

As in pra-
senti con-
tain Rules
of the
Preter ten-
ses of Sim-
ple Verbs.

1.
In the first
Conjugati-
on As ma-
keth avi.

I. **AS** in the Present tense, makes the Preterper-
fect tense in *avi*; as, *No nas*, to swim, *navi*;
vocito vocitas, to call often, *voci' avi*. Except 1. *Lavo*
lavi, to wash; *juvo juvi*, to help; *nexo nexui*, to
knit; *seco secui*, to cut; *neco necui*, to kill; *mico mi-*
cui, to shine; *plico plicui*, to fold; *frico fricui*, to rub;
domo domui, to tame; *tono tonui*, to thunder; *sono*
sonui, to sound; *crepo crepui*, to crack; *veto vetui* to
forbid; *cubo cubui*, to ly down; which seldome
makes *avi*. 2. *Do das*, to give, will make *dedi*; and
sto stas, to stand, *steti*.

2.
In the se-
cond Es
makes ui.

II: **ES** in the Present tense, makes the Preterperfect
tense in *ui*; as, *Nigro nigres nigerui*, to wax black
Except 1. *Jubeo jubes jussi*, to bid; *sorbeo sorbes sorbui* &
sorpsi, to sup; *mulceo mulci*, to allwage; *luceo luxi*, to
shine; *sedeo sedi*, to sit; *video vidi*, to see; *prandeo prandi*,
to dine; *strideo stridi*, to make a noise; *suadeo suasi*, to
perswade; *rideo risi*, to laugh; and *ardeo arsi*, to burn.
2. The first syllable is doubled in these four fol-
lowing, *viz*. *Pendeo pependi*, to hang; *mordeo mo-*
mordi, to bite.

Spondeo



As in Præsenti.

SIVE,

GULIELMI LILII Regula
de Præteritis & Supinis
Verborum.

Cap. 29.

De Præteritis Verborum Simplicium.

Regula de
Præteritis
Verborum
Simpli-
cium.

1.
In prima
Conjuga-
tione *as*
format *avi*.

- I. **A** *S in præsentî perfectum format in avi;*
Ut no nas navi, vocito vocitas vocitavi.
1. *Deme lavo lavi, juvo juvi, nexoque nexui;*
Et seco quod secui, neco quod necui, mico verbum
Quod micui, plico quod plicui, frico quod fricui dat;
Sic domo quod domui, tono quod tonui, sono verbum
Quod sonui, crepo quod crepui, vero quod vetui dat;
Atque cubo cubui: rari hæc formantur in avi.
2. *Do das rite dedi, sto stas formare steti vult;*

- II. **E** *S in præsentî perfectum format ui dans,*
Ut nigreo nigres nigrui. 1. *Jubeo excipe iussi,*
Sorbeo sorbui habet sorpsi quoque, mulceo mulsi;
Luceo vult luxi, sedeo sedi, videoque
Vult vidi; sed prandeo prandi, strideo stridi,
Suadeo suasi, rideo risi, habet ardeo & arsi.

2.
In Secundo
format
ui.

2. *Quatuor his infra geminatur syllaba prima;*
Pendeonamque pependi, mordeo vultque momordi,

Spondeo

Spondeo spondi, to promise; *tondeo totondi*, to clip or sheare.

3. If *l* or *r* stand next before *geo*, *geo* is turned into *fi*, as, *Vigeo urfi*, to urge; *mulgeo mulsi*, & *mulxi*, to milk; *frigeo frixi*, to be cold; *lugeo luxi*, to lament, *augeo & auxi*, to encrease.

4. *Fleo fles*, to weep, makes *flevi*; *leo les*, to besmear, *levi*, and its compound *deleo* makes *delevi*, to blot out; *pleo ples*, to fill, makes *plevi*. 5. *Neones* to spin, *nevi*; *maneo* to tarry, makes *mansi*. 6. *Torqueo*, to wrest *torfi*. 7. And *hareo*, to stick, *hæsi*.

8. *Veo* is made *vi*; as, *Ferveo*, *ferui*, to be hot; but *niveo*, to wink, and its compound *conniveo* to close and open the eyes, makes *nivi* and *nixi*; *cileo*, to trouble makes *civi*; and *vies*, to binde, *vievi*.

In the
Third, *Bo*
makes *bi*.

III. **T**He third Conjugation will form the Preterperfect tense, as is plain here, *Bo* is made *bi*, as, *Lambo, lambi* to lick, Except 1. *Scribo, scripsi*, to write; *nubo, nupsi* to be married to a man; and *cumbo, cubui*, to lie down.

Go, *ci*.

Co is made *ci*; as, *Vinco vici*, to overcome But 1. *Parco* makes *peperci* and *parsi* to spare; *dico dixi*, to say, and *duco, duxi*, to lead.

Do *di*.

Do is made *di*; as, *mando, mandi*, to eat; but *scindo* to cut, makes *scidi*; *findo, fidi*, to cleave, *fundo, fudi* to pour out; *tundo, tutudi*, to knock; *pendo, pependi* to weigh; *tendo, tetendi*, to stretch; *pedo, pepedi*, to fart; *cado, cecidi*, to fall; *cado, cecidi*, to beat; *cedo, cessi*, to give place; *vado* to go away; *rado* to have; *Ledo* to hurt; *ludo*, to play; *divido* to divide; *trudo* to thrust; *claudio*, to shut; *plaudo* to clap hands; *rodo*, to gnaw, change alwayes *do* into *fi*.

Go, *xi*.

Go is made *xi*, as *jungo*, to joyne, *juxxi*; but *r* before *go* makes *fi*; as *spargo, sparsi*, to sprinkle; *lego*, to read makes *legi*; and *ago*, to do, *egi*; *tango*, *texi*;

Spondeo, habere spondi; tondeo, vultque totondi.

3. L vel r ante geo, si fiet, geo vertitur in si.
Urgeo ut urfi; mulgeo, mulsi, dat quoque mulxi;
Frigeo, frixi; lugeo, luxi; habet augeo, & auxi.

4. Dat Fleo, fles, flevi; leo, les, levi; indeq; natum,
Delco, deleui; pleo, ples, plevi. 5. Neo nevi;
A manco, mansi, formatur. 6. Torqueo, torssi.

7. Hæreo vult hæsi. 8. Veo fit vi; ut Ferveo, fervi,
Niveo, & inde satum poscit conniveo, nivi,
Et nixi; cico, civi; vicôque vievi.

Tertia Præteritum formabit, ut hic manifestum. In Tertia,
Bo fit bi; ut Lambo, lambi. 1. Scribo, excipe scripsi; Bo fit bi.
Et nubo, nupsi; antiquum cumbo, cubui dat.

Co fit ci; ut Vinco, vici; vult parco, peperci, Co, ci.
Et parsi; dico, dixi; duco, quoque duxi.

Do fit di; ut Mando, mandi; sed scindo, scidi, dat, Do, di.
Findo fidi; fundo, fudi; rundo, rutudique;
Pendo, pependi; tendo, tetendi; pedo, pepedi;
Junge cado, cecidi; pro verbero cado, cecidi;
Cedo pro distedere, siue locum dare cessi.
Vado, rado, lædo, ludo, divido, trudo,
Claudo, plodo, rodo, ex do semper faciunt si.

Go fit xi; ut jungo, junxi; sed r ante go vult si; Go, xi.
Ut spargo, sparsi; lego, legi; & ago facit egi;

Dat

teligi, to touch : *pungo*, to prick, makes *punxi* and *pupugi* ; *frango fregi*, to break : *pango pepigi*, to make a bargain : *pango pigi*, to joyn : *pango panxi*, to sing.

Ho, xi.

Ho is made *xi* ; as, *Trabo traxi*, to draw : and *veho vexi*, to carry.

Lo, ui.

Lo is made *ui* ; as, *Colo colui*, to till : but *Psallo*, to sing, and *sallo*, to salt, make *salli* : *vello*, to pluck up, makes *velli* and *ulsi* : *fallo*, to deceive, makes *fefelli* : *cello*, to break, *ceculi* : and *pello*, to drive away, *pepuli*.

Mo, vi.

Mo is made *ui* ; as, *Vomo vomui*, to vomit : but *emo*, makes *emi*, to buy : *como compsi*, to comb : *promoprompsi*, to draw : *demo dempsi*, to take away : *sumo lumps*, to take : *premo pressi*, to press.

No, vi.

No is made *vi* ; as, *sino sivi*, to suffer. Except *Temo tempsi*, to despise : *sermo stravi*, to strew : *sperno spreui*, to despise : *lino levi*, *lini* and *livi*, to dabbe : *serno crevi*, to discern. *Gigno* makes *genui*, to beget : *pono posui*, to put : *cano cecini*, to sing.

Po, psi.

Po is made *psi* ; as, *scalpo scalpsi*, to scratch : *ruporupi*, to break : *strepo strepui*, to make a noise : *crepa crepui*, to crack.

Quo, qui.

Quo is made *qui* ; as, *linquo liqui*, to leave. Except *coquo coxi*, to boil.

Ro, vi.

Ro is made *vi* ; as, *sero*, to plant or sow, makes *sevi*, which changing the signification, rather maketh *serui* : *verro*, to brush, *verri* and *verfi* : *uro ussi*, to burn : *gero gessi*, to act, or bear : *quero quæsi*, to seek : *tero triui*, to wear : *curro cucurvi*, to run.

So, sivi.

So will make *sivi* ; as, *accersso*, to go to call, *arsesso* to go to call, *incecco*, to rebite, and *lacecco sivi*, to provoke. Except *capecco*, to offer to take, which makes *capecci* and *capeccivi* ; *facecco*, to go about to do, and *visso*, to visit, makes *visi* ; but *pinso* to bake, will have *pinxi*.

Scro, vi.

Scro is made *vi* ; as, *pasco pavi*, to feed ; but *posco*, will have *poposci*, to require. *Disco*,

*Dat tango tetigi, pungo punxi pupugique;
Dat frango fregi, cūm signat pango pascici
Vult pepigi, pro iungo, pegi, pro cano panxi;
Ho fit xi, traho ten traxi, docet & vcho vxi.*

Ho, xi.

*Lo fit ui, colo cen colui; psallo excipe cum p
Et fallo sine p, nam falli format utrunque;
Dat vello velli vulsi quoque, fallo fefelli,
Cello pro frango ceculi; pello pepulique.*

Lo, ui

*Mo fit ui, vomo cen vomui: sed emo facit emi;
Como petit compsi, promo prompsi, adijce demo
Quod format dempsi, sumo lumpsi, premo pressi.*

Mo, ui.

*No fit vi, sino cen sivi, temno excipe tempsi,
Dat sterno stravi, sperno spreui, lino leui,
Interdum lini & livi, cerno quoque crevi:
Gigno, pono, cano, genui, posui, cecini, dant.*

No, vi.

*Po fit psi, ut scalpo scalpsi, rumpo excipe rupi,
Et strepo quod format strepui, crepo quod crepui dat.*

Po, psi.

Quo fit qui, ut linquo liqui, coquo demito coxi.

Quo, qui.

*Ro fit vi, sero cen pro planto & semino savi;
Quod serui melius dat mutans significatum.
Vult verro verri & verfi, uro ussi, gero gessi,
Quero quæsi, tero trivi, curro cucurri.*

Ro, vi.

*So, velut accerso, arcesso, incesso, atque lacesso,
Formabit livi; sed tolle capesso capessi,
Quodque capessivi facit, atque facesso facessi,
Sic viso visi, sed pinso pinsui habebit.*

So, livi.

Seo fit vi, ut palco pavi; vult posco poposci;

Seo, vi.

Vult

Disco, didici, to learn, and *quiniſco quexi*, to nod with the head.

To, ti. *To* is made *ti*; as, *verto verti*, to turn: *ſiſto, ſtiti*, to make to ſtand: but *mitto* makes *miſſi*, to ſend: *peto* will form *perivi*, to aſk: *ſterto ſtertui*, to ſnozt: *meto meſſui*, to mow.

Ecto, exi. *Ecto* is made *exi*; as, *ſecto flexi*, to bend: but *pecto* to comb, makes *pexi*, and *pexui*; and *necto*, to knit: *nexui* and *nexi*,

Vo, vi. *Vo* is made *vi*; as, *volvo volvi*, to rowl over: Except *vivo vixi*, to live. *Nexo*, makes *nexui*, to knit,

Xo, exui. and *texo, texui*, to weave.

Cio is made *ci*; as, *facio feci*, to make: *jacio, jeci*, to caſt: but *lacio*, to allure, makes *lexi*; and *ſpecio* to behold *ſpexi*.

Dio is made *di*; as, *fodio*, to dig, makes *fodi*.

Gio is made *gi*; as, *fugio fugi*, to avoid.

Pio is made *pi*; as, *capio cepi*, to take, Except *cupio cupivi*, to deſire, and *rapio, rapui*, to ſnatch, and *ſapio ſapui*, or *ſapivi* to be wiſe.

Rio, ri. *Rio* is made *ri*; as, *pario peperi*, to bring forth.

Tio, ti. *Tio* is made *ſſi*; as, *quatio quaſſi*, to ſhake, which preterperfect tenſe is ſeldome uſed.

Uo, ui. *Uo* is made *ui*; as *ſtatuo ſtatui*, to appoint, but *pluo*, to rain, makes *pluvi* and *plui*; *ſtruo ſtruxi*, to build, *fluo fluxi*, to flow.

In Quarta
is format
4vi,

IV The fourth Conjugation makes *is* in the preſent tenſe, and *ivi* in the preterperfect tenſe: as, *ſcio ſcis ſcivi*, to know. Except *venio veni*, to come, *cambio campſi*, to exchange: *raucio rauſi*, to be hoarſe, *ſarcio ſarſi*, to ſtuff, *ſarcio ſarſi*, to patch, *ſepio ſepſi*, to hedge: *ſentio ſenſi*, to perceive: *fulcio fulſi*, to underprop: *haurio hauſi* to draw, *ſancio ſanxi*, to eſtabliſh, *vincio vinx*, to binde: *ſalio ſalui* to leap, and *amico amicui* to clothe. We ſeldome uſe, *Cambriv*, *haurivi*, *amicivi*, &c.

Vult didici disco, quexi formare quinisco.

To fit ti; ut, verto verti, sed hīsto notetur.

To, ti.

Profacio stare Activum, nam jure fīti dat.

Dat mitro misi, peto vult formare petivi.

Sterto sterui habet, meto messui. Ab ecto fit cxi;

Ecto, cxi,

Ut flecto flexi: pecto dat pexui, habetque

Pexi; etiam necto dat nexui, habet quoque nexi.

Vo fit vi; ut, volvo volvi; vivo excipe vixi:

Vo, vi,

Nexo ut nexui habet, sic texo texui habebit.

Xo, xui.

Fit cie, ei; ut facio feci, jacio quoque jeci:

Antiquum lacio lexi, specio quoque spexi.

Cie ci.

Fit dio, di; ut, fodio fodi. Gio, ceu fugio, gi.

Dio, dā.

Fit pio, pi; ut, capio cepi, cupio excipe pivi;

Gio, gi.

Et rapio rapui, sapio sapui, atque sapivi.

Pio, pi,

Fit rio, ri; ut, pario peperi. Tio sibi Geminans f;

Rio, ris

Ut quatio quassi, quod vix reperitur in usu.

Tio, sibi

Denique uo, fit ui; ut, statuo statui; pluo pluvi

Uo, ui.

Format sivi plui; struo sed struxi, fluo fluxi.

IV. *Quarta dat is, ivi; ut monstrat scio scis tibi scivi;*

In Quarta

Et cipiās venio dans veni, cambio campsi,

is format

Rucio rauxi, farcio farxi, falcio farsxi,

is.

Sepio sepsi, sentio sensi, fulcio fulxi;

Haurio item hauxi, sancio sanxi, vincio vinx;

Pro salto salio salui, & amicio amicuī dat.

Parcius utemur cambiui, haurivi, amicivi,

Sepivi, sanxivi, sarcivi, atque salivi.

Chap 30.

Of the Preterperfect tense of Compound Verbs.

The, simple
and Com-
pound
verbs have
the same
preterper-
fect tense.
Except,
1. Words
that double
the first
syllable.
2 Plico.

THE Simple and the Compound Verb have the same Preterperfect tenses; as, *Docui*, I have taught: *edocui*, I have fully taught, but,

1. The syllable, which the simple verb doubleth, is not alwayes doubled in the Compound, except in these three, *præcurro*, to run before: *excurro*, to run out: and *repungo* to prick again: and in the Compounds of *Do* to give: *disco* to learn: *sto* to stand: and *posco* to require.

2. *Plico* compounded with *sub* or a Noun, will have *plicavi*; as, *supplico*, to supply: *multiplico*, to multiply: but *aplico* to apply: *complico* to fould up: *replico*, to reply, & *explico* to unfold, will end in *ui*, or *avi*.

3 Oleo.

3. Though *Oleo* to smell, makes *olui*, yet its compounds makes rather *olevi*: but *Redoleo* to smell strong, and *suboleo* to smell a little, are formed like the simple Verbe.

4. Pungo.

4. All the compounds of *Pungo* to prick, make *punxi*; but *repungo* to prick again, makes *repunxi* and *repunxi*.

5. Do, & Sto

5 The Compounds of *Do*, when they are of the third Conjugation, make *didici*; as *Credo* to believe: *edo*, to set forth: *dedo*, to yield: *reddo*, to restore: *perdo*, to destroy: *abdo*, to hire: *obdo*, to set against: *condo* to build: *indo* to put in: *trado*, to deliver: *prodo* to betray: *vendo* to sell: But *Abfcondo*, to hide, makes *ab'condi*:

6. Verbs
changing
the first
vowel
into e

The Compounds of *Sto*, to stand, make *steti*.
6, These Simple Verbs being compounded do change the first vowel of the Present tense, and Preterperfect tense, and so of all other tenses into e, viz:

Damne

Cap. 30.

De Compositorum Verborum Præteritis.

PRÆTERITUM dat idem Simplex & Compositivum;

Ut docui, edocui monstrat. 1. Sed syllaba semper

Quam simplex geminat, composito non geminatur;

Præterquam tribus his, præcurro, excurro, repungo:

Atque à do, disco, sto, posco, rite creatis.

2. A plico compositum cum sub, vel nomine, ut ista
Supplico, multiplico, gaudent formare plicavi,
Applico, complico, replico & explico ui, vel in avi;

3. Quamvis vult oleo simplex olui, tamen inde
Quodvis compositum melius formabit olevi;
Simplicis at formam redolet sequitur subolérque.

4. Composita à pungo formabunt omnia punxi,
Vult unum pupugi, interdumque repungo repunxi.

5. Natum à do, quando est inflectio tertia, ut addo,

Credo, edo, dedo, reddo, perdo, abdo, vel obdo,

Condo, indo, trado, prodo, vendo didi: at unum

Abcondo abscondi. Natum à sto stas stiti habebit.

6. Verba hæc simplicia præsentis præteritique,
Si componantur vocalem primam in e mutant;

Simplex &
Compositum idem
habent
Præteritum.
Excipe,
1. Geminantia primam syllabam,

2 Plico,

3 Oleo,

4 Fungo,

5 Do &
Sto,

6 Mutantia
primam vo-
calem in e

K

Damno,

Damno to condemn: *lactō*, to give suck: *sacro* to dedicate: *fallo* to deceive: *arceo*, to drive away: *tracto* to handle: *fatiscor*, to be weary: *partio*, to divide: *carpo*, to crop, *patro* to commit: *scando*, to climb: *spargo*, to sprinkle and *pario* to bring fourth young: whereof two Compounds, *Comperio* to finde out by search: and *reperio* to finde by chance, do make *peri*, and all the rest *perui*: as, *aperio* to open: *operio*, to cover.

7. *Pasco*

7. These two compounds of *Pasco*, viz, *compesco*, to pasture together, and *dispesco*, to drive from pasture, will have *pesui*, the rest will have *pavi*: as, *epasco*, to eat up.

8. Verbs
that change
the first
vowel in-
to, i.

8 These Verbs being compounded do change the first vowel every where into i, viz. *habeo* to have: *lateo*, to lie hid: *salio* to leap: *statuo* to appoint: *cado*, to fall: *ludo* to hurt: *pango* *pegi*, to joyne: *cano* to sing: *quaero*, to seek: *cado*, *cecidi*, to beat: *tango*, to touch: *ego*, to want: *teneo* to hold, *taceo*, to keep silence, *sapio* to be wise: and *rapio*, to snatch: as *rapio* *rapui*, makes *eripio*, *eripui*: but the Compounds of *Cano*, make the preterperfect tense in *ui*; as *concino* to agree in one tune, *concinui*,

9. *Placeo*.

9 So of *Placeo* cometh *displaceo* to displease: but *complaceo* to like wel, & *perplaceo* to please throughly, do follow the simple Verb.

10. *Pango*.

10. These four Compounds of *pango* to joyne, do keep a, viz. *Depango* to fasten down: *oppango*, to fasten to: *circumpango* to fasten about: and *repango* to disjoyne.

11. *Maneo*

11. These four Compounds of *Maneo* *mansi*, to tarry, do make *minui*, viz. *Premineo*, to excell others; *emineo*, to appear before others. *promineo* to hang out in sight, and *immineo* to hang over: but the rest follow the simple Verb.

12. *Scalpo*,
calco, *salto*

12. The Compounds of *scalpo* to scratch: *calco*, to tread, *salto*, to dance, change a into u: as *exsculpo*

Damno, laeto, sacro, fallo, arceo, tracto; fatiscor,
Partio, carpo, patro, scando, spargo, parioque,
Cujus nata peri duo, comperit & reperit dant;
Cetera sed perui, velut hæc aperire, operire.

7. A pascō, pavi tantum composita notentur
Hæc duo, compesco, dispesco, pelcui habere:
Cetera, ut epasco, servabunt simplicis usum.

7. Pascoj

8. Mutan-
tia primam
vocalem
in i.

8. Hæc habeo, latco, salio, statuo, cado, ludo,
Pango dans pegi, cano, quero, cedo, cecidi,
Tango, cgeo, teneo, taceo, sapio, rapioque,
St componantur, vocalem primam in i mutant,
Ut rapio, rapui; eripio eripui. à Cano natum,
Præteritum per ui, ceu concino concinui dat.

9. A placeo sic displiceo, sed simplicis usum

9. Placeo

Hæc duo complaceo cum perplaceo, bene servant.

10. Composita à pango retinent a quatuor ista;

10. Pango

Depango, oppango, circumpango, atque repango.

11. A maneo mansi, minui dant quatuor ista;

11. Maneo.

Præmineo, emineo, cum promineo, immineoque;
Simplicis at verbi servabunt cetera formam.

12. Compositum à scalpo, calco, salto, a per u mutant;

12. Scalpo.
Id calco, salto

po, to carve; *inculco*, to inculcate; and *resulco*, to rebound.

12. *Claudo*
quatio,
lavo.

13. The Compounds of *Claudo* to shut, *quatio* to shake, *lavo* to wash, do cast away *a*; as, *occludo* to shut fast, *excludo* to shut out, of *claudio*. *Percutio* to smite, and *excutio* to shake off, of *quatio*. *Proluo*, *is*, *lui*; to wash much; *diluo*, *is*, *lui*, to purge with washing, of *lavo*.

14. Verbs
that change
the first
vowel of
the present
tense into *i*
but not of
the Preter-
tense

14. These Verbs being compounded, change the first vowel of the Present tense into *i*; but not of the Preterperfect tense; viz. *Ago* to do, *emo* to buy, *sedeo* to sit, *rego* to rule, *frango* to break, *capio* to take, *jacio* to cast, *lacio* to allure, *specio* to behold, *premo* to press, as of *frango* is made *refringo* *refregi* to break open: of *capio*, *incipio* *incepti* to begin: but *perago* to finish, *satago* to be busie about a thing, *coëmo* to buy together, do follow their simple Verbe. And of *ago*, *dego* to live, make's *degi*, and *cogo* to compel, *coëgi*, as also of *rego*, *pergo* to go forward, make's *perrexi*, and *furgo* to arise, *surrexi*; the middle syllable of the Present tense being taken away.

15. *Facio*.

15. *Facio* changeth nothing, unless it have a Preposition before it, as, *Olfacio* to smell, *calfacio* to make hot, and *infacio* to infect.

16. *Lego*.

16. The Compounds of *Lego*, with *re*, *se*, *per*, *præ* *sub*, *trans*; keep the vowel of the Present tense, the rest change it into *i*: of which *intelligo* to understand, *diligō* to love, *negligo* to neglect, make *lexi*, and all the rest make *legi*.

Id tibi demonstrant exculpo, inculco, resulto.

13. *Composita à claudio, quatio, lavo, rejiciunt a;*

13. Claudio,
quatio, la-
vo.

Id docet à claudio occludo, excludo; à quatioque

Percutio, excutio; à lavo, proluo, diluo, nata.

14. *Hæc si componas, ago, emo, sedeo, rego, frango,*

14. Mutan-
tia primam
vocalem
præsentis
in i, sed
non præte-
riti.

Et capio, jacio, lacio, specio, premo, semper

Vocalem primam præsentis in i sibi mutant,

Præteriti nunquam, ceu frango, refringo refrégi;

A capio, incipio incepti: Sed pauca notentur,

Namque suum simplex perago sequitur, saragóque:

Atque ab ago dego dat degi, cogo coëgi;

A rego sic pergo perrexi, vult quoque surgo

Surrexi, mediâ præsentis syllabâ ademptâ.

15. *Nil variat facio nisi præposito præeunte:*

Id docet olfacio, cum calfacio, inficióque.

15. Facio,

16. *A lego nata, e, se, per, præ, sub, trans, præeunte,*

16. Lego

Præsentis servant vocalem: in i cetera mutant;

De quibus hæc intelligo, diligo, negligo, tantum

Præteritum lexi faciunt; reliqua omnia legi.

Chap. 31.

Of the Supines of Simple Verbs.

The Supine
is formed
of the Pre-
ter tense.

Bi makes
tum.

Ci, tum.

Di, tum.

The syllable
is not
doubled in
the Supine.

Gi, tum.

Li, tum.

Mi, }
Ni, } tum
Pi, }
Qui, }

Ri, tum

Si, tum.

NOW learn to form the Supine from the Preterperfect tense thus: *Bi* makes *tum*; as, *Bibi bibi-tum* to drink.

Ci is made *tum*, as *vici victum* to overcome, *icitum* to smite, *feci factum* to do, *jeci jactum* to cast.

Di is made *sum*, as *vidi visum* to see; but some do double *ss*, as *pandi passum* to lay open, *sedi sessum* to sit, *scidi scissum* to cut, *fidi fissum* to cleave, *fodi foffum* to dig.

And here also you may observe, that the syllable which is doubled in the Preterperfect tense is not doubled in the Supines, as *tonondi* to clip, makes *tonsum*; *cecidi* to beat, *casum*; *cecidi* to fall, *casum*; *tendi* to stretch, *tensum* and *tenum*; *tutudi* to knock, *tunsum*; *pepedi* to fart, *peditum*; to which add *dedi*, which makes *datum*.

Gi is made *tum*, as *legi* to read, *lectum*; *pegi* to joyn and *pegegi* to make a bargain, *pactum*; *fregi* to break, *fractum*; *tetigi* to touch, *tactum*; *egi* to do, *actum*; *pupugi* to prick, *punctum* and *fugi* to avoid, *fugitum*.

Li is made *sum*, as *falli* to season with salt, *falsum*; *pepuli* to drive away makes *pulsum*; *ceculi* to break, *cullum*; *sefelli* to deceive, *falsum*; *velli* to pluck up, *vulsum*, and *tuli* to suffer, *latum*.

Mi, *ni*, *pi*, *qui*, are made *tum*, as *emi emptum* to buy, *veni ventum* to come, *cecini cantum* to sing, *cepi cap-tum* to take, *cepio ceptum* to begin, *rupi ruptum* to breake, *liqui licitum* to leave.

Ri is made *sum*, as *verri versum* to brush; except *peperi partum* to bring forth.

Si is made *sum*, as *visi visum* to visite; yet *missi* make

Cap. 31.

De Simplicium Verborum Supinis.

Supinum
formatur
ex Præterito.

Nunc ex Præterito discas formare Supinum.
Bi sibi tum format: sic namque bibi bibitum fit

Bi formatum.

Ci fit ætum, ut vici victum, testatur & ici
Dans ictum, feci factum, jeci quoque jactum.

Ci, ætum.

Di fit sum, ut vidi visum: quædam geminant ff,
ut pandi passum, sedi sessum; adde scidi quod
Dat scissum, atque fidi fissum, fodi quoque fossium.

Di, sum.

Hic etiam advertas, quod syllaba prima Supinis,
Quam vult præteritum geminari, non geminatur:

Syllaba non
geminatur
Supinis.

Idque torondi dans tonsum docet atque cecidi
Quod cæsum, & cecidi, quod dat casum, atque tetendi
Quod tensum & tentum, tutudi tunsum, atque pepedi
Quod format peditum, adde dedi quod jure, datum vulg.

Gi, ætum.

Gi fit ætum, ut legi lectum, pegi pepigique
Dat pactum, fregi fractum, terigi quoque tactum,
Egi ætum, pupugi punctum, fugi fugitum dat.

Li, sum-

Li fit sum, ut falli stans pro sale condio falsum;
Dat pepuli pullum, ceculi culsum, atque fefelli
Falsum; dat velli vulsum, tuli habet quoque latum.

Mi, }
Ni, } tum
Pi, }
Qui, }

Mi, ni, pi, qui, tum fiunt velut hic manifestum;
Emi emptum, veni ventum, cecini à cano cantum;
A capio cepi dans captum, à coepio coeptum,
A rumpo rupi ruptum, liqui quoque licitum.

Ri, sum.

Ri fit sum, ut verri versum; pepereris excipe partum.
Si fit sum, ut visi visum; tamen s geminato,

Si, sum.

keth *missum* to send with a double *ss*: except *fulsi* *factum* to underprop, *hausi* *haustum* to draw, *sarsi* *sartum* to patch, *sarsi* *factum* to stuff, *ussi* *ustum* to burn, *gessi* *gestum* to bear, *torsi* *ortum* or *orsum* to wrest, *indulsi* *indultum* or *indulsum* to pamper.

Psi, tum, *Psi* is made tum, as *scripsi* *scriptum* to write; except *campsi* *campsum* to exchange

Ti, rum, *Ti* is made tum, as *steti* to stand, and *siti* to make to stand, makes *statum*, except *verti* *versum* to turn.

Vi, tum, *Vi* is made tum, as *flavi* *flatum* to blow; except *pavi* *pastum* to feed, *lavi* *lotum*, *lautum* or *lavatum* to wash, *potavi* *potum* or *potatum* to drink, *favi* *factum* to favor, *cavi* *cautum* to beware, *sevi* *satum* to sow, *livi* or *lini* *litum* to dab, *solvi* *solutum* to loose, *volvi* *volutum* to rowl, *singultivi* *singultum* to sob, *venivi* *venum* to be sold, *sepilivi* *sepultum* to bury.

Ui, tum, *Ui* makes itum, as *domui* *domitum* to tame: except every verb in *ui*; because *ui* will always make *utum*, as *exui* *exutum* to put off: but *rui* makes *rutum* to rush, so *secui* *sectum* to cut, *necui* *nectum* to kill, *fricui* *frictum* to rub, *miscui* *mixtum* to mingle, *amicui* *amicum* to clothe, *torrui* *torrum* to roast, *docui* *doctum* to teach, *tenui* *tentum* to hold, *consului* *consultum* to consult, *alui* *altum* or *alutum* to nourish, *salui* *saltum* to leap, *colui* *cultum* to worship, *occului* *occultum* to hide, *pinsui* *pistum* to bake, *rapui* *raptum* to snatch, *serui* *sertum* to put to, *texui* *textum* to weave. But these change *ui* into *sum*; for *censeo* to think maketh *censum*, *cellui* *celsum* to break, *messui* *messum* to mow, *nexui* *nexum* to knit, *pexui* *pexum*, to comb, *patui* *passum* to lie open, *carui* *casum* & *caritum*, to want.

Xi, itum, *Xi* is made itum, as *vinxi* *vinctum* to bind; but five lose *n*, viz. *finxi* *fictum* to feign, *minxi* *mixtum* to piss, *pinxi* *pictum* to paint, *strinxi* *strictum* to tie, *vinxi* *vinctum* to grin.

And

Misi formabit missum, fulsi excipe fultum;
 Haulsi hauustum, farsî fartum, farsî quoque fartum,
 Ulsi ustum, gessi gestum, torî duo tortum
 Et torsum, indulsi indultum indulsûmque requirit.

Psi sit tum, ut scripsi scriptum; campsi excipe camp-
 sum. Psi, tum

Ti sit tum, à sto namque steti, à sistô que stiti sit, Ti, tum,
 Præterito, commune statum; verti excipe versum.

Vi sit tum, ut flavi statum, pavi excipe pastum; Vi, tum,
 Dat lavi lotum, interdum lautum atque lavatum,
 Potavi potum, interdum facit & potatum;
 Sed favi fautum, cavi cautum, à sero sevi
 Formes ritè satum; livi linique litum dat;
 Solvi à solvo solutum, volvi à volvo volutum:
 Vult singultivi singultum, veneo venis
 Venivi venum, sepelivi ritè sepultum.

(quodvis
 Quod dat ui dat itum, ut domui domitum, excipe
 Verbum in uo, quia semper ui formabit in utum; Hi item,
 Utum,
 Exui ut exutum, à ruo deme rui ruitum dans;
 Vult secui sectum, necui nectum, fricuique
 Fricum, miscui item mistum, ac amicui dat amictum;
 Torruui habet tostum, docuique doctum, tenuique
 Tentum, consului consultum, alui altum aliûmque,
 Sic salui saltum, colui ocului quoque cultum;
 Pinsui habet pistum, rapui raptum, seruique
 A sero vult seistum; sic texui habet quoque textum.

Hæc sed ui mutant in sum; nam censeo censum, sum,
 Cellui habet celsum, meto messui habet quoque messû;
 Nexui item nexum, sic pexui habet quoque pexum;
 Dat patui passum, carui cassum caritûmque.

Xi sit tum, ut vinxi victum, quinque abijiciunt n, Xi, tum.
 Nam finxi fictum, minxi mictum, inque Supino,
 Dat pinxi pictum, strinxi, rinxi quoque rictum.

Xum

And these *Xi* into *xum*, *Flexi flexum* to bend, *plexi plexum* to punish, *fixi fixum* to fasten, *fluxi fluxum* to flow.

Chap. 32.

Of the Supines of Compound Verbs, and of the Preterperfect tense of Verbs in *or*.

The Compound Supine is formed like the Simple.

EVERY Compound Supine is formed as the Simple, though there remain not always the same syllable in both.

The compounds of *tunsum* to knock, *n* being taken away, make *tusum*, and of *ruitum* to rush, is made *rutum*, *i* being taken away, and so of *salturn* to leap, is made *sultum*.

When *fero* maketh *satum*, its compounds make *situm*.

These Supines *captum* to take, *factum* to do, *jactum* to cast, *raptum* to snatch, *cantum* to sing, *partum* to bring forth, *sparsum* to sprinkle, *carpum* to crop, and *farum* to stuff, change *a* into *e*.

The verb *edo* to eat, when it is compounded maketh not *estum*, but *esum*, onely *comedo* to eat up, maketh both.

Of *nosco* to know, *cognitum* to know, and *agnitum* to acknowledge, are onely used, the rest of its compounds make *notum*, for *noscitum* is not in use.

Verbs in *or* make their Preterperfect tense of the later supine by putting *to*, and *sum* vel *fui*.

II. **V**ERBS in *or* take their Preterperfect tense from the latter Supine, by changing *u* into *us*, adding *sum* vel *fui*; as of *lectu* is made *lectus sum* vel *fui*. But of these verbs, sometimes a Deponent, sometimes a Commune is to be noted; for *labor* to slide, makes *lapsus sum*, *paior* to suffer, makes *passus sum*, and its compounds *compaior* to suffer together, *compassus sum*, *perpetior*.

Xum flexi, plexi, fixi *dant*, & fluo fluxum.

Cap. 32.

De Compositorum Verborum Supinis, & De
Præteritis Verborum in or.

Compositum ut Simplex formatur quodque Supinum, Composi-
tum supi-
num for-
matur ut
Simplex.
Quamvis non eadem fiet semper syllaba utrique.

Composita à tuncsum, dempta n tuncsum, à ruitum fit

I media demptâ rucum, & à saltum quoque sultum,

A sero quando satum format, composita situm dant.

Hæc captum, factum, jactum, raptum, a per e mutant,

Et cantum, partum, sparsum, carptum, quoque fartum.

Verbum edo compositum non estum sed facit esum;

Unum duntaxat comedo formabit utrunque.

A nosco tantum duo cognitum & agnitum habentur,

Cætera dant notum; nullo est jam noscitur in usu.

II. **V**erba in or admittunt ex posteriore Supino
Præteritum, verso u per us, & sum consociato
Vel fui; ut, à lectu lectus sum vel fui. At horum
Nunc est Deponens, nunc est Commune notandum:
Nam labor lapsus, patio dat passus & ejus
Nata, ut compatio compassus, perpetiorque

Verba in
or admit-
tunt Præte-
ritum ex
posteriore
supino, ad-
dendo, &
sum vel fui.

Formans

perpetior to suffer throughlie *perpeſſus ſum*, fateor to confeſs, make's *faſſus ſum*, and its compounds, as, *confeſſeor* to confeſs *confeſſus ſum*, *diffiteor* to denie *diffeſſus ſum*, *gradior* to go by ſteps, make's *greſſus ſum*, and ſo its compounds, as, *digredior* to digreſs, *digreſſus ſum*, *fatifcor* to be wearie make's *feſſus ſum*, *metior* to meaſure *meſus ſum*, *utor* to uſe *uſus ſum*, *ordior* to weab make's *orditus*, *ordior* to begin *orſus*, *nitor* to endeavor *nifus* or *nixus ſum*, *ulcifcor* to rebenge *ultus ſum*, *iraſcor* to be angrie make's *iratus ſum*, *veor* to ſuppoſe *ratuſ ſum*, *obliviſcor* to forget *oblituſ ſum*, *fruor* to enjoy *fruſtus*, or *frui:uſ ſum*, *miſereor* to pity *miſer:uſ ſum*, *tuor* to ſee and *tueor* to defend make not *tut:uſ* but *tuituſ ſum*, though both have *tutum* and *tuitum* in the Supine; *loquor* to ſpeak make's *locutuſ ſum*, *ſequor* to follow *ſecutuſ ſum*, *experior* to try *experituſ ſum*, *pacifcor* to make a bargain *pacituſ ſum*, *nanciſcor* to get *nactuſ ſum*, *apiſcor* to get, which is an old verb, makes *apiuſ ſum*, to be apt or fit, or to find out, whence *adipiſcor* to obtain *adepiuſ*, *queror* to complain *queſtuſ ſum*, *proficiſcor* to go on a journey *proſectuſ ſum*, *expergiſcor* to awake *exper:ectuſ ſum*, *comminiſcor* to feign *commentuſ ſum*, *naſcor* to be born *natuſ ſum*, *morior* to die *mortuſ ſum*, *orior* to ariſe make's *ortuſ ſum*.

Chap. 33.

Verbs irregular are
1. Redundant, having a preter tense of the Active and of the Passive voice.

Of certain Verbs irregular, or going out of the common rules of conjugating.

THEſe verbs have a Preterperfect tenſe both of the Active and Paſſive voice, as *ceno* to ſup make's *cenavi* and *cenatuſ ſum*, *juro* to ſwear *juravi* and *juratuſ*, *potō* to drink *potavi* and *potui*, *titubo* to ſtumble *titubavi* or *titubatuſ*,
So

Formans perpeſſus: fateor quod faſſus, & inde
Nata, ut confiteor confeſſus, diffiteorque
Formans diſſeſſus: gradior dat greſſus & inde
Nata, ut digredior digreſſus. Junge faſciſcor
Feſſus ſum, menſus ſum metior, utor & uſus.
Pro texto orditus, pro incepto dat ordior orſus,
Nitor niſus vel nixus ſum, ulciſcor & ultus.
Iraſcor ſimul iratus reor atque ratus ſum,
Obliviſcor vult oblitus ſum; fruor optat
Fructus vel fruitus, miſereri junge miſertus.
Vult tuor & tueor non tutus ſed tuitus ſum,
Quamvis & tutum & tuitum ſit utrique Supinum.
A loquor adde loquutus, & à ſequor adde ſequutus,
Experior facit expertus, formare paciſcor
Gandet pactus ſum, nanciſcor naſtus, apiſcor,
Quod vetus eſt verbum aptus ſum, unde adipiſcor ade-
(ptus.)
Junge quæſor quæſtus, proficiſcor junge profeſtus,
Expergiſcor ſum experteſtus, & hæc quoque commi-
niſcor commentus, naſcor natus, moriorque
Mortuus, atque orior quod Præteritum facit ortus,

Cap. 33.

De verbis quibusdam Anomalis.

Preteritum Active & Paſſive vocis habent hæc,
 Cæno cœnavi & cœnatus ſum tibi format,
 Juro juravi & juratus, potoroque potavi
 Et potus, titubo timbavi vel titubatus.

Verba A-
 nomala
 ſunt
 1. Redun-
 dantia, Præ-
 teritum
 Active &
 Paſſive vo-
 cis habentia.

Sig

So also *careo* to want make's *carni* and *cassus sum*; *prandeo* to dine, *prandi* and *pransus*, *pateo* to lie open, *patui* and *passus*, *placeo* to please *placui* *placitus*; *suesco*, to accustome *suevi* and *suevus*, *veneo* to be sold *venivi* and *venditus sum*, *nabo* to be married to a man *nupsi* and *nupta sum*; *mereor* to deserve *merui* and *meritus sum*; to these add, *libet* it listeth *libuit* and *libitum est vel fuit*, *licet* it is lawfull *licuit*, and *licitum est vel fuit*, *tedet* it irketh *teduit*, and *per-
tasum est vel fuit*, *pudet* it ashameth *pudui*, and *puditum est vel fuit*, and *pigit* it irketh which makes *pigit* and *pigitum est vel fuit*.

2. Variant
as neuter
passives.

and

Neuter-passives are thus formed: viz. like neu-
ters in the present tense, and Passives in the pre-
ter tense: *Gaudeo* to rejoyce *gavisus sum vel fui*, *fido*
to trust *fisus sum vel fui*, *audeo* to be bold *ausus sum
vel fui*, *fio* to be made or done *factus sum vel fui*, *soleo*
to be wont *solitus sum vel fui*, *maereo* to be sad *maestus
sum vel fui*. But *PHOCAS* taketh *maestas* for a
noun Adjective.

Such as
borrow
their Pre-
terperfect
tense.

Some verbs borrow their preterperfect tense from
another verb; as a verbe Inceptive ending in *scio*,
standing for the primitive verb, will have the preter-
perfect tense of the primitive verbe, thus; *tepesco* to
begin to be warm makes *tepui* of *tepeo* to be warm,
fervesco to begin to be hot make's *ferui* of *ferveo* to
be hot, *cerno* to see will have *vidi* of *video* to see, *quatio*
to shake *concussi* of *concutio* to shake, *ferio* to smite
percussi of *percutio* to smite, *meio* to piss will have
minxi of *mingo* to piss, *sido* to settle *sedi* of *sedeo* to sit,
tollo to lift up will have *sustuli* of *suffero* to bear: *sum*
I am will have *fui* of *fuo* to be, *fero* to bear *tuli* of
tulo to bear, *sisto* to make to stand *steti* of *sto* to stand
furo, to be mad *insavi* of *insanio* to be mad.

So

Sic careo carui & cassus sum, prandeo prandi

Et pransus, pateo parui & passus, placeoque

Dat placui & placitus, suesco suevi atque suetus.

Veneo pro vendor, venivi venditus & sum,

Nubo nupsi nuptaque sum, mereor meritus sum

Vel merui. Adde libet libuit libitum, & licet adde

Quod licuit licitum, tædet quod tæduit & dat

Pertæsum; adde pudet faciens puduit puditumque,

Atque piget, tibi quod sonmat piguit pigitumque.

N *Eutro-passivum sic præteritum tibi formant,*
Gaudeo gavissus sum, fido fisis, & audeo

Ausus sum, fio factus, soleo solitus sum,

Mcereo sum mæstus; sed Phocæ nomen habetur.

Q *uadam præteritum verba accipiunt aliunde,*
Incæptivum in sco, stans pro primario, adoptat

Præteritum ejusdem verbi; vult ergo tepesco

A tepeo tepui, fervosco à ferveo fervi,

A video cerno vult vidi, à concutio vult

Præteritum quatio concussi, à percutioque

Perrussi ferio; à mingo vult meio minxi.

A sedeo fido vult sedi, à suffero rollo

Sustuli, & à suo sum fui, à tulo ritè fero tuli.

A sto sisto steti tantum pro stare; furôque

Insanivi à verbo ejusdem significati,

2. Vari-
 tia ut,
 1, Nevro-
 passiva.

&

2. Præteri-
 tum mutu-
 anti.

514

So also *vescor* to eat will have its preterperfect tense from *pascor* to be fed, *medeor* to heal from *medicor* to heal, *liquor* to be melted from *liquefio* to be melted, *reminiſcor* to remember from *recordor* to call to mind.

2. Defective
1. In the
Pretertense

THeſe Verbs want the preterperfect tense; *vergo* to bend or look towards, *ambigo* to doubt *griſco* to grow or encrease, *fatifco* to think, *polleo* to be able, *nideo* to ſhine : to theſe add *pueraſco* to begin to be a child : and paſſives whoſe actives want the Supines, as, *metuor* to be feared, *timeor* to be feared ; and all Deſideratives except *parturio* to ſtrive to bring forth, and *eſurio* to begin to be hungry, or to deſire to eat (with a few others) which have the preterperfect tense.

2. In the
Supine.

THeſe Verbs ſeldome or never have the Supines : *Lambo* to lick, *mico* to ſhine, *rudo* to bzaie, *ſcabo* to claw, *parco* to ſpare, *diſpeſco* to drive from paſture, *poſco* to require, *diſco* to learn, *compesco* to paſture together, *quiniſco* to nod, *dego* to libe, *ango* to vex, *fugo* to ſuck, *lingo* to lick, *ningo* to ſnatch *ſatago* to be buſy about a thing, *ſſallo* to ſing *uolo* to will *nolo* to be unwilling, *malo* to be more willing, *tremo* to tremble, *ſtrideo* to make a noiſe, *ſtrido* to make a noiſe, *flaveo* to be yellow, *liveo* to be black & blew, *aveo* to covet, *paveo* to fear, *conniveo* to wink, *ſerveo* to be hot. The Compounds of *nuo* to nod, as *renuo* to reſuſe: The Compounds of *cado* to fall, as *incido* to fall into; Except *occido* to fall down *occaſum*, and *recido* *recaſum* to fall back; *reſpuo* to reſuſe, *linquo* to leave, *luo* to be puniſhed, *metuo* to fear, *cluo* to gliſter, *frigeo* to be cold, *calvo* to be bald, *ſterto* to ſmelt, *timeo* to fear, *luceo* to ſhine, *arceo* to drive away, whoſe compounds make *ercitum*; the compounds of *gno* to cry like a Crane, as *ingruo* to invade.

And

Sic possunt vescor, medeor, liquor, reminiscor:

Præteritum à pascor, medicor, liquefio, recordor.

P*Præteritum fugiunt, vergo, ambigo, glisco, fatisco* 2 Defectiva
1. Præterito

Polleo, nideo, ad hæc, Inceptiva, ut puerasco;

Et passiva, quibus carvere. Activa supinis,

ut metuor, timeor. Meditativa omnia, præter

Parturio, esurio; quæ præteritum duo servant.

H*æc rarè, aut nunquam retinebunt verba Supinum,* 2 Defectiva
Supinis,

Lambo; mico micui, rudo, scabo, parco peperci,

Dispescor, posco; disco, compesco, quinsco,

Dego, angor, fugo, lingo, ningo, fatagóque,

Pfallo, volo, nolo, malo, tremo, strideo, strido,

Flaveo, liveo, avert, paveo, conniveo, fervet;

A nuo compositum, ut renuo; à cado, ut incido; præter

Occido, quod facit occasum, recidóque rotasum;

Respuo, linquo, luo, metuo, cluo, frigeo, calvo,

Et sterreo, timeo, sic luceo, & arceo, cujus

Composita erciturum habent; sic à gruo, ut ingrúo natum.

And all Verbs Neuters of the second Conjugation that end in *ui*; except *oleo* to smell, *doleo* to grieve, *placeo* to please, *taceo* to hold ones peace, *pareo* to obey, *careo* to want, *noceo* to hurt, *patreo* to lie open, *lateo* to lie hid, *valeo* to be able, *caleo* to be warm, which will have the Supines;

Chap. 34. Of Verbs that want certain Moods and Tenses.

3. Incertain Moods and Tenses, as,

These Verbs (more usually) are called Defectives, which want certain Moods and Tenses. *viz.*

Aio. Indicative Mood } *Aio* I saie, or quoth I, *Ais* thou saiest, *Ai* he saith, or quoth he, Plur. *Aiunt* they saie.

Imperfect. } *Aiebam* I did saie, hath all persons in both numbers.

Preterperfect. *Aisti* thou hast said.

Imperativus, *Ai* saie thou.

Subjunct. } *Aias* thou maiest saie, *Aiat* he maie

Presens } saie, Plur. *Aiamus* we maie saie, *Aiani* they maie saie.

Participium Presens, *Aiens* saying.

Ausim.

Subjunct. } *Ausim* I dare, *Ausis* thou darest, *Ausis* presens. } he dare Plur. *Ausint* they dare.

Duim.

So also *Duim* I gibe, *Duis* thou gibest, *Duit* he gibeth, Plur. *Duint* they gibe.

For the Antients exprest the Subjunctive Mood in *im*, hence we read *creduim* for *credam*.

Salve.

Indicat. Futur. *Salvebis* thou shalt greet, or bid God speed.

Imperat. *Salve salvero* greet you well, Plur. *Salvete salvetote* greet ye well.

Infinitive, *Salvere* to greet well.

Imperative,

Et quæcunque in ui formantur neutra secunda,
 Exceptis, oleo, doleo, placeo, taceoque,
 Pareo, item & careo, noceo, patco, lateoque,
 Et valco, calco; gaudent hæc namque supino.

Cap. 34. De Verbis quæ deficiunt certis
 Modis & Temporibus.

VERBA (magis usitatè) Defectiva vocantur, quæ
 certis Modis & Temporibus deficiunt, viz,

Indicativus } Aio, ais, ait. Plur. Aiunt.
 Præsens }

g. Certis
 Modis &
 Temporibus,
 ut,
 Aio.

Imperfect. Ai**bam**, habet omnes personas utriusque
 numeri,

Perfect. Ai**si**.

Imperativus, Ai.

Subiunctivus } Aias, aiat. Plur. Aiamus, Aiant.
 Præsens, }

Participium præsens, Aiens.

Subiunctivus } Ausim, ausis, ausit. Plur. Ausint.
 Præsens, }

Ausim.

Sic Duim, duis, duit. Plur. Duint.

Duim. 3

Veteres enim Subiunctiva per *im* efferebant,
 unde creduim pro credam legimus,

Salve.

Indicat. Futur. Salvebis.

Imperat. Salve, salueto. Plur. Salvete, salvetote.

Infinitivus, Salvete.

Ave,	Imperative, <i>Ave aveto</i> haile thou, Plur. <i>Aveite avetote.</i> Infinit. <i>Avère</i> , to bid one haile.
Cedo,	Imperat. <i>Cedo</i> reach me, Plur. <i>Cedite</i> , antiently <i>Cette</i> reach yee.
Faxo,	Indic. & Subjunct. Futur <i>Faxo</i> vel <i>Faxim</i> I will bring to pass, <i>Faxis</i> thou wilt make, <i>Faxit</i> he will make. Plur. <i>Faxint</i> they will make.
Forem	Subjunct. <i>Forem</i> I should, or might be, <i>Foret</i> thou shouldst, or mightst be, <i>Foret</i> he should, or might be. Plur. <i>Forent</i> they might be. Infinit. Futur. <i>Fore</i> to be.
Quæso	Indic, præsens <i>Quæso</i> I pray. Plur. <i>Quæsumus</i> we pray.
Infir	Indic, præsens, <i>Infir</i> he saith. Plur. <i>Infunt</i> they say. And <i>Defir</i> it is wanting, <i>Defiet</i> it will be wanting, <i>Defiat</i> let it be wanting, as also <i>desier</i> to be wanting, <i>Confier</i> to be done at once.
Defir	Indicat præsens <i>Inquo</i> vel <i>inquam</i> , I say, <i>Inquit</i> thou saiest, <i>Inquit</i> he saith. Plur. <i>Inquiunt</i> they say.
Confieri	Perfectum, <i>Inquisti</i> thou hast said, <i>Inquit</i> he hath said. Plur. <i>Inquistis</i> ye have said.
Inquam	Futurum. <i>inquies</i> , thou shalt say, <i>inquiet</i> he shall say. Plur. <i>Inquietis</i> ye shall say. <i>Inquierent</i> they shall say.
	Imperat. <i>Inque</i> , <i>Inquito</i> say thou, Plur. <i>Inquite</i> , say yee.
	Subjunct. Præsens, <i>Inquiat</i> he may say.
	Particip. Præsens, <i>Inquiens</i> saying.
Odi	<i>Odi</i> I hate, <i>cœpi</i> I begin, <i>memini</i> I remember
Cœpi	have onely those tenses, which are formed of the
Memini	Preter tense, <i>ſciz.</i> those that end in <i>ram</i> , <i>rim</i> , <i>ſsem</i> , <i>ſſe</i> , save that <i>memini</i> hath in the Imperative mood singular <i>Memento</i> remember thou, <i>mementote</i> remember ye,
Dor	These simple Verbs: <i>For</i> , <i>dor</i> , <i>ſer</i> , <i>der</i> , are ne
For	found

Imperativus, *Ave, avelo.* Plur. *Avete, avelote.* Ave

Infinitivus, *Avère.*

Imperativus, *Cedo.* Plur. *Cedite,* & apud Antiquos *Cedo Cete.*

Indicat. & Subjunct. Fur. *Faxim vel faxo, faxis, Faxo faxit.* Plur. *Faxint.*

Subjunct. *Forem, fores, foret.* Plur. *forent.*

Forem

Infinit. Futur. *Fore.*

Indicat. Præfens, *Quæso.* Plur. *Quæsumus.*

Quæso

Indic. præfens, *Infit.* Plur. *Infiunt.* Et *Desit, defiet, defiat,* ut item *desieri & confieri.*

Infit
Desit
Confieri

Indicat. præfens, *Inquo vel inquam, inquis, inquit.* Inquam
Plur. *Inquiunt.*

Perfectum, *Inquisti, inquit.* Plur. *Inquistis,*

Futuram, *Inquies, inquiet.*

Imperat. *Inque, inquito.* Plur. *Inquite.*

Subjunct. præfens, *Inquiat.*

Participium. *Inquiens.*

Odi, cæpi, memini, habent ea solum tempora quæ à præterito formantur; viz. in *ram, rim, sem, ro,* & *sse* desinentia. Sed *memini* habet in imperativo singulari, *memento.* Plur. *mementote.*

Odi
Cæpi
Memini

Dor, for, der, fer, simplicia, non reperiuntur in Dor

found in the first person singular of the Present tense, but (almost) in all the rest.

Dic, duc, fer, fac, are cut off by *Apocope*.

Sci.

Sci of *scio* to know is not in use, nor *solebo* of *soleo* to be wont, nor *suo* to be, an old verb.

Orior.

Orio *oriris* to arise, hath *oriri* in the Infinitive mood, and *morior* maketh *mori* and *moriri*.

Morior.

Volo.

Nolo.

Malo.

Fero.

Feror.

Edo.

Volo I will, *nolo* I will not, *malo* I had rather, *fero* I bear, *feror* I am born, and *edo* I eat; have commonly a Syncope in many tenses; as, *Volo*, *vis*, *vult*. *Vultis*. *Nolo*, *nonvis*, *nonvult*, *Nolumus*. *Ma'o* *mavis*, *ma'vult*. *Malumus*. *Fero*, *fers*, *fert*. *Feror* *ferris* vel *ferre*, *fertur*. *Edo*, *edis* vel *es*, *edit* vel *est*, &c. of which *volo* and *malo* want the Imperative mood. *Nolo* make's the Imperative mood *noli* *nolito* do not thou. Plur. *Nolite* *nolitote* do not ye.

Eo & queo

Eo I go, and *queo* I am able, make their Preter-imperfect tense *ibam* and *quibam*, and their Future *ibo* and *quibo*; and their Gerunds *eundi*, *eundo*, *eundum*, *Queundi*, *queundo*, *queundum*.

Sum.

Sum with its compounds wants the Gerunds, Supines, and Participles of the Present tense, save that *absens*, *presens* come of *absum*, *presum*, for *futurus* is of *fui*, which was once the preter tense of the obsolete verb *suo*. *Possum* wants the Imperative mood.

primâ personâ singulari præsentis, sed in cæteris (ferè) omnibus.

Dic, due, fer, fac, per Apocopen concisæ sunt.

Sci à scio non reperitur, nec *solebo à soleo*, nec *suo Sci*, antiquum.

Orior oreris & oriris, habet Infinitum *oriri*, sic & *morior mori & moriri*. Orior. Morior.

Volo, nolo, malo, fero, ferer, edo Syncopen ferè admittunt in plerisque temporibus; ut, *Volo, vis, vult, vultis. Nolo, nonvis, nonvult, nolumus. Malo, malvis, mavult, malumus. Fero, fers, fert. Feror, ferris vel ferre, fertur. Edo, edis vel es, edit vel est, &c.* ex quibus *volo & malo* carent Imperativo. *Nolo* facit Imperativum. *Noli. nolito. Plur. nolite nolitote.* Volo. Nolo. Malo. Fero. Feror. Edo.

Eo & queo habent imperfectum *ibam & quibam*, & futurum *ibo & quibo*, & Gerundia, *eundi, eundo, eundum. Queundi, queundo, queundum.* Eo & queo.

Sum cum compositis carent Gerundiis, Supinis, & Participio præsentis, nisi quod ab *absum, præsum*, veniunt *absens, præsens*; nam *futurus* est à *sui*, quod præteritum olim obsoleti verbi *suo*. *Possu* caret Imperativo. Sum.

Cap. 35. Of the Forming of certain Verbs irregular.

Volo |

Indicativus.

Præsens	Sing.	1	Volo	I am	} willing
		2	Vis	thou art	
		3	Vult	he is	
	Plur.	1	Volumus	We are	}
		2	Vultis	ye are	
		3	Volunt	they are	

Imperfect. | Volebam, I was willing, &c. ut, Legebam

Præterperfect. | Volui, I have been willing, &c. ut, Legi

Plusquamperfect. | Volueram, I had been willing, &c. ut, Legeram.

Futurum | Voleam, I shall be willing, &c. ut, Legam.

Imperativo caret, cujus loco utimur præsentis Potentialis, Velis, &c.

Potentialis

Præsens	Sing.	1	Velim	I may	} be willing
		2	Velis	thou mayest	
		3	Velit	he may	
	Plur.	1	Velimus	We may	}
		2	Velitis	ye may	
		3	Velint	they may	

Imperfect.	Sing.	1	Vellem	I might	} be willing
		2	Velles	thou mightest	
		3	Vellet	he might	
	Plur.	1	Vellémus	We might	}
		2	Velleris	ye might	
		3	Vellent	they might	

Præterperf. | Voluerim. I might have been willing, &c. ut, Legerim.

Plusquamperf. | Voluissém. I might had been willing, &c. ut, Legissém

Futurum | Voluero. I may be willing hereafter, &c. ut, Legero.

Infinitivus.

Præsens & Imperf. | Velle. To be willing.

Perfectum & Plusquam. Voluisse. To have or had been willing

Participium præsens. Volens, willing.

Nolo.

Nolo. |

Indicativus.

Præsens	Sing.	1	Nolo,	I am	} unwilling
		2	Non vis,	thou art	
		3	Non vult,	he is	
	Plur.	1	Nolumus	We are	
		2	Non vultis,	ye are	
		3	Nolunt,	they are	

Imperfect. | Nolebam, I was unwilling, &c. ut, Legebam

P. æterp. | Nolui, I have been unwilling, &c. ut, Legi.

Plusquamperf. | Nolueram, I had been unwilling, &c. ut, Legeram.

Futurum | Noleam, I shall be unwilling, &c. ut, Legam

Imperativus.

Præf.	Noli,	Be thou un-	Plur.	Nolite	Be ye unwilling
Sing.	Nolite,	willing		Nolito	

Potentialis.

Præsens	Sing.	1	Nolim,	I may	} be unwilling
		2	Nolis	thou mayest	
		3	Nolit	he may	
	Plur.	1	Nolumus	We may	
		2	Nolitis	ye may	
		3	Nolint	they may	
Imperfect.	Sing.	1	Nollem	I might	} be unwilling.
		2	Nolles	thou mightest	
		3	Nollet	he might	
	Plur.	1	Nollemus	We might	
		2	Nolletis	ye might	
		3	Nolent	they might	

Perfect. | Noluerim, I might have been unwilling, ut, Legerim.

Plusquamperf. | Noluissem, I might have been unwilling, ut, Legissem.

Futurum | Noluerō, I may be unwilling hereafter, ut, Legero.

Infinitivus.

Præsens & Imperf. | Nolle, To be unwilling.

Perfectum & Plusquamperf. | Noluisse, To have or had been unwilling.

Participium Præsens | Nolens, Unwilling.

Male

Malo |

Indicativus.

Præsens	Sing.	1	Malo	I am	} more willing
		2	Mavis	thou art	
		3	Mavult	he is	
	Plur.	1	Malumus	We are	}
		2	Mavultis	ye are	
		3	Malunt	they are	

Imperfect. | Malebam, I was more willing, ut, Legebam

Præterperfect. | Malui, I have been more willing, ut, Legi

Plusquamperfect. | Malueram, I had been more willing, ut, Legeram

Futurum | Malam, I shall be more willing, ut, Legam.

Impe ativo caret, cujus loco utimur Malis, &c.

Potentialis

Præsens	Sing.	1	Malim	I may	} be more willing
		2	Malis	thou mayest	
		3	Malit	he may	
	Plur.	1	Malimus	We may	}
		2	Malitis	ye may	
		3	Malint	they may	

Imperfect.	Sing.	1	Mallem	I might	} be more willing
		2	Malles	thou mightest	
		3	Mallet	he might	
	Plur.	1	Mallémus	We might	}
		2	Mallétis	ye might	
		3	Mallent	they might	

Perfectum | Maluerim. I might have been more willing, ut, Legerim.

Plusquamperf. | Maluissém. I might have had been more willing, ut, Legissém.

Futurum | Malnero. I may be more willing hereafter, ut, Legero.

Infinitivus.

Præsens & Imperf. | Malle. To be more willing.

Perfectum & Plusquam. Maluisse. To have or had been more willing.

Sæpe leguntur Mavolo, Mavolam, Mavelim, & Mavellem.

Fero, Feci, Fecisse.

Fero | Indicativus

Præteritum	Sing.	1 Fero	I bear
		2 Fers	thou bearest
		3 Fert	he beareth
	Plur.	1 Ferimus	we } bear
		2 Fertis	
		3 Ferunt	

Imperfectum | Ferebam, I did bear, ut, Legebam

Perfectum | Tuli, I have born, ut, Legi

Plusquamperf. Tuleram I had born, ut, Legeram

Futurum | Feram, I will bear, ut, Legam.

Imperativus

Præteritum	Sing.	Fer, } Bear thou	Plur.	Feramus } Bear we
		Ferto }		Ferte } Bear ye
	Sing.	Ferat } Let him bear		Fertote }
		Ferto }		Ferant } Let them bear
	Plur.	Ferant }		Ferunt. }
		Ferto }		

Potentialis

Præteritum | Feram, I may bear, ut, Legam

Imperfectum | Ferrem, I might bear, ut, Legerem

Perfectum | Tulerim I might have born, ut, Legerim

Plusquamperfect. | Tulissem I might had born, ut, Legissem

Futurum | Tulero, I might bear hereafter, ut, Legero

Infinitivus

Præteritum, Præteritum, & Imperf. Ferre, To bear

Perfectum & Plusquam | Tulisse To have or had born

Futurum — Laturum esse — To bear hereafter

Gerundia	Ferendi	Of bearing
	Ferendo	In bearing
	Ferendum	To bear

Supina { Latum } To bear
 { Latu } To be bornParticipia { Ferens } Bearing
 { Laturus } About to bear

Feror

Indicativus

Præsens	Sing.	1 Feror	}	I am born
		2 Ferris		thou art born
		Ferre		he is born
	Plur.	3 Feritur	}	we are born
		1 Ferimur		ye are born
		2 Ferimini		they are born
		3 Feruntur		

Imperfectum | Ferebar, I was born, ut, Legebam.

Perf. | Latus sum vel fui I have been born, ut, Lectus sum vel fui

Plusquamper. Latus eram vel fueram, I had been born, ut, Lectus eram vel fueram

Futurum | Ferar, I shall be born, ut, Legar.

Imperativus

Præf. Sing.	Ferre,	}	Be thou born	Plur.	Feramur	Be we born	
	Fertor				Ferimini	Be ye born	
	Feratur	}	be he born		Ferimur	Let them be born	
	Fertor				Ferantur		

Potentialis

Præsens | Ferar, I may be born, ut, Legar

Imperfectum | Ferrer, I might be born, ut, Legerer

Perfectum | Latus sum | I might have been born, ut, Lectus sum vel fui

Plusquamper. | essem, | I might have had been born | ut, Lectus essem vel fuisssem

Futur. | Latus ero vel fuero, I may be born hereafter, ut, Lectus ero vel fuero

Infinitivus

Præsens, & Imperf. Ferri, To be born,

Perf. & Plusq. | Latum esse vel fuisse To have or had been born

Fut. — Latum ire, vel ferendum esse — To be born hereafter

Parti. Latus Born

cipia Ferendus To be born,

Indicativus.

Imperfectum | *Edebam, Jate, ut, Legēbam.*

Perfectum *Edi*, I have eaten, ut, *Legit*

Plusquamperf. | Ederam, I had eaten, ut, Legeram.

Futurum, | *Edam*, I shall eat, ut, *Legam.*

Imperativus.

Potentialis.

Præsens / *Edam*, I may eat, ut, *Legam*.

Imperfect. { *Ederem,* | I might eat, ut, | *Lagerem,*
 { *Essem* | | *Essem à Sum.*

Perfektum | Ederim, I might have eaten ut, Legerim.

Plusquamperf. | *Edißem, I might had eaten, ut, Legißem.*

Futurum | *Edero* I may eat hereafter, ut, *Legero*.

Infinitivus.

Præfens, & Imperf. | *Edere vel esse, Totate.*

Perfectum & Plusquamper. Edisse. To have or had eaten.

Futurum *Esurum* esse, **To** eat hereafter

Gerundia	{	Edendi,		Of eating,
		Edendo,		In eating,
		Edendum		To eat

Supina | *Esse*, | To eat
| *Esu*, | To be eaten

Participia | *Edens*, Eating
| *Esurus*, About to eat

Fio.

Indicativus.

Præsens | Fio, I am made : ut, Audio

Imperfectum, | Fiebam, I was made : ut, Audiebam.

Perfectum Factus | sum, I have been made, ut, Lectus | sum,
fui, fui,Plusquamperf. | Factus | eram, I had been made, ut, Lectus | eram,
fueram fueram,

Futurum, | Fiam, I shall be made : ut, Audiam.

Imperativus.

Præsens,	Sing.	Fi,	}	Be thou made.	Plur.	Fiamus,	}	Be we made.		
		Fito,				Fite,			}	Be ye made.
		Fiat,				Fitote,				
		Fito,				Fiant,				
						Fiu'ro,		Let them be made.		

Potentialis.

Præsens | Fiam, I may be made : ut, Audiam.

Imperfect. | Fierem. I might be made : ut, Audirem.

Perfectum | Factus { sim, I might have been made : | sim,
fuerim } ut, Lectus fuerimPlusquamper- | Factus { essem, I might had been made | essem
fectum } fuiſſem, } ut, Lectus fuiſſemFuturum | Factus | ero, I may be made hereafter | ero,
fuero } ut, Lectus fuero

Infinitivus.

Præsens, & Imperf. | Fieri, To be made :

Perfectum & Plus- | Factum | esse | To have or had been made
quamperf. } fuiſſeFuturum { Factum iri
Faciendum esse } To be made hereafter.Participia | Factus Made
Faciendus To be made

Eo. |

Indicativus.

Praesens	Plur. Sing.		I go thou goest he goeth
	1	2	
	1 <i>Eo,</i>	2 <i>Is,</i>	
	3 <i>Ir,</i>		
Imperfectum	Plur. Sing.		I did thou didst he did
	1	2	
	1 <i>Ibam</i>	2 <i>Ibas</i>	
	3 <i>Ibat</i>		
Perfectum	Plur. Sing.		I have thou hast he hath
	1	2	
	1 <i>Iam</i>	2 <i>Iast</i>	
	3 <i>Iat</i>		
Futurum	Plur. Sing.		I will thou wilt he will
	1	2	
	1 <i>Ebo</i>	2 <i>Ebis</i>	
	3 <i>Ebit</i>		
Futurum Imperfectum	Plur. Sing.		I shall thou shalt he shall
	1	2	
	1 <i>Ebam</i>	2 <i>Ebas</i>	
	3 <i>Ebat</i>		
Futurum Anterior	Plur. Sing.		I shall have thou shalt have he shall have
	1	2	
	1 <i>Ebam</i>	2 <i>Ebas</i>	
	3 <i>Ebat</i>		
Futurum Posterior	Plur. Sing.		I should thou shouldst he should
	1	2	
	1 <i>Ebam</i>	2 <i>Ebas</i>	
	3 <i>Ebat</i>		

Imperativus.

Imperativus.

Præsens		
	Sing.	Plur.
	<i>I, Ite, Ete, Ite,</i>	<i>Eamus, Ite, Eant, Eunto,</i>
	Go thou	Go ye.
	Let him go	Go they

Potentialis.

Præsens		
	Sing.	Plur.
	<i>1 Eam 2 Eas 3 Eas</i>	<i>1 Eamus 2 Eatis 3 Eant</i>
	I may thou maiest he may	we ye they
	} go	
	} may go	

Imperfectum		
	Sing.	Plur.
	<i>1 Irem 2 Ires 3 Ires</i>	<i>1 Iremus 2 Iretis 3 Irent</i>
	I might thou mightest he might	we might ye might they might
	} go	

Perfectum		
	Sing.	Plur.
	<i>1 Iverim, 2 Iveris, 3 Iveris,</i>	<i>1 Iverimus, 2 Iveritis, 3 Iverint</i>
	I might thou mightest he might	we might ye might they might
	} have gone	

Plusquamperfectum

Plusquamperfecti	Sing.	1	Ivissem,	I might	} have had gone
		2	Ivisset,	thou mightest	
		3	Ivisset,	he might	
	Plur.	1	Ivissemus,	we might	
		2	Ivissetis,	ye might	
		3	IvisSENT	they might	

Futurum	Sing.	1	Ivero,	I may	} go here after
		2	Iveris	thou mayest	
		3	Iverit	he may	
	Plur.	1	Iverimus	We may	
		2	Iveritis	ye may	
		3	Iverint	they may	

Infinitivus

Presens & Imperf. } Ire, { to go,

Perfectum & Plusquamperf. f. | Ivisse, To have or had gone

Futurum — Iturum esse — To go hereafter.

Gerundia { Eundi, Of going
Eundo, In going
Eundum, To go

Infinitiva { Itum, { To go
Itu, { To be gone

Participia | Gen. Eantis, &c. Going
Ituri, About to go.

Ad hunc modum etiam variantur Quae, nisi quod Imperativo Quae.

Chap. 36:

Of forming the Verb Sum.

The verb *Sum* hath a manner of declining which belongs onely to its self.

Verbum *Sum* peculiarem Conjugandi rationem sibi postulat.

Sum, es, fui, esse, futurus.

Sum, es, fui, esse, futurus.

The Indicative Mood.

The Potential Mood

Present tense.	Sing.	1	<i>Um, Possum</i>	I am	<i>Sim, Possim,</i>	I may
		2	<i>Es,</i>	thou art	<i>Sis,</i>	thou maiest
		3	<i>Est,</i>	he is	<i>Sit,</i>	he may
	Plur.	1	<i>Sumus,</i>	We are	<i>Simus,</i>	We may
		2	<i>Estis,</i>	ye are	<i>Sitis,</i>	ye may
		3	<i>Sunt,</i>	they are	<i>Sint,</i>	they may
Preterimperfect.	Sing.	1	<i>Erām, Poteram</i>	I was	<i>Essem, Possem</i>	I might
		2	<i>Eras,</i>	thou wast	<i>Esset,</i>	thou mightest
		3	<i>Erat,</i>	he was	<i>Esset,</i>	he might
	Plur.	1	<i>Eramus,</i>	We were	<i>Essemus</i>	We might
		2	<i>Eratis,</i>	ye were	<i>Essetis,</i>	ye might
		3	<i>Erant,</i>	they were	<i>Essent,</i>	they might
Preter tense.	Sing.	1	<i>Fui, Potui</i>	I have	<i>Fuerim, Potui</i>	I might
		2	<i>Fuisti,</i>	thou hast	<i>Fueris, (rim</i>	thou mightest
		3	<i>Fuit,</i>	he hath	<i>Fuerit,</i>	he might
	Plur.	1	<i>Fuimus</i>	We have	<i>Fuerimus,</i>	We might
		2	<i>Fuistis,</i>	ye have	<i>Fueritis,</i>	ye might
		3	<i>Fuerunt,</i>	they have	<i>Fuerint,</i>	they might
			<i>Fuere.</i>			

Preterplup.	Plur. Sing.	1 <i>Fueram, po-</i> <i>tueram</i>	I had	} been	1 <i>Fuissem, po-</i> <i>tuissem</i>	I might	} have had been
		2 <i>Fuisses,</i>	thou hadst		2 <i>Fuisses,</i>	thou mightst	
		3 <i>Fuisset</i>	he had		3 <i>Fuisset,</i>	he might	
		1 <i>Fueramus,</i>	we had		1 <i>Fuissemus</i>	we might	
		2 <i>Fueratis</i>	ye had		2 <i>Fuissetis</i>	ye might	
		3 <i>Fuerant</i>	they had	3 <i>Fuisent,</i>	they might		
Future.	Plur. Sing.	1 <i>Ero, Pote-</i>	I shall	} be	1 <i>Fuere, pote-</i>	I may	} be hereafter
		2 <i>Eris (ro,</i>	thou shalt		2 <i>Fueris, (ro</i>	thou shalt	
		3 <i>Erit,</i>	he shall		3 <i>Fuerit,</i>	he may	
		1 <i>Erimus</i>	we shall		1 <i>Fuerimus,</i>	we may	
		2 <i>Eritis,</i>	ye shall		2 <i>Fueritis,</i>	ye may	
		3 <i>Erant,</i>	they shall	3 <i>Fuerint,</i>	they may		

The Imperative Mood. The Infinitive Mood.

Present tense.	Plur.	Sing.	2	<i>Sis, es, esto</i>	Be thou	Present and Imperfect.	} <i>Esse</i> to be	} <i>Fuisse</i> to have been
			3	<i>Sit, esto,</i>	be he	Perfect, and		
			1	<i>Simus</i>	Be we	Prec. erplup.		
			2	<i>Sitis, este, esto</i>	be ye	} <i>Puturum esse,</i>	} to be here. after,	
			3	<i>Sint, sunt</i>	be they			

So likewise are its compounds declined, *Absum* to be absent, *Desum* to be wanting, *Presum* to be before, *Obsum* to be against; but *Prosum* to profit, takes *d* between two vowels, and *Possum* to be able, (of *potui* able, and *sum* to be) before a vowel and in stead of *f* keeps *t*, but changeth it into *s* before *s*.

Sic variantur & ejus compo-
sita, *Absum, idesum, præsūm,*
obsum; *prosum* recipit *d* inter
duas vocales, & *Possūm* (à
potis & sum) ante vocalem &
pro *f* retinet *t*, mutat autem
in *s* ante *f*.

Chap. 37.

Of Verbs Impersonals and Derivatives.

Impersonals be declined in the third person only.

Impersonals be declined throughout all Moods and tenses in the voice of the third person singular only.

- And they be either
1. Of the Active voice which end in *t; as, Decet* it becometh, *decebat, decuit, decuerat, decebit. Deceat, deceret, discuerit decere.*
 2. Of the passive voice, which end in *tur, as, Studetur* it is studied, *studebatur, studium est vel fuit, studium erat vel fuerat, studebitur, studeatur, studeveretur, studium sit vel fuerit, studium esset vel fuisset, studium erit vel fuerit, studeri.*

And they be of the 1. Active voice,

Impersonals want (for the most part) Gerunds, Supines, and Participles.

The Participles by which we express the Preter tense are put Substantively in the Neuter gender,

Impersonals of the active voice are these eleven, which (almost) alwayes remain Impersonals, *vi z. Decet* it becometh, *Libet* it listeth, *Licet* it is lawful, *Liquet* it is clear, whose Preter tense is not exstant) *Libet* it listeth, *Miseret* it pittiet, *Oportet* it behoveth, *Poenitet* it repenteth, *Piget* it irketh, *Pudet* it ashameth, and *Tædet* it irketh, which are also sometime found in the third person plural, as, *decent; oportent, pudent.*

To these are reckoned some personals (which are found absolutely in the third person without a nominative case, having an Infinitive mood presently after them). Such are,

In the first Conjugation, *delectat* it delighteth, *iuvat* it helpeth, *prestat* it is better, *restat* it remaineth, *stat* it is resolved on, *constat* it is manifest, *vacat*, I am at leisure

Cap. 37.

De Impersonalibus & Derivativis.

Impersonalia conjugantur in tertiâ personâ singulari per omnes modos & tempora.

Impersonalia conjugantur in tertiâ singulari.

- Sunt autem duplicia
1. Activæ vocis, quæ in *t* desinunt, ut *decebat, decuit, decuerat, decebit, deceat, deceret, decuerit, decuisset, decuerit, decere.*
 2. Passivæ vocis, quæ in *tur* desinunt, ut *Studetur, studebatur, studitum est vel fuit, studium erat vel fuerat, studebitur. Studeatur, studeretur, studitum sit vel fuerit, studitum esset vel fuisset, studitum erit vel fuerit, studeri.*

Impersonalia Gerundiis, & Supinis & Participiis plerunque carent.

Sunt autem
1. Activæ vocis.

Participia, per quæ Præterita circumloquimur, Substantivè ponuntur in neutro genere.

Impersonalia Activæ vocis sunt hæc undecim, Conjugationis secundæ, quæ semper (ferè) manent Impersonalia, viz. *Decet, libet, licet, liquet*, (cujus non existat præteritum) *lubet, miseret, oportet, pœnitet, piget, pudet, aedet*, quæ interdum etiam inveniuntur in tertiâ plurali, ut *decent, oportent, pudent*.

His accensentur quædam Impersonalia (quæ absolute inveniuntur in tertiâ persona absque nominativo, sequente mox Infinitivo.) Cujusmodi sunt,

In prima Conjugatione, *delectat, juvat, prestat, reat, stat, constat, vacat*.

In the Second, *apparet* it appeareth, *attinet* it belongeth, *debet* it ought, *patet* it is evident, *placet* it pleaseth, *solet* it is wont,

In the Third, *Accidit* it befalleth, *capit* it beginneth, *conducit* it belongeth to, *contingit* it hapneth, *desinit* it ceaseth, *incipit* it beginneth, *sufficit* it sufficeth

In the Fourth, *convenit* it agreeth, *evenit* it fall out, *expedit* it is expedient.

Among the irregular verbs, *est* it is, *interest* it concerneth, *prodest* it doth profit, *potest* it may, *fit* it is done, *refert* it concerneth.

Likewise verbs of an exempt power (i. e. that signify an action not of any humane power) come neare the nature of Impersonals. as *Fulgurat* it lightneth, *pluit* it raineth, *lucescit* it waxeth light.

Or
* The Passive voice.

2. Impersonals of the Passive voice have no certain number because they come of all verbs Actives, & some Neuters, as, *Legitur* it is read, *curitur* it is run.

Lastly no verbe (almost) is so far a personal, that it cannot take upon it the forme of an Impersonal: and some Impersonals turn again sometimes to Personals.

A verbe Impersonal may indifferently be taken to be of any person in both numbers, viz. by reason of oblique case adjoynd; as, *me oportet* I must, *te oportet* thou must, *illum oportet* hee must. *Oportet* we must, *oportet vos* ye must, *oportet illos* they must. *Statur à me* I stand, *statur à te* thou standest, *stat ab illo* he standeth, *statur à nobis* we stand, *stat vobis* ye stand, *statur ab illis* they stand.

Verbs Derivatives are

Derivative verbs are very often used for the Primitives, as *Timeſeo* for *timeo* to fear, *hisco* for *timeo* to gape.

There be five kinds of Derivative verbs.

1 Inchoatives.

1. Inchoatives, or Augmentatives, which signify beginning.

In Secunda, Apparet, attinet, debet, patet, placet, & c.

In Tertia, Accidit, caput, conducit, contingit, desinit, & c.

In Quarta, Convenit, evenit, expedit.

Inter Anomala, est, interest, prodest, potest, fit, refert.

Ad Impersonalium etiam naturam quodammodo cedunt verba exemptæ potestatis, viz. actionem significantia non humanæ potestatis, ut Fulgurat, pluit, & c.

2. Impersonalia Passivæ vocis certum numerum non habent, quia fiunt ab omnibus verbis Activis, & a. Passivæ vocis.

Denique nullum ferè verbum est tam personale, non idem impersonalis formam possit induere; que nonnulla Impersonalia renigrant aliquando impersonalia.

Verbum Impersonale, pro singulis personis utriusque numeri indifferenter accipi potest, viz. ex vi adiecti obliqui, ut,

Oportet	{	me		Oportet	{	nos
	{	te			{	vos
	{	il. um			{	illos
	{	a me			{	a nobis
Statut	{	a te		Statut	{	a vobis
	{	ab illo.			{	ab illis.

Derivativa sæpissime pro ipsis primitivis usurpantur, ut Timeo, pro timeo, hisco pro bio.

Derivatorum quinque sunt genera.

1. Inchoativa sive Augmentativa, quæ inchoatio- i. Inchoativa.

2. Frequen-
tatives.

beginning or augmentation, and end in *ſco* ; as, *Luceſco* to begin to be light, *Ardeſco* to be hotter & hotter, *2. Frequentatives*, which ſignifie a certain aſſiduity or endeavor, and end in *to*, *ſo*, *xo*, or *tor* ; as *Viſito* to viſit often, *Viſo* to go to ſee, *nexo* to follow often, *ſector* to endeavour to follow.

3. Deſidera-
tives.

3. *Deſideratives*, or *Meditatives*, which ſignifie a certain deſire or ſtrife, and end in *urio* ; as *Leſturio* to ſtrive to read, *canaturio* to deſire a ſupper.

4. Diminui-
tives.

4. *Diminutives*, which ſignifie the leſſening of a Primitive, and end in *to* or *ſſo* ; as *Sorbillo* to ſup often, *pitillo* to ſupple or ſup a little.

5. Imita-
tives.

5. *Imitatives*, which ſignifie imitation and end in *iſſo*, and in *or* ; as, *Pa'riſſo* to reſemble a father, *pinor* to play the ſox.

6. Appara-
tives.

6. Hitherto belong alſo *Apparatives*, which ſignifie a preparation to, and end in *co* ; as, *Vellico* to pluck, *fodico* to dig.

7. Denomi-
natives.

7. As alſo *Denominatives*, which come from Nouns and have no proper appellation ; as, *Lignor* to purchaſe wood, *ruſſicor* to live in the Countrey.

Chap. 38. Of a Participle.

A Participle taketh part of a Noun and part of a Verb.

PARTICIPLE is a part of Speech derived of a Verb, which taketh part of a Noun as well as of a Verb ; as, *Amanſ* loving.

There be four kinds of Participles.

1. Of the Preſent tenſe.

A Participle hath from a Noun, gender, caſe, and declenſion ; from a Verb tenſe and ſignification ; from both theſe number and figure.

According to tenſe there be four kinds of Participles.

1. A Participle of the preſent tenſe hath the ſignification of the Preſent tenſe, and endeth in *ans*, *ens*, and *tens* ; as, *Amanſ*, *docens*, *legens*, *audians*.

But

inchoationem aut augmentationem significant, & in
sco desinunt; ut *Lucesco*, *ardesco*.

2. *Frequentativa*, quæ assiduitatem quandam, vel
conarum significant, & in *to*, *so*, *xo*, aut *tor* desinunt;
ut, *V. fisco*, *viso*, *nexo*, *sistor*.

3. *Desiderativa* sive *Meditativa*, quæ appetentiam
quandam, aut studium significant, & desinunt in
urio; ut, *Lecturio*, *cœnatorio*.

4. *Diminutiva*, quæ diminutionem sui
significant; & desinunt in *lo*, vel *ssio*, ut, *Sorbillo*,
pitisso.

5. *Imitativa*, quæ imitationem significant, & desi
nunt in *isso* & *or*; ut, *Patrissio*, *vulpinar*.

6. Hoc pertinent & *Apparativa*, quæ apparatus
significant, & in *co* desinunt; ut, *Vellico*, *fodico*.

7. Item *Denominativa*, quæ à nominibus veniunt,
& propriam appellationem non habent; ut, *lignor*,
rusticor.

Cap. 38. De Participio.

ARTICULUM est pars Orationis à
Verbo derivata, tam à Nomine quam à
P Verbo partem capiens; ut, *Amans*.

Participium habet genera, casus, & de
clinationem à nomine; tempora & signi
ficationem à Verbo; numerum & figuram ab utroque.

Secundum tempus, species Participiorum sunt quæ
I. Participium Præsentis, habet significationem
præsentis & desinit in *ans*, *ens*, & *iens*; ut, *Amans*,
docens, *legens*, *Audiens*

Cæterum

But *iens* of *eo* is seldom read in the Nominative case, but *euntis*, &c. in the oblique cases. But its compounds have the Nominative case in *iens*, and the Genitive in *euntis*; except *Ambiens ambientis*.

2. Of the
Preter tense

2. A Participle of the *Preter tense* signifieth the time past, and endeth in *tus*, *sus*, *xus*, as *Amatus* loved, *visus* seen, *nexus* knit; and one in *um*, as *Mortuus* dead.

3. Of the
Future in
rus.

3. A Participle of the *future* in *Rus* hath the signification of the Future tense of its Infinitive Mood Active; as, *Amaturus* to love, *Docturus* about to teach.

4. Of the
Future in
dus.

4. A Participle of the *Future* in *Dus* hath the signification of the Future tense of the Infinitive Passive; as *Amandus* to be loved hereafter.

How Participle
s are
formed

The Participle of the Present tense is formed of the *Preterimperfect tense* by changing the last syllable into *ns*; as of *Amabam* *amans*.

The Participle of the Preter tense is formed of the later Supine by putting to *s*; as of *Amatu* *amatus*.

The Participle of the Future in *rus* is formed of the later Supine by putting to *rus*; as of *Amatu* *amaturus*.

The Participle of the Future in *dus* is formed of the Genitive case of the Participle of the Present tense by changing *tis* into *dus*; as of *Amantis*, *Amandus*.

These participles are derived of their verbs besides the common rule; *Pariturus* about to bring forth, *nasciturus* to be born, *soniturus* to sound, *argutur* to reprove, *moriturus* to die, *luciturus* that shall pay or suffer punishment, *nosciturus* to know, *osurus* to hate, *futurus* to be, *oriturus* to arise.

These be like participles, but are derived of Nouns, *Tunicatus*, coated, *togatus* gownned, *personatus* personated, *latus* masked, &c.

From

Cæterum *iens* ab eo raro legitur in Nominativo, sed *euntis*, &c. in obliquis. Composita verò Nominativum habent in *iens*, & Genitivum in *antis*, præter *Ambiens*, *Ambientis*.

2. Participium Præteriti, significat tempus præteritum, & definit in *tus*, *sus*, *xus*, ut, *Amatus*, *usus*, *nexus*, & unicum in *uus*, ut, *mortuus*.

3. Participium Futuri in *rus* habet significationem præsentis Infinitivi sui Activi; ut, *Amaturus*, *docturus*.

4. Participium Futuri in *Dus*, significationem habet Infinitivi sui Passivi; ut, *Amandus*.

Participium Præsens formatur ab imperfecto mutando ultimam syllabam in *ns*; ut, ab *Amabam*, *amans*.

De modo Participia formandi.

Participium Præteriti formatur à posteriore Supino addendo *s*; ut ab *Amatu*, *amatus*.

Participium Futuri in *rus* formatur à posteriori Supino, addendo *rus*; ut ab *Amatu*, *amaturus*.

Participium Futuri in *Dus* formatur à Genitivo participii præsentis mutando *tis* in *dus*; ut ab *Amentis* *amandus*.

Hæc participia præter Analogiam à verbis suis deducuntur; *Pariturus*, *nasciturus*, *soniturus*, *arguitur*, *moriturus*, *luciturus*, *nosciturus*, *osurus*, *fulurus*, *oriturus*,

Tunicatus, *togatus*, *personatus*, *larvatus*: &c. familia participii sunt, à nominibus verò deducuntur.

And of
what Verbs
they come.

From Actives and Neuters which have the Supines come two Participles, one of the present tense and the other of the Future in *rus*; as of *Amo*, *amans*, *amaturus*, of *Curro*, *currens*, *cursurus*.

But of some Neuters are found also Participles in *rus*, as *Dubitandus* to be doubted, *Vigilandus* to be watched, *cavendus* to be wanted, *dolendus* to be grieved. And of those which make their preterperfect tense in manner of Passives, is made also a participle of the preter tense; as *gaudeo* *gavissus* glad, *juro*, *juratus* sworn; so likewise from Impersonals in *tur*, as of *Aratur*, *aratus* plowed.

Of Verbs Passives come two participles, one of the preter tense, the other of the Future in *rus*; as of *Amor* cometh *Amatus*, *amandus*.

Of Verbs Deponents come three participles, viz. of the present tense, of the preter tense, and of the Future in *rus*, as of *Auxilior* to aid, cometh *auxilians*, *auxiliatus*, *auxiliaturus*.

To many also belongeth a participle in *rus*, especially to such as govern an Accusative case, as of *Loquor* to speak, cometh *Loquens*, *loquutus*, *loquutus*, *loquendus*.

Of Verbs Commune come four participles, as of *Largior* to bestow, or be bestowed cometh *Largiens*, *largiturus*, *largitus*, *largiendus*.

There be no participles extant from Verbs Impersonals, except *Pœnitens* repenting, *decens* becoming, *libens*, & *lubens* willing, *peritusus* irking, *pœnitendus* to be repented, *pudens* shaming, *pudendus* to be ashamed, *pigendus* to be irked.

Nouns Participials.

Participles are turned into nouns Participials;

1. When they govern another case than the verb doth govern; as, *Amans pecunie* loving of monie.

2. When they are compounded with words, which their

Ab Activis & Neutris quæ habent Supina, veniunt Et à quibus participia, unum Præsentis, alterum Futuri in bus verbis derivantur, ut ab *Amo, amans, amatus*, à *Curro, currens, cursus*.

A quibusdam verò neutris reperiuntur etiam participia in *du*, ut, *Dubitandus, vigilandus, cavendus, docendus*. Et ab iis, quæ præteritum faciunt more passivorum, formatur etiam participium præteriti; ut, *Gaudeo, gavisus, juro, juratus*; sic ab Impersonalibus in *tur*, ut ab *Aratur, aratus*.

A Passivis veniunt duo participia Præteriti & Futuri in *du*, ut ab *Amor, amatus, amandus*.

A Deponentibus veniunt tria participia, Præsentis, Præteriti, & Futuri in *rus*, ut ab *Auxilior, auxilians, auxiliatus, auxiliaturus*.

Multis accidit etiam participium in *du*, præcipuè of accusativum regentibus; ut à *Loquor, loquens, loquutus, loquutus, loquutus, loquendus*.

A Communibus veniunt quatuor participia, ut à *Largior, largiens, largiturus, largitus, largiendus*.

Ab Impersonalibus nulla exstant participia præteritens, *decens, libens, lubens, pertasus, panitendus, pudens, pudendus, pigendus*.

Participia degenerant in nomina Participialia.

1. Cum alium casum quàm suum verbum regunt; Nomina Participialia.
ut *Amans pecunia*.

2. Cum componuntur cum dictionibus, cum quibus

their verbs will not be compounded withal; as, *Infans* an infant, *Indotus* unskilfull.

3. When they be compared; as, *Amaus* loving, *Amantior* more loving, *Amantissimus* very loving.

When they signifie no time; as, *Sapiens*, wise, *Sponsa* a bride.

Participles of the present tense very often become Substantives, sometimes of the Masculine gender, as, *Orens* the *Oast*: sometimes of the Feminine; as *Consonans* a *Consonant*: sometimes of the Neuter; as, *Accidens* an *accident*: sometimes of the Common of three; as, *Appetens* greedy of.

Participles
of the Pre-
sent tense
be declined
like *Felix*;
& of other
tenses like
Bonus.

Participles of the present tense are declined with three Articles; as, *Hic, hec & hoc Amaus*, like *Felix*.

Participles of other tenses are declined with three terminations; as *Amatus, ta, tum; Amatus, ra, rum; Amandus, da, dum*, like *Bonus*.

Chap: 39: Of an Adverbe.

V.
An Adverb
explaineth
a Verb.

AN ADVERBE is a part of Speech added to other words (but especially to the Verb) to declare and perfect their sense and signification.

The Significations of Adverbs are many, whose variety must be gathered out of the Circumstances of the Verbs.

According

bus ipsorum verba componi non possunt, ut, *Infans*, *indoctus*.

3. Cùm comparantur; ut, *Amaus*, *amantior*, *amantissimus*.

4. Cùm tempus non significant; ut, *Sapiens*, *sponsa*.

Participia præsentis temporis non rarò sunt Substantiva, modò, masculini generis; ut, *Oriens*: modò fœminini; ut *Consonans*: modò neutrius; ut, *Accidens*: modò communis; ut, *Appetens*.

Participia præsentis variantur tribus Articulis; ut, *hic hæc*, & *hoc Amans*, sicut *Felix*.

Participia reliquorum temporum variantur tribus terminationibus; *Amatus*, *ta*, *tum*, *Amaturus*, *ra*, *rum*; *Amandus*, *da*, *dum*, sicut *Bonus*.

Participia
Præsentis
variantur
sicut *Felix*;
Reliquos
rum verò
temporum,
sicut *Bonus*,

Cap. 39. De Adverbio.

ADVERBIUM est pars Orationis adjecta aliis vocibus (sed præcipuè Verbis) ad sensum & significationem earum perficiendum & explanandum.

Significationes Adverbiorum sunt multæ, quarum varietas ex Verborum circumstantiis colligenda est.

V.
Adverbi
um expla-
nat Ver-
bum.

Secundum

There be-
33 kinds
of Adverbs

According to their signification some are called Adverbs of

- (In a Place, as, *Hic* here, *Illic* there.
- Place | To a place; as, *Huc* hither. *Illuc* thither
and | From a place, as, *Hinc* hence, *Illinc*
sig- | thence.
nific | By a place, as, *Hac* this way, *Illic*
| that way.
- Time, as, *Nunc* now, *tunc* then, *hodie* to day, *usque*
untill or as far as, is both of time and Place.
- Number, as, *Semel* once, *bis* twice, *ter* thrice,
iterum again.
- Order; as *Præ* after that, *deniq;* lastly, *demum*
lastly.
- Asking, as, *Cur* why, *quare* wherefore, *unde*
whence.
- Calling, as, *Hæus* ho, & *eho* so ho.
- Affirming, as, *Certè* truly, *na* truly, *profe sèd*
truly, *scilicet* yes.
- Denying, as, *Non* not, *haud* not, *minimè* no.
- Swearing, as, *Pol.* by *Apollo*, *edipol* *Apollo's*
temple, *hercle* by *Hercules*.
- Exhorting, as, *Agè* go to, *sodes* if you dare, *saltim*
if you will.
- Granting, as, *Licet* it may be so, *esto* be it so,
sit sanè be it indeed so.
- Forbidding, as, *Nè* not, *non* not.
- Flattering, as, *amabè* prettily.
- Wishing, as, *Vtinam* would to God, & *si*, & that
- Gathering together, as, *Simul* together, *unà* in
one, *pariter* alike.
- Parting as, *Seorsim* severally, *gregatim* by fl cks,
bisariam two wayes.
- Choosing as, *Potius* rather, *imò* yea rather,
satiùs better
- Excluding as. *Tantum* only, *modò* only, *solum*
onely.
- Including or Denying onely as. *Non modò* not
only, *non solum* not only, *nedum* much less.

Diver-

Species Ad-
verborum
sunt 33.

Loci { In Loco ; ut, *Hic, illic.*
Ad Locum ; ut, *Huc, illuc.*
câque { A Loco ; ut, *Hinc, illinc.*
Per Locum ; ut, *Hac, illac.*

Temporis ; ut, *Nunc, tunc, hodie ; usq ;* Tempo-
ris & Loci est.

Numeri ; ut, *Semel, bis, ter, iterum.*

Ordinis ; ut, *Indè, denique, demum.*

Interrogandi ; ut, *Cur ? quare ? unde ?*

Vocandi ; ut, *Heus, o eho.*

Affirmandi ; ut, *Certè, nã, profectò, scilicet.*

Negandi ; ut, *Non, haud, minimè.*

Jurandi ; ut, *Pol, adipol, hercle.*

Hortandi ; ut, *Agè, sodes, sùltis.*

Concedendi ; ut, *Licet, esô, sit-sanè.*

Prohibendi ; ut, *Nè, non.*

Adulandi ; ut, *Amabò.*

Oprandi ; ut, *Utinam, ô si.*

Congregandi ; ut, *Simul, nnà, pariter.*

Segregandi ; ut, *Seorsim, gregatim, bifariam.*

Eligendi ; ut, *Potius, imò, satius.*

Excludendi ; ut, *Tantum, modò, solùm.*

Includendi, sive negatæ solitudinis ; ut, *Non mo-
dò, non solùm, nedum.*

N

Diver-

According to their signification Some are called Adverbs of

✓ Diverſitie; as, *Aliter* otherwiſe, *ſecus* otherwiſe
Propinquitie or Nearneſs; as, *obviàm* meeting
preſto at hand.

Intending or Increasing; as, *Valde* very, *nim*
to much, *ſunditus* utterly, *omnino* altogethe
Remitting or diminiſhing; as, *Vix* ſcarce, *eg*
hardly, *paulatim* by little & little; *pedetent*
foot by foot.

Reſtraining; as, *Quatenus* as far as, *quoad*
much as concerneth, *in quantum* in as much
Of a thing not finiſhed; as, *Penè* almoſt, *ſen*
in a manner.

Explaining; as, *Putà* ſuppoſe, *uſpote* as, *nimir*
to wit, *ideſt* that is, *videlicet* to wit, *qu*
dicat as if one ſhould ſay.

Doubling; as, *Forſan* perhaps, *forſitan* perha
ſo, *forſaſſis* if it be ſo.

Chance; as, *Fortè* as it falls out, *fortuito*
chance, *fortè fortuna* by fortune.

Shewing; as, *En lo*, *ecce* behold, *ſic* thus, *ità*
Likeneſs; as, *Sic lo*, *ſicut* as, *ceu* as, *tanquam*
ità as.

Quantitie; as, *Parùm* a little, *minimè* very lit
ſatis enough, *abundè* in abundance.

Qualitie; as, *Bene* well, *malè* ill, and ſuch as
in e, and come of Adjectives of three termi
tions; as *Doctè* learnedly, *Pulcrè* bravelly;
ſo ſuch as end in er, and come of Adjective
three Articles; as, *graviter* heavily, *ſelic*
happily.

Comparing, as, *Tam* as well, *quàm* as, *m*
leſs, *æque* as well as, *magis* atque rather th

Adverbs derived of Adjectives are compared
Adjectives, and differ onely in termination, as *do*
ctè learnedly, *doctius* more learnedly, *doctiſſimè*
learnedly, *fortiter* ſtrongly, *fortius* more ſtron
fortiſſimè moſt ſtrongly.

Diversitatis; ut, *Aliter, secus.*

Propinquitatis; ut, *Obviam, præstò.*

Intendendi; ut, *Valdè, nimis, funditus, omnino.*

Remittendi; ut, *Vix, egrè, paulatim, pedetentim.*

Restringendi; ut, *Quatenus, quoad, inquantum.*

Rei non peractæ; ut, *Penè, ferme.*

Explanandi; ut, *Putà, utpote, nimirum, i. e. (id est) viz. (videlicet) q. d. (quasi dicat.)*

Dubitandi; ut, *Forsan, forstian, fortassis.*

Eventus; ut, *Fortè, fortuitò, forte, fortunà.*

Demonstrandi; ut, *En, ecce, sic, id.*

Similitudinis; *Sic, sicut, ceu, tanquam, velut.*

Quantitatis; ut, *Parum, minimè, satis, abundè.*

Qualitatis; ut, *Bene, male, & quæ in e desinunt;*
ab Abjektivis trium terminationum; ut, *Docte,*
pulcre; item in *er* ab Adjectivis trium Arti-
culorum; ut, *Graviter, feliciter.*

Comparandi; ut, *Tam, quam, minùs, æque, magis atque.*

Adverbia ab Adjectivis derivata more Adjectivorum comparantur; sed solâ terminatione differunt;
ut *doctè, doctius, doctissimè; fortiter, fortius, fortissi-*

Likewise *Bene* well, *melius* better, *optime* very well; *Sape* often, *sapientius* more often, *sapissime* very often; *Nuper* lately, *nuperrime* very lately, with many others.

Sometimes Adjectives of the Neuter Gender take upon them the nature of Adverbs, in imitation of the Greeks; as, *Recens* for *recenter* newly; *Torvum* for *torve* frowningly.

Chap. 40. Of a Conjunction.

VII.
A Conjunction conjoyneth words and sentences.

Its kinds according to signification are 17.

CONJUNCTION is a part of Speech which fitly joyneth words and sentences together.

According to their signification some be

Copulatives, which couple both the sense and the words; as, *Et* and, *que* and, *nec* nor.

Suspensives, which stay the speech, or make another thing to be expected; as, *Cum* both, *ut* both, *&* both, *vel* either, *nec* neither, being set two together.

Disjunctives, which sever the sense and couple the words; as, *Aut* or, *sive* or, *vel* or.

Causals, which give the reason of the former sentence; as, *Nam* for, *enim* for, *quia* because.

Discretives, which make a difference; as, *Sed* but, *vero* but, *at* but.

Conditionals, which imply a condition; as, *Si* if, *sin* but if, *nisi* except, *dum* so that.

Exceptives, which except some thing; as, *Nisi* unless, *nisi* except, *quin* but, *alioquin* otherwile.

Interrogatives, which ask a question; as, *Num* whether, *an* whether, *utrum* whether.

Dubitives, which propound a doubt; as, *An* whether or no, *num* whether or no, *numquam* what.

Rationals, or Illatives, which infer the conclusion.

Similiter & Bene, melius, optime; sepe, sapius, sapissime; nuper, nuperrime, cum paucis aliis.

Aliquando Neutra Adjectiva induunt formam Adverbiorum, ad Græcorum imitationem; ut, *Recens* pro *recenter*; *Torvum* pro *torvé*.

Cap. 40. De Conjunctiōe.

CONJUNCTIO est pars Orationis, quæ voces & sententias aptè connectit.

VII.

Conjunctio
voces &
sententias
conjungit.

Species ejus
quoad signifi-
cationem sunt
17.

Copulativæ, quæ & sensum & verba copulant; ut, *Et, que, nec*.

Suspensivæ, quæ orationem suspendunt; sive aliud expectari faciunt; ut, *Cum, tum, & vel, nec, geminatæ*.

Disjunctivæ, quæ sensum disjungunt, verba vero copulant; ut, *Aut, sive, vel*.

Causales, quæ causam reddunt superioris sententiæ; ut, *Nam, enim, quia*.

Discretivæ, quæ discretionem faciunt; ut, *Sed, verò, at, atq.*

Conditionales, quæ conditionem implicant; ut, *Si, sin, nisi, dum*.

Exceptivæ, quæ aliquid extipiunt; ut, *Non, nisi, quin, alioquin*.

Interrogativæ, quæ interrogant; ut, *Nè, an, num*.

Dubitativæ, quæ dubitant; ut, *An, num, numquid*.

Rationales, sive Illativæ, quæ ex ratione proposita

According to their signification some be

V sion from the reason set down; as, *Ergò* therefore, *idè* therefore, *itaque* therefore.

Continuatives, which continue the members of speech in order; as, *Deinde* after, *porro* further, *proinde* thereupon, *insuper* moreover.

Concessives or Adversatives, which grant some what which the following sentence may oppose; as, *Etsi* although *quanquam* although *licet* though, *tamen* although, *quavis* although.

Redditives to the same, which being referred to their Concessives, make a sentence diverse from the former; as, *tamen* yet, *attamen* but yet, *verum* but, *veruntamen* yet notwithstanding.

Electives, which shew the former member of a sentence to be preferred; as, *Quàm* as, *ac* and, *atque* as.

Diminutives, which lessen the sense; as, *saltem* at least, *vel* even.

Expletives or Completives, which fill up a sentence for ornaments sake; as, *Quidem* indeed, *autem* and, *scilicet* forsooth, *enimvero* truly.

Conjunctions adverbial, or Adverbs conjunctive, which with a very little difference are discerned from Adverbs; as, *Quando* when, or see that, *proinde* therefore or then.

According to their Order some be

Prepositives, which are set in the beginning of sentences; as, *Nam* for, *quare* wherefore, *at* Subjunctives, or Postpositives, which have the second, third, or fourth place in a clause; as, *idem* indeed, *quoq;* also, *verò* indeed, *enim* Commons, which may indifferently be set before or after; as, *Ergò* therefore, *igitur* therefore, *itaque* therefore, *sed* but.

According to its Order four.

Conjunctionum alia sunt Quatuor potestatem hanc significationem Quatuor ordine sunt

posita conclusionem inferunt, ut, *Ergò, ideo, itaque.*

Continuativa, quæ membra orationis ordine continuant; ut, *Deinde, porro, proinde, insuper.*

Concessivæ, sive Adversativæ, quæ aliquid concedunt, cui posterior sententia adversetur, ut, *Et si, quanquam, licet, tamen, si, quamvis.*

Redditivæ earundem, quæ ad Concessivas relaxant diversam sententiam superiori reddunt, ut, *Tamen, attamen, veruntamen.*

Electivæ, quæ ostendunt præcedens membrum sententiæ præferri, ut *Quam, ac, atque.*

Diminutivæ, quæ diminuunt sensum, ut, *Saltem, vel.*

Expletivæ, vel Completivæ, quæ ornatu gratiæ sententiam complent, ut, *Quidem, autem, scilicet, enim, vero.*

Conjunctiones adverbiales, vel adverbia conjunctiva, quæ tenui discrimine ab adverbis discernuntur, ut, *Quando, proinde.*

Præpositivæ, quæ in sententiarum exordio ponuntur, ut, *Nam, quare, at.*

Subjunctivæ, sive Postpositivæ, quæ secundum, tertium, vel quartum locum in clausula occupant, ut, *Quidem, quoque, verò, enim.*

Communes, quæ indifferenter & præponi & postponi possunt, ut *Ergò, igitur, itaque, sed.*

* Encliticals, or Inclinatives, which are annexed to the former word, and in line or turn back their accent into the last syllable of it; as, *Que, nē, ve, dum, sis, nam.*

Chap. 41. Of a Preposition.

VII.
A Preposition is set before other words. There bee 54 Prepositions, some of which are
1. Separable.

A PREPOSITION is a part of Speech which is set before other words,

either { Apposition; as, *Ad scholam* to the school.
in { Composition; as, *Advenio* to come to.

Prepositions are either { 1. Separable.
Or,
2. Inseparable.

Separable Prepositions are used both in and out of Composition; of whose regiment we shall treat,
LIB. 3. CAP. 8.

For thirty one of these govern an Accusative case, viz.

<i>Ad</i> to	<i>Erga</i> towards	<i>Præter</i> besides
<i>Apud</i> at	<i>Extra</i> without	<i>Propter</i> because of
<i>Adversus</i> } against	<i>Infra</i> below	<i>Secundum</i> according to
<i>Adversum</i> }	<i>Inter</i> between	<i>Corde</i> by
<i>Ante</i> before	<i>Intra</i> within	<i>Supra</i> above
<i>Cis</i> } on this side.	<i>Juxta</i> by	<i>Trans</i> beyond
<i>Citra</i> }	<i>Ob</i> for	<i>Versus</i> to=
<i>Circum</i> }	<i>Penes</i> in the power	wards
<i>Circa</i> } about	<i>Per</i> by	<i>Ultra</i> beyond
<i>Circiter</i> }	<i>Pone</i> behind	
<i>Contra</i> against	<i>Post</i> after	

Which some have comprised in these foure Verses.

*Ad, penes, adversus, cis, citra, circiter, extra,
Erga, apud, ante, secus, trans, supra, versus, ob, infra,
ultra,*

* Encliticæ sive Inclinativæ, quæ affixæ præcedenti voci, accentum suum in ejus ultimam syllabam inclinant; ut, *Que, nè, ve, dum, sis, nam.*

Cap. 41. De Præpositione.

PRÆPOSITIO est pars Orationis quæ aliis vocibus præponitur,

vel in { Appositione; ut, *Ad Scholam.*
Compositione; ut, *Advenio.*

Præpositiones sunt vel { 1. Separabiles.
Sive
2. Inseparabiles.

1. Separabiles sunt, quæ & in & extra Compositionem usurpantur; de quarum regimine dicemus, LIB. 3. CAP. 8.

Ex his enim triginta una Accusativum regunt, viz.

<i>Ad</i>	<i>Erga</i>	<i>Præter</i>
<i>Apud</i>	<i>Extra</i>	<i>Prope</i>
{ <i>Adversus</i>	<i>Infra</i>	<i>Propter</i>
{ <i>Adversum</i>	<i>Inter</i>	<i>Secundum</i>
<i>Ante</i>	<i>Intra</i>	<i>Secus</i>
<i>Cis</i>	<i>Juxta</i>	<i>Supra</i>
<i>Citra</i>	<i>Ob</i>	<i>Trans</i>
<i>Circum</i>	<i>Penès</i>	<i>Versus</i>
<i>Circa</i>	<i>Per</i>	<i>Ultra</i>
<i>Circiter</i>	<i>Ponè</i>	
<i>Contra</i>	<i>Post</i>	

Quas aliqui quatuor versibus complectuntur.

Ad, penès, adversus, cis, citra, circiter, extra, Erga, apud, ante, secus, trans, supra, versus, ob, infra, Ultra,

VII.

Præpositio aliis vocibus præponitur.

Præpositiones sunt 34 Quarum aliæ sunt 1. Separabiles.

ultra, post, *præter*, *propter*, *prope*, *ponè*, *secundum*
Per, *circum*, *circa*, *contra*, *juxta*, *inter*, & *intra*.

And twelve govern an Ablative case, viz. *A*, *ab*, *abs* from, *absque* without, *coram* before, *cum* with, *de* *ex* of, *præ* before, *pro* for, *sine* without.

Five govern both these cases; viz. *clam* privily, *in* in, *sub* & *subter* under, *super* above; onely *tenu* up to, will have an Ablative case singular, and Genitive plural.

2. Others
 Inseparable

Inseparable Prepositions are such as are never found without Composition, viz.

<i>Am</i>	}	<i>Ambio</i> to go about.
<i>Di</i>	}	<i>Diduco</i> to bring unto sundry parts.
<i>Dis</i>	}	<i>Distrabo</i> to distract.
<i>Re</i>	> as <	<i>Recipio</i> , to receive.
<i>Se</i>	}	<i>Sepono</i> , to set aside.
<i>Con</i>	}	<i>Convivo</i> to live together.
<i>Ve</i>	}	<i>Vesanus</i> outrageous.

The signification of Prepositions is not so much to be learned by rules, as by daily use of reading and writing.

Some Prepositions are wont to be set after their cases; viz. *Cum* as, *quibuscum* with whom, *tenu* as up to the privy parts; *versus*, as, *Londinum* towards London; to which *usque* may be added, as *ad Orientem usque*, as far as the East.

Prepositions when they be put without a case become Adverbs; as, *Coram* laudare, *clam* vituperare, to praise one in presence, and dispraise privily.

Some Adverbs, Conjunctions, and Prepositions, according to their several significations, are judged sometimes Prepositions, sometimes Adverbs, and sometimes Conjunctions.

Some Prepositions do make Adjectives of the Comparative and Superlative degree, as in chap. 17. l. 2.

CHAP

ultra, post, præter, propter, prope, pone, secundum, Per, circum, circa, contra, juxta, inter, & intra.
 Duodecim verò regunt Ablativum; *A, ab, abs, absque, coram, cum, de, è, ex, præ, pro, sine.*

Quinque serviunt utrique casui, *clām, in, sub; subter, super;* unicum *tenuis* gaudet Ablativo singulari, & Genitivo plurali.

2. *Inseparabiles* sunt, quæ nunquam extra compositionem inveniuntur.

2. *Alia Inseparabiles.*

<i>Am,</i>	} ut, <	<i>Ambig.</i>
<i>Di,</i>		<i>Diduco.</i>
<i>is,</i>		<i>Disrabo.</i>
<i>Re,</i>		<i>Recipio.</i>
<i>Se,</i>		<i>Sepono.</i>
<i>Con,</i>		<i>Convivo.</i>
<i>Ve,</i>	}	<i>Vesanus.</i>

Præpositionum significatio non tam regulis, quàm assiduo legendi ac scribendi usu discenda est.

Quædam Præpositiones suis casibus postponi solent; viz. *Cum*, ut *quibuscum*; *tenuis*, ut *pube tenuis*; *versus*, ut *Londinum versus*; quibus addi potest *usque*, ut *ad Orientem usque*.

Præpositiones cum sine casu ponuntur sunt Adverbia; ut, *Coram laudare, & clām vituperare*.

Quædam Adverbiorum, Conjunctionum, & Præpositionum, pro variâ eorum significatione, modò Adverbia, modò Conjunctiones, modo Præpositiones censerì possunt.

Quædam Præpositiones procreant Adjectiva Comparativi & Superlativi gradus, ut videt̃ est, Cap. 17. Lib. 2,

CAP.

Chap. 42. Of an Interjection.

AN *Interjection* is a part of Speech interposed among other, which signifieth a passion of the minde suddenly breaking forth.

There be so many Interjections then, as there are motions of a troubled minde, viz. of

Rejoycing; as, *Evax* hey brave, *vah* hom, *io* ô fine.

Sorrowing; as, *Hem* alas, *hei*, *hoi* welladay, *ô* oh ah.

Dreading; as, *Atat* out alas.

Marvelling; as, *Pape* O strange.

Disdaining; as, *Hem* oh. *vah* away with it.

Shunning; as, *Apag* avant, *apagite* be gon.

Calling; as, *Eho* ho, *ho*, *io* so ho.

Praising; as, *Euge* well don, *eja* aha.

Scorning; as, *Hui* whoa.

Exclaiming; as, *Proh* ô.

Curfing; as, *Malum* with a mischief, *ve* *malum*.
wo with a mischief.

Disliking; as, *Phy*, out upon it.

Threatning; as, *Ve*. wo.

Laughing; as, *Ha*, *ha*, *he*.

Silence; as, *Au'st*, whoosht, *Pax* peace.

Sometimes Nouns, Verbs, and other words are put into a Speech in manner of Interjections; as, *infandum* not to bee spoken, *Amabè* of all loves, or as thou lovest me, *Malum* with a mischief, *mirabile dicta* wonderful to bee said. &c,

Cap. 43. De Interjectione.

Interjectio est pars Orationis quæ subito prorumpentem animi affectum demonstrat.

Tot igitur sunt Interjectiones, quot sunt animi perturbati morus, viz.

Exultantis ; ut, *Evax, vah, io.*

Dolentis ; ut, *Hæu, hai, hei, oh, ah.*

Timentis ; ut, *Atat.*

Admirantis ; ut, *Papæ.*

Indignantis ; ut, *Hem, vah.*

Vitantis ; ut, *Apagæ, apagite.*

Vocantis ; ut, *Eho, ho, io.*

Laudantis ; ut, *Euge, eja.*

Deridentis ; ut, *Hui.*

Exclamantis ; ut, *Oh, proh.*

Imprecantis ; ut, *Malum, ve malum.*

Castidientis ; ut, *Phy.*

Minantis ; ut, *Væ.*

Ridentis ; ut, *Ha, he, he.*

Silentium orationi injungentis ; ut, *Au, 'st, pax.*

Aliquando Nomina, Verba, & aliz voces interjiciuntur, more Interjectionum ; ut, *Insandum, amabò, malum, mirabile dictu, &c.*



LIB. III.

OF SYNTAX.

Syntax
teacheth the
due joyning
of words
By rules,

SYNTAX, or Construction, is the third part of Grammar, which teacheth the due joyning of words together.

And that is the due joyning of words which the most approved among the antients have used both in writing and speaking.

There be two parts of Syntax,	{	Concordance,	CHAP.
		& Government,	CHAP.

Chap. I. Of Concordance.

I. Of Concordance.

Concordance is the construction of words according to their agreement in some of the things they belong unto them.

There be three Concords	{	The first between the Nominative case and the Verb. Sect. I.
		The second between the Substantive and the Adjective. Sect. II.
		The third between the Antecedent and the Relative. Sect. III:
To which may be added the rules	{	Of the case of the Relative. Sect. IV. Of the word that asketh, and the word that answereth to the question. Sect. V.

Sect. I. T

L I B. III.

DE SYNTAXI.

SYNTAXIS, sive constructio, est tertia Syntaxis
pars Grammatices, quæ debitam partium Ora- debitam
tionis inter se Compositionem docet. partium
Ea vero est debita Compositio, quâ veterum pro- Orationis
batissimi, tum in scribendo, tum in loquendo sunt Compositi-
onem docet
Per Regu-
las.

Syntaxeos partes } *Concordantia.* CAP. I.
duæ sunt, &
} *Regimen.* CAP. 2.

Cap. I. De Concordantiâ

Concordantiâ est dictionum constructio secundum
earum in accidentibus quibusdam convenien- 1. Concor-
tiam. dantiâ

Sunt autem Con- } *Prima* inter Nominativum &
cordantiæ tres } *Verbum.* Sect. I.
} *Secunda* inter Substantivum &
} *Adjectivum.* Sect. II.
} *Tertia* inter Antecedens & Re-
} *lativum.* Sect. III.

Quibus adjun- } *De casu Relativi.* Sect. IV.
gi possunt } *De Interrogativo & Redditi-*
Regulæ } *vo.* Sect. V.

Sect. I. Regn.

§. I. The Rule of the first Concord.

A Verbe Personal agreeth with its Nominative case in Number and Person ; as,

The Master readeth, and ye neglect.

Whilst the cat slepeth ; the Mice dance.

1. *Obs.* The Nominative case of the first or second person is very seldome set down ; as,

Without God (we) can do nothing.

1. *Exc.* Unless it be for differencing sake, i. e. when we signifie severall employments ; as,

Thou playest, I piy my book.

2. *Exc.* Or for Emphasis sake, i. e. when we mean more than we speak expressly ; as,

Thou art our Patron, thou art our Father, if thou forsakest us, we are undone.

2. *Obs.* The Verbe Substantive is very often understood ; as, *There (is) no safety in war.*

Such a Master such a man.

3. *Obs.* Oft-times other Verbs (also) are understood as, (**To pick out*) *the Raven's eies.*

The sow († will return to the mire.

§. II. The Rule of the second Concord.

THe Adjective agreeth with its Substantive in case, gender, and number ; as

True faith is a rare bird in the earth, and very like to a black Swan.

An basty bitch bringeth forth blinde whelps.

1. *Obs.* An Adjective put like a Substantive do supply the place of a Substantive ; as,

A learned poor man is better than an unlearned rich man.

All evil things are to be avoided.

A good man is a common good.

§. I. Regula primæ Concordantiæ.

I.

Verbum Personale coheret cum Nominativo
Numero & personâ; ut,

Præceptor legit, vos verò negligitis.

Dum felis dormit, saltant mures.

Obj. Nominativus primæ vel secundæ personæ rarissimè exprimitur; ut,

Absque Deo nihil possumus.

Exc. Nisi causâ discretionis viz. cum diversa studia significamus.

Tu ludis, ego studeo.

Exc. Aut Emphasis gratiâ; viz. cum plus significamus, quàm expresse dicimus; ut,

Tu es patronus, tu pater; si deseris tu, perimus.

Obs. Verbum Substantivum sæpissime subauditur,
ut. *Nulla salus bello.* (* est)

Qualis Dominus, talis Servus.

Obs. Sæpe reticentur & alia verba; ut,

Cornici oculum. (* configere)

Sus ad lutum. († redibit)

§. II. Regula secundæ Concordantiæ.

II.

Adjectivum cum Substantivo, genere, numero
& casu consentit; ut,

Rara avis in terris, nigroque simillima cygno.

Vera fides.

Canis festinans cæcos parit catulos.

Obs. Adjectivum Substantivè positum supplet locum Substantivi; ut,

Dactus pauper indocto divite præstantior est.

Omnia mala sunt fugienda.

Vir bonus est commune bonum.

O

§. III.

III.

§. III. The Rule of the third Concord.

III.
3. The third

THE Relative (*qui*) agreeth with its Antecedent in gender, number, and person; as,

The man is wise that speaketh few words,

The first hour that gave life, took from it.

The burden is made light, which is well borne.

N. B. The *Antecedent* (most commonly) is a word that goeth before the Relative, and is rehearsed again of the Relative.

The Nominative case, the Substantive, and the Antecedent be called *Suppositives*, because in Concordance they be as it were put under the Verb, Adjective, and Relative (which also by some are called *Appositives*) and bear them up: hence

1. *Obs.* In speeches which belong onely to men the Supposite is often understood; as,

Thus (men) say commonly.

Good (boyes) learn diligently.

A good (woman) come of good parents.

(He) that maketh too much hast, dispatcheth too late.

(Things) which hurt us reach us.

2. *Obs.* Sometimes a whole clause, a member of sentence, a Verb of the Infinitive mood, an Adverb with a Genitive case, or a word put for it self, do supply the place of suppositives; as,

To have faithfully learned the Liberal Arts, do qualify mens manners.

To rise early is very wholesome.

Part of the Ensigns are burnt.

I came in season, which is the chiefest of all things.

Farewell being often said, I again spake many words.

§. III. Regula tertiæ Concordantiæ.

Elativum (*qui*) cum Antecedente concordat genere, numero, & personâ; ut,
Vir sapit, qui pauca loquitur.

III.
 3. Tertiæ.

Prima, quæ vitam dedit, hora carpsit.
Leve sit, quod bene ferrur onus.

N. B. *Antecedens* (ferè) est dictio quæ Relativum antecedit & à Relativo refertur.

Nominativus, Substantivum, & Antecedens dicuntur *Supposita*, quia Verbo, Adjectivo & Relativo (quæ à quibusdam *Apposita* vocantur) in Concordantiâ quasi supponuntur atque ea sustentant:

Obs. In orationibus quæ ad homines tantum pertinent *Suppositum* sæpe subauditur; ut,
sic vulgò dicunt.

boni discunt seduli.

bona bonis prognata.

Qui nimium properat, seriùs absolvit.

Quæ nocent, docent.

Obs. Aliquando oratio, membrum orationis, cum Infiniti modi, Adverbium cum Genitivo, aut pro se posita, suppleant locum *Suppositorum*; ut,
ingenuas didicisse fideliter artes emollit mores.

in luculo surgere saluberrimum est.

partim signorum sunt combusta.

in tempore veni, quod omnium rerum est primum.

sæpe vale dicto, rursus sum multa loquutus.

3. *Obs.* The Verb, Adjective or Relative, sometimes agree with the Supposite in sense rather than word as,

*A company rush. Both are deluded, or mocked.
An armed Nation fight.*

Where is that rogue that hath undone me?

I also am undone too, which is dearer to me.

4. *Obs.* A Verb, Adjective or Relative set between two suppositives of diverse numbers or genders, may agree with either of them; as,

The falling out of lovers is the renewing of love.

Poverty seemeth a great burthen.

A living creature full of reason, whom we call a man.

A bird which is called a sparrow.

The City Lutetia which we call Paris.

5. *Obs.* Many Suppositives Singular, having a Conjunction Copulative between them, will have a Verb, Adjective, or Relative plural, and these will agree with the more worthy Supposite; as,

I and thou, who ply our books diligently, are in debt.

Thou and he, who sit so negligent, take heed you be not whipt.

6. *Obs.* The Relative and the Antecedent agree so in case, if they be joynd to the same Verb; as, *what City I build, it is yours.*

That what Comedies he made might please the people.

N^o. B. The worthiness of a Supposite is considered according to its

1. Gender

or,

2. Person

1. The First Person is more worthy than the Second or Third, and the Second more worthy than the Third.

2. The Masculine Gender is more worthy than the Feminine, or Neuter; and the Feminine is more worthy than the Neuter.

Excep. But in things not apparent to have life the Neuter Gender is more worthy; as,

Obs. Verbum, Adjectivum aut Relativum quan-
ue cum Supposito sensu magis quàm voce conve-
ut,

Turba ruunt; Uterque deluduntur.

Gens armati pugnanti.

Ubi illic scelus est qui me perdidit?

Ego etiam unà pereō, quod mihi est carius.

Obs. Verbum, Adjectivum aut Relativum inter
supposita diversorum numerorum, aut generum
ocatum, cum alterutro convenire potest; ut,

Amantium iræ amoris r. d. integratio est.

Paupertas visum est magnum onus.

Animal plenum rationis, quem vocamus hominem,

Avis (qui vel) quæ passer appellatur.

Urbs Lutetia (quam vel) quos Parisios dicimus.

Obs. Plura Supposita singularia per Conjuncti-
a v. m. copulata sæpe Verbum, vel Adjectivum, vel Re-
lativum plurale exigunt, atque hæc cum Supposito
niore quadrabunt; ut,

Ego & tu, qui studemus seduli, sumus in tuto.

*Tu atque ille, qui sedetis tam supini, cavete ne
vapuletis.*

Obs. Relativum & antecedens etiam in casu con-
iunt, si eidem verbo jungantur; ut,

Urbem, quam statuo, vestra est;

Populo ut placerent quas fecisset fabulas.

V. 8. Suppositi dignitas } *1. Genus*
aut,
spectatur secundum } *2. Personam.*

Sæ. Dignior enim est persona prima quàm secunda,
tertia, & dignior secunda quàm tertia.

Sæ. Dignius etiam est masculinum genus quàm fœ-
mininum, aut neutrum, & dignius fœmininum quàm
neutrum.

Sæ. Ac in rebus inanimatis neutrum genus adhi-
ur tanquam dignius; ut,

The Bows and the Arrows are good.

Thy rod and thy staff (these) have comforted me.

7. *Obs.* When the Verb or Adjective answered many Suppositives, it agreeth expressly with that which is nearest to it, and with the rest by supplying it.

Thou liest where I (ly) thou suppest when we (lie).

The husband and the wife is angry.

Exc. Yet when there is a comparison or likeness, the Verb or Adjective agreeth with the Suppositive which is further from it; as,

I write better than thou (writest.)

God's law is sweet, as honey is (sweet.)

7. *Obs.* A Pronoun Primitive seems to be included or understood in a Possessive, and therefore the Primitive or Adjective do oft agree with such a Primitive.

It concerneth not me, who am the eldest.

Seeing no body readeth my writings, fearing to cite them publicly.

§. IV. Rule, Concerning the case of the Relative.

To which add.

4. The case of the Relative.

WHEN there cometh no Nominative case between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative shall be the Nominative case to the Verb.

He that bewaveth not afore, shall be sorry afterward. That which (is) rare, (is) dear.

He may easily finde a stick, who desires to be a dog.

But if there doth come a Nominative case between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative shall be governed of the Verb, or of some other word in the same sentence; as,

Oft-times thou maiest conquer by patience, but thou canst not conquer by force,

Arcus & calami sunt bona.

Virga tua & baculus tuus (ipsa) me consolata sunt.

7. *Obs.* Cùm Verbum vel Adjectivum pluribus Suppositis respondet, cùm viciniore convenit expressè, cum reliquis per supplementum; ut,

Cubas ubi ego, cœnas, quando nos.

Matrux & uxor est irata.

Exc. Attamen quando est comparatio vel similiter, Verbum vel Adjectivum convenit cùm remotiore Supposito; ut,

Ego melius, quàm tu, scribo.

Divina lex, sicut mel, dulcis est.

7. *Obs.* Pronomen Primitivum includi vel subintelligi in Possessivo videtur, ideoque Relativum aut Adjectivum cum tali Primitivo sæpe concordant;

Nil meâ refert, qui sum natu maximus.

Scripta cùm meâ nemo legat, vûlgo recitare timen-
tis.

§. IV. Regula, De casu Relativi.

Quoties nullus Nominativus interfertur inter Relativum & Verbum, Relativum erit Verbo Nominativus; ut,

Quibus addas,

Qui anrè non cavet, post dolebit.

Quod rarum charum.

Facile inveniat baculum qui cupit cadere canem.

4. De casu Relativi.

Ac si Nominativus Relativo & Verbo interponatur, Relativum regetur à Verbo, aut ab alia dictione in eadem oratione; ut,

Sæpe vincas patientiâ, quem non vincas impetu.

If (thou) canst not do *what* (thou) wouldst; *what* that, *which* (thou) mayest do.

whose shadow I reverence.

Like to whom I have not seen.

1. *Obs.* As the Relative may be the Nominative case to the Verb, so it may be the Substantive to the Adjective; as,

He that rejoyceth at other mens evils is *twice* wretched.

Happie is he, *whom* other mens harmes make *warie*.

2. *Obs.* Nouns Interrogatives and Indefinites do follow the rule of the Relative, which evermore before the Verb, like as the Relative doth; as,
what an one was he? He is *such an one as* I never saw.

V.

§. V. The rule of the Question and Answer

§. Of the Question and Ans.

WHEN a question is asked, the answer must be made by the same case and tense that the question is asked by; as,

What do ye? *we plie our books.*

Who is rich? He that desireth nothing *who* poor? The covetous man. What is now a doing in England? *They consult about Religion.*

1. *Obs.* This rule faileth when the diverse nature of words requireth diverse cases; *viz.*

1. When a question is made by *Cujus, ia, jum;* *whose cattle are these?* *Egon's.*

2. Or by a word that may govern diverse cases; *is he accused of theft?* or of murder? *Of both what cost it?* *A penny.*

3. When one may answer by a possessive; as, *whose book is this?* *Mine.*

whose house is this? *My Fathers.*

Chr

Si non pores *quod vis*, id velis *quod possis*.

Cujus umbram veneror.

Cui similem non vidi.

1. *Obs.* Sicuti Relativum Verbo Nominativus, ita Adjectivo Substantivum fieri potest; ut,

Qui malis gaudet alienis bis miser est,

Felix quem faciunt aliena pericula cautum.

2. *Obs.* Nomina Interrogativa & Indefinita regulam Relativi sequuntur, quæ semper præcedunt verbum sicuti Relativum; ut,

Qualis erat? Talis erat qualem nunquam vidi.

§. V. Regula de Interrogativo, & ejus Reditivo.

V.

INTERrogativum & ejus Reditivum ejusdem casûs, & temporis erunt; i. e. quo casu vel tempore quæritur, in eodem respondebitur; ut,

5. De Interrogativo & Reditivo.

Quid agitis? Studemus.

Quis dives? Qui nil cupiat. Quis pauper? Avarus.

Quid rerum nunc geritur in Anglia?

Consulitur de Religione.

1. *Obs.* Fallit hæc regula, quoties diversa vocum natura diversos casus exigit; ut,

1. Quoties Interrogatio fit per *Cujus, ja, jum*; ut,
Cujum pecus? Agonis.

Aut per dictionem variz Syntaxeos; ut,

Furtive accusatur an homicidii? Utroque, vel de Quanti constitit? Denario. (utroque.

3. Quoties per possessivum respondere licet; ut,
Cujus est hic codex? Meus.

Cujus est hæc domus? Paterna.

Cap.

Chap. 2. Of the Government of Nouns.

2. Of Construction.

Government is the Construction of words according to which every aforegoing word governeth a certain case, or mood, of the word which followeth it.

Government is	{	Of Nouns	{	Substantives,	Chap. 2.
		Adjectives,		Chap. 3.	
		Of Pronouns,			Chap. 4.
		Of Verbs,			Chap. 5.
		Of Participles,			Chap. 6.
		Of Adverbs,			Chap. 7.
		Of Conjunctions,			Chap. 8.
		Of Prepositions,			Chap. 9.
		Of Interjections,			Chap. 10.

For all parts of Speech govern cases except a Conjunction, which yet will have certain moods and tenses.

1. Of Nouns.

Nouns govern four cases:	{	A Genitive,	Sect. VII.
		A Dative,	Sect. VIII.
		An Accusative,	Sect. IX.
		An Ablative,	Sect. X.

VI.

§. VI. Rule. Of Nouns Substantives.

1. Substantives.

Substantives govern a Genitive case.
 For when two Substantives come together betokening diverse things, the latter of them shall be in the Genitive case; as,
The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom.
God's word remaineth for ever.

1. *Obs.* But if two or more Substantives belong to one thing, they shall be put in the same case; as,

My

Cap. 2.

De Regimine Nominum.

Regimen est constructio dictionum, secundum quam præcedens quæque dictio regit certum casum, vel modum sequentis

2. Regimi-
nis.

Est autem Re- gimen	{	Nominum	Substantivorum, Cap. 2.
			Adjectivorum, Cap. 3.
		Pronominum,	Cap. 4.
		Verborum,	Cap. 5.
		Participiorum,	Cap. 6.
		Adverbiorum,	Cap. 7.
		Conjunctionum,	Cap. 8.
		Prepositionum,	Cap. 9.
		Interjectionum,	Cap. 10.

Omnes enim partes orationis regunt casus, exceptâ Conjunctione, quæ tamen certos modos & tempora postulat.

Nomina regunt qua- tuor casus : viz.	{	Genitivum,	Seçt. VII.	1. Nomi- num.
		Dativum,	Seçt. VIII.	
		Accusativum,	Seçt. IX.	
		Ablativum,	Seçt. X.	

§. VI. Regula. De Nominibus Substantivis.

VI.

„ Substantiva Genitivum regunt.

„ Quum enim duo Substantiva diversæ significa-
„ tionis concurrant, posterius in Genitivo ponitur ;

„ ut,

Timor Domini est initium sapientie.

Verbum Dei manet in æternum.

1. Obs. Sin duo vel plura Substantiva sunt ejusdem
rei, in eodem casu ponentur ; ut,

Pater

1. Substan-
tivorum.

My Father being a man loveth me a childe.

Mark Tully Cicero the Prince of Orators.

2. *Obs.* The Genitive case of the owner is often changed into an Adjective Possessive; as,

My Father's house.

My Master's son.

3. *Obs.* The former Substantive is sometime understood by an *Ellipsis* or defect of a word; as,

To * *St. Marie's.*

* *Church.*

I saw this man's † *Byrrhia.*

† *Servant.*

The * *third of the Kalends.*

* *Daie.*

4. *Obs.* An Adjective of the Neuter gender, being put without a Substantive, will have a Genitive case; as,

As much monie as any man keeps in his chest, so much credit he hath.

We do not see that (end) of the wallet which is on the back.

So also will others after the Greek fashion; as,

Black wooll will take no die.

Sneaking dogs clap the tail under the belly.

5. *Obs.* Words importing any quality to the praise or dispraise of a thing, coming after a Noun or Verb Substantive, shall be put in the Ablative or Genitive case; as,

A childe of an ingenuons look, and an ingenuons blush.

Every basest fellow is of a most lavish tongue.

6. *Obs.* *Opus* and *Usus* when they be Latine for need, will have an Ablative case; as,

What need words.

He hath need of twenty pounds.

But *Opus* necessary, admits of diverse cases; as,

A guide is necessary for us.

Get such things as are necessary for you.

7. *Obs.* Substantives derived of Verbs, do sometimes governe the cases of their Verbs; as,

A man banished from his Country,

Obedience

Pater meus vir amat me puerum.

Marcus Tullius Cicero Princeps Oratorum.

2. *Obs.* Genitivus possessoris sæpissime in Adjectivum possessivum mutatur; ut,

Pater domus, vel Paterna domus.

Heri filius, vel herilis filius.

3. Prius Substantivum quandoque per *Ellipsin* subauditur; ut,

Ad * *Stæ* Mariæ.

* *Templum.*

† Hujus video Byrrhiam.

† *Servum.*

Tertio * *Kalendarum.*

* *Die.*

4. Adjectivum in neutro genere absque Substantivo positum Genitivum postulat; ut,

Quantum quisque suâ *nummorum* servat in arca,

Tantum habet & *fidei.*

Non videmus *id mantile* quod in tergo est.

Sic & alia Græcorum imitatione; ut,

Nigræ lanarum nullum bibunt colorem.

Canum degeneres caudam sub alvum reflectunt.

5. *Obs.* Nomina qualitatem denotantia ad laudem vel vituperium rei efferentur in Ablativo vel Genitivo post nomen vel Verbum Substantivum; ut,

Ingenui vultus puer, *ingenuique pudoris.*

Contemptissimus quisque *solutissimâ* est lingua.

6. *Obs.* *Opus* & *usus* pro *neceffe*, gaudent Ablativo; ut,

Quid *verbis opus* est?

Usus est *viginti minis.*

Opus verò pro *necessarius* variè construitur; ut,

Dux nobis opus est.

Quæ tibi opus sunt para.

7. *Obs.* Substantiva verbalia verborum finium casibus interdum regunt;

Exul à patria.

Obtem-

Obedience to the Laws.

What have you to do to mind this matter.

Chap. 3.

VII. § VII. Rule. Of Adjectives governing a Genitive case.

2. Adjectives.
3. With a Genitive case.

ADjectives also govern a Genitive case, that signify desire, knowledge, remembrance, care, fear, or such like passion of the minde; as,

The nature of man is *eager of news*.

The minde is *foresighted of that which is to come*.

Live *mindfull of death*. Fearfull of a storm.

Ignorant of learning.

III. Adjectives derived of Verbs that end in *ax*; "as, Virtue is an *abandoner of vices*.

Time is a *consumer of things*.

IV. Nouns Partitives; as, *Some of you*.

Take *whether of these* thou wilt.

V. Nouns being put partitively; viz. having "after them this english *of* or *among* such as are,

1. Certain Interrogatives; as, *which of the Brethren?*
Is there *any among men* so miserable as I am?

2. Certain nouns of Number; viz. Cardinals and Ordinals; as, *Foure of the Judges*.

It is not yet apparent who was the *eighth of the wise men*.

3. Nouns of the Comparative and Superlative degree; as,

Of the hands the right is the stronger.

The middle finger is the *longest among the fingers*.

1. *Obs.* Yet these in another sense will have an Ablative case with a Preposition; as,

The first from *Hercules*. The third from *Aeneas*.

2. And in another sense a Dative; as,

Second to none in godliness.

3. They

Obtemperatio legibus.

Quid tibi curatio est hanc rem?

Cap. 3.

§. VII. Regula. De Adjectivis Genitivum regentibus.

VII.

Genitivum etiam regunt Adjectiva quæ desiderium, 2. Adjecti
notitiam, memoriam, curam, timorem, aut ejusmo- vorum,
di animi affectionem significant; ut, Est natura cum Geni-
hominum novitatis avida. tivo.

Mens est præsaga futuri.

Vive memor mortis. Timidus procelle.

Rudus literarum.

„ III. Verbalia in *ax*; ut,

Virtus est vitiorum fugax.

Tempus edax rerum.

IV. Partitiva; ut, Aliquis vestrum.

Utrum horum mavis accipe.

„ V. Partitivè posita; viz. quæ per *de*, *e*, *ex*, aut
inter exponuntur, cujusmodi sunt,

1. Interrogativa quædam; ut Quis fratrum?

An quisquam hominum est æquè miser ut ego?

2. Certa Numeralia; viz. Cardinalia & Ordinalia;
ut, Quatuor judicum.

Sapientum octavus quis fuerit nondum constat.

3. Comparativa & Superlativa; ut,

Manuum fortior est dextra.

Digitorum medius est longissimus.

1. Obs. Hæc tamen in alio sensu Ablativum exigunt
cum præpositione; ut,

Primus ab Hercule. Tertius ab Anea:

2. In alio verò sensu Dativum; ut,

Nulli pietate secundus.

2. Usur-

3. They are used also with the Præpositions, which their Genitive case is explained; as,
One of you is a god. One alone of a great many.
The chief amongst all.

VI. Besides a great company of other Adjective (*viz. Compos, reus, exsors, particips,* and the like) which may better be learn'd by frequent reading; as
That hath got his desire. Accused of theft. Empty from all fault. Partaking of his counsel.

Touching which see LINACER'S and DISPAUTER'S Grammars.

VIII.

§.VIII. Rule of Adjectives governing a Dative case.

2. ADative

These governe a Dative case
 „ I. Adjectives that betoken

1. Profit or Disprofit; as,

O be good and favourable to thine own.

Fir for the Country, profitable for the field.

A rout grievous to the peace, and enemy to gentle re

„ 2. Likeness or Unlikeness; as,

A Poët is very near to an Orator. Equall to Hector.

Disagreeing to the truth.

„ 3. Pleasure; as, *Pleasant to all persons.*

„ 4. Submitting; as, *Beseeching his father.*

„ 5. Belonging to any thing; as,

Idleness will be troublesome to thee.

There is no way unpassable for virtue.

6. Hitherto are referr'd nouns compounded with
Con; as, *Cognatus mihi, a kin to me.*

1. *Obs.* Yet some of these which signify Likeness may have a Genitive case; as,

Thou art like thy Master.

He was equall to this man, Partaker of his roguery

2. *Obs.*

3. Usurpantur etiam cum Præpositionibus per quas Genitivus exponi solet, ut,

Est Deus è vobis alter. Solus de plurimis.

Primus inter omnes.

VI. Ingens præterea Adjectivorum turba (viz. *Compos, reus, exfors, particeps, &c.*) crebriâ lectione melius addiscenda; ut,

Compos voti. Reus furti. Omnis culpæ exfors.

Illius consilii particeps.

De quibus videbis LINACRUM & DESPAUTERIUM.

§. VIII. Regula. De Adjectivis Dativum regentibus.

VIII.

Dativum regunt;

2. Dative.

1. I. Adjectiva quibus significatur

1. Commodum aut Incommodum; ut,

Sis bonus, & felixque tuis.

Patriæ idoneus, utilis agro.

Turba gravis paci, placidaque inimica quieti.

2. Similitudo aut Dissimilitudo; ut,

Est finitimus Oratori Poëta. Aequalis Hæctori.

Veritati dissentaneum.

3. Voluptas; ut, *Jucundus omnibus.*

4. Submissio; ut, *Parenti supplicans.*

5. Relatio ad aliquid; ut,

Orum tibi molestum erit.

In via virtuti nulla est via.

6. Huc referuntur ex Con Præpositione composita;

Mibi cognatus.

1. Obs. Quædam tamen ex his quæ similitudinem significant, Genitivo gaudent; ut,

Domini similis es.

Par hujus erat. Affinis sceleris vel sceleri.

P

2. Obs.

2. *Obs.* *Communis, alienus, immunis, proprius, conscius* and *superstes* will have diverse cases; as,

Common to all living creatures.

Death is common to all men.

This is common betwixt me and thee.

Unmeet for the purpose. Far from ambition,

Estranged from Scævola's studies.

Free from this evil. Free to all.

We are free from those evils.

It's proper to fools. Proper to me.

I am guilty to my self of no fault.

He was privy to the prank.

He outlived his honour.

That surviveth all other things.

3. *Obs.* *Natus, commodus, incommodus, utilis, inutilis, vehemens, aptus, ineptus, par, equalis*, will have sometimes an Accusative case with a Preposition; as,

Born to glory. Shoo's fit for the feet.

A man good of no side.

Virtues are equal and even amongst themselves.

„ II. Nouns Adjectives derived of Verbs, and „ the passive signification in *bilis*; as,

He is dead, being to be lamented of all good men.

And more to be lamented by none than thee.

IX.

§. IX. Rule. Of Nouns that govern an Accusative case.

3. An Accusative.

„ A Djectives governe an Accusative, which signifi-
„ the measure of length, bredth, or thickness
any thing; as, *A foot high. An hand broad.*
Three fingers thick. Seven foot long.

But they sometimes
also governe

{ A Genitive case; as, *Bord*
ten foot broad.
An Ablative; as, *A w* *Sec*
three foot wide.

Sec,

2. Obs. Communis, alienus, immunis, proprius, conscius & superstes variis casibus serviunt; ut,
Commune animantium omnium.

Mors omnibus communis est.

Hoc mihi tecum commune est.

Alienum consilii. Alienus ambitioni.

Alienus à Scevolæ studiis.

Immunis hujus mali. Omnibus immunis.

Immunes ab illis malis sumus.

Proprium est stultorum. Mihi proprium.

Mihi nullius culpæ conscius sum.

Is conscius illi facinori fuit.

Superstes dignitati suæ vixit.

Superstes omnium rerum.

3. Obs. Natus, commodus, incommodus, utilis, inutilis, vehemens, aptus, ineptus, par, æqualis, interdum etiam Accusativo cum Præpositione junguntur; ut,

Natus ad gloriam. Calcei ad pedes apti.

Homo ad nullam partem utilis.

Virtutes ipsæ inter se æquales & pares. Cic.

II. Verbalia in bilis accepta passivè; ut,

Multis ille bonis flebilis occidit.

Nulli flebilior, quàm tibi.

§. IX. Regula. De Nominibus Accusativum regentibus.

IX.

Adjectiva regunt Accusativum significantem longitudinem, latitudinem, aut crassitiam; ut,

Altus pedem. Latus manum.

Crassus tres digitos. Septem pedes longus.

Sed interdum } Genitivum; ut, Arce lata pedum
regunt } denum.

} Ablativum; ut, Fons latus pedibus
tribus;

P 2

Sec. X.

X.

§. X. Rule. Of Nouns governing an Ablative case.

4. An Ablative,

„ I. These govern an Ablative case.

„ 1. Nouns and Adverbs of the Comparative degree, having *than*, *by* or *in* after them; as,
Silver is is baser than gold, and gold than virtue.
No Theatre to truth is greater than conscience.
Higher by a foot. To excell in strength.

1. Obs. *Tanid, quanid, multid, pauid, nimid, ed, quid, hoc, etate, natu*, are joyned to both degrees of comparison; as,

He is farre more skilfull than the rest, but not much better.

By how much one is less learned, by so much he is more impudent. The greatest in age, i. e. The eldest. The least by birth, i. e. The youngest.

„ II. These Adjectives *dignus, indignus, præditus, captus, contentus, extorris, fretus*; as,

Thou art worthy of hatred.

Unbefitting the gravity of a wise man.

Endued with every virtue. Deprived of eyes.

Get thee hence, content with thy condition.

Banished from his own house. Trusting to thy clemency.

1. Obs. But *dignus*, and *indignus* will have sometimes a Genitive case; as, A warfare worth thy labour. Not unworthy of his great Ancestors.

„ III. Nouns of diversity will have an Ablative case with a Preposition; as, Another thing from this. Another man from him.

„ And sometimes a Dative; as, Different from this thing.

„ IV. Adjectives and Verbs that signify plenty or want, will have an Ablative, and sometimes a Genitive case; as, Love is very full both of honey and gall.

Love is a thing full of thoughtfulsome fear.

The

§. X. Regula. De Nominibus Ablativum regentibus.

X.

Ablativum regunt,I. Comparativa (Nomina, Verba, & Adverbia) quum exponuntur per *quàm*, aut post se habent nomen significans mensuram excessûs, ut,

4. Ablativo.

*Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum.**Nullum theatrum veritati conscientiam majus est.**Uno pede altior. Viribus præstare.*I. Obs. *Tanquàm, quantum, multum, paulum, nimium, eò, quò, hoc, etate, natu, utriq; gradui apponuntur.**Longè cæteris peritior est, sed non multum melior.**Quò quis indoctior, cò impudentior.**Maximus etate. Minimus natu.*II. *Dignus, indignus, præditus, captus, contentus extorris, fretus, ut,**Dignus es odio.**Indignum sapientis gravitate.**Omni virtute præditus. Captus oculis.**Sorte tuâ contentus abi.**Extorris suâ domo. Fretus tuâ clementiâ.*„ I. Obs. *Dignus & indignus interdum etiam Genitivum vendicant; ut Militia operis digna tui.**Magnorum non indignus avorum.*„ III. *Nomina diversitatis, Ablativum sibi cum Præpositione subjiciunt, ut, Aliud ab hoc. Alter ab illo.**Et nonnunquam Dativum; ut Huic diversum.*„ IV. *Adjectiva & verba quæ ad copiam egestatè vel pertinent, interdum Ablativo, interdum & genitivo gaudent; ut, Amor & melle & felle est sacundissimus.**Res est solliciti plena timoris amor.*

*Thou aboundest in love. Thou wantest virtue.
 Rich in white cattle. Rich in grounds.
 Void of guile. Blessed with grace.
 Go on or increase in virtue. Upright in life.*

„ 1. *Obs.* Some of these will have also an Ablative case
 „ with a Preposition ; as, *Void of Anger.*

„ V. Any Adjective or Verb will have an Ablative case;
 1. Of the Instrument ; as, *Scout at the Sword,
 Better at Oars. Iesus vanquished the Devill, not
 with weapons, but with death.*

2. Of the Cause ; as, *Pale with anger.
 Worse for too much liberty.*

3. Of the Circumstance, of the manner of doing, or
 of the thing ; as,

*An envious man groweth lean at the prosperity of
 another. By name a Grammarian, but indeed a Bar-
 barian, A Trojane by birth, a Syrian by nation.*

Crooked old age will come by and by with a still pace.

„ 1. *Obs.* But sometimes the Ablative case of the cause,
 or manner of doing will have a Preposition ; as,
unprovided of money.

He used the man with a great deal of courtesie.

„ VI. Adjectives and Verbs of buying and selling will
 „ have an Ablative case of the price ; as,

Cheap at twenty pounds. Dear at a farthing.

Not to be sold for pearls, or purple, or gold.

That Victory cost much blood, and many wounds.

He taught for wages. Wheat is sold at a low rate.

To hire for a penny. To let for a shilling.

He live's at ten pounds rent.

„ I. *Obs.* Yet these words, when they are without
 Substantives, are put after Verbs in the Genitive
 case ; viz. *Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris* : as,

I sell not for more than others, but for less.

Things are so much worth, as they may be sold for.

„ VII. Adjectives, and Verbs Passives and Neuters

Amore abundas. Cares virtute.

Dives Nivei pecoris. Dives agri.

Expers fraudis. Gratiâ beatus.

Macte sis virtute. Integer vita.

1. *Obs.* Ex his quædam junguntur Ablativo cum Præpositione; ut, *Vacuus iræ, irâ, ab irâ.*

V. Quodvis Nomen aut Verbum admittit Ablativum,

1. *Instrumenti*, ut, *Ense validus. Melior remis.*

Dæmona non armis, sed morte subegit I x s s.

2. *Causæ*; ut, *Pallidus irâ.*

Deteriores licentiâ.

Invidus alterius rebus macrescit apimis.

3. *Circumstantia* modi actionis aut rei; ut,

Nomine Grammaticus, re barbarus.

Trojanus origine, Syrus natione.

Jam veniet tacito curva senectâ pede:

1. *Obs.* Sed Ablativo causæ aut modi aliquando additur Præpositio; ut,

Imparatus à pecuniâ.

Cic.

Summâ cum humanitate tractavit hominem.

„VI. *Adjectiva & Verba mercandi regunt Ablativum pretii*; ut,

Vili viginti minis. Afse carus.

Nec gemmis, nec purpurâ venale, nec auro.

Multo sanguine ac vulneribus ea victoria Nesti.

Mercede docuit. Vili venit triticum.

Addicere denario. Locare solido.

Habitat decem minis.

1. *Obs.* Hæc tamen sine Substantivis posita, Verbis subjiciuntur in Genitivo; viz. *Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris*; ut,

Non vendo pluris quam alii, sed minoris.

Tanti valent res, quanti vendi possunt.

„VII. *Adjectiva, & Verba Passiva, & Neutralia, significantes*

that signifie some property or passion, will have an Accusative case, or Ablative, signifying the part or place wherein the property or passion is; as,

He is diseased in his feet. He is sick in minde rather than in body.

He hath red hair. Red-haired.

1. *Obs.* But the part affected is sometimes put in the Genitive case; as, O thou! that hast an happy wit. Thou troublest thy self in minde.

2. *Obs.* These be Greek phrases:

Merry as concerning other things. Like in other things. Like him both in speech and colour.

XI.

§. XI. Rule. Of the Ablative case Absolute.

N.B. A Noun or Pronoun Substantive, joyned with a Participle, expressed or understood, and having no other word whereof it may be governed, shall be put in the Ablative case absolute; as,

The King coming the enemies ran away, i. e. when the King comes, I being Captain.

And it may be resolved by whilest, when, if, &c.

Chap. 4. Of the Government of Pronouns.

2. Of Pronouns.

THESE Genitive cases of the Primitives *Mei, tuī sui, nostrī* and *vestrī*, be used when suffering or passion is signified; but *Meus, tuus, suus, noster*, and *vester* be used when action or possession is signified; as,

Part of thee, Thy part. The image of us, Our image. The love of himself, His own love.

1. *Obs.* Possessives are sometimes put for Primitives, as, He did it for my sake.

2. *Obs.* *Nostrum* and *vestrum* be used after Distributives, Partitives, Comparatives and Superlatives; as, Some

significantiā aliquam proprietatem vel passionem; pos-
sunt regere Accusativum, vel Ablativum, significan-
tem partem in qua est proprietas aut passio; ut,
Ager pedes, vel *pedibus*. *Agrotat animo magis*
quàm corpore.

Rubet Capillos. *Ruber crine*.

1. Obs. Sed pars affecta interdum in Genitivo poni-
tur; ut, *O te felicem cerebri*.

Angus te animi.

2. Obs. Græcæ Phrasæ sunt:

Cætera letus. *Cætera similis*.

Huic vocemque coloremque similis est.

§. XI. Regula. De Ablativo absolutè posito.

XI.

N.B. **A**blativus absolutè ponitur expresso Partici-
pio, vel subaudito; ut,

Rege veniente hostes fugerunt,
Me duc.

Et resolvitur per *Dum*, *cum*, *si*, &c.

Cap. 4. De Regimine pronominum.

M*ei, tuī, suī, nostrī, vestrī*, ponuntur cum pas-
sio; sed *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, cum
tio vel possessio significatur; ut, 2. Prono-
minum.
Pars tuī, pars tua. *Imago nostrī, Imago nostra*.
Amor suī, Amor suus.

1. Obs. Possessiva verò interdum pro Primitivis uti-
pantur; ut, *Meā causā fecit*, i.e. *meī*.

2. Obs. *Nostrām & vestrām* sequuntur Distributiva,
partitiva, Comparativa & Superlativa; ut,

Aliquis

Some of you. The bigger of you. The eldest of you.
 3. *Obf.* *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, will have certain Genitive cases after them, viz. *Ipsius, solius, unus, duorum, trium, &c. omnium, plurimum, paucorum*, and the Genitives of participles, which are referred to the Primitive, understood in the Possessive; as,

Thou may'st guess out of thine own minde.

Thou hast seen the eyes of me weeping.

11. *Ipe* and *idem* may be joyned to all persons.

I myself will see. Thou thy self go on to do it;

Plato himself said. He him self did it.

Idem governeth sometimes a Dative case; as,

He that saveth a man against his will, doth the same as he that kill's him.

But more commonly an Ablative case with a Proposition; as, *The same with it.*

III. *Ille* noteth the eminencie or worth of a thing, and *Iste* the baseness or contempt of it; as,

That brave Alexander the great. That mean fellow

Hic is for the most part referred to the later Antecedent, and the nearer to its self; *Ille* to the former, and the further from it; as,

The Husbandman's aim is contrary to the shepherd's; he look's for profit from his land; and he from his stock of cattle.

Chap. 5. Of the government of Verbs.

Verbs govern a	{	Nominative	{	Sect. XII.
		Genitive		Sect. XIII.
		Dative		Sect. XIV.
		Accusative		Sect. XV.
		Ablative		Sect. XVI.

quis *vestrum*. Major *vestrum*. Maximus nam *nostrum*.
 Obs. *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, quosdam Ge-
 nios post se recipiunt; viz. *ipsius, solius, unius, duo-*
rum, trium, omnium, plurium, paucorum, & Genitivos
 participiorum qui referuntur ad Primitivum in Pos-
 sivo inclusum; ut,

Ex *tui ipsius* animo conjecturam feceris.

Nostros vidisti *flentis* ocellos.

Ipse & idem omnibus personis adjungi possunt; ut,

Ego *ipse* videbo. *Idem* perge facere.

Ipse Plato dixit. *Hic idem* fecit.

Idem regit aliquando Dativum; ut,

Invitum qui servat, *idem* facit *occidemi*.

Sed frequentius Ablativum cum Præpositione, ut,
Idem cum illo.

III. *Ille* eminentiam rei denotat; *Iste* verò con-
 temptum; ut,

Alexander *ille*. *Iste* homuncio.

Hic ad posterius & propius antepositum; *Ille* ad
 rem & remotius ultimatissime refertur; ut,

Agricola contrarium est. *Pastoris* propositum;

ille fructum è terrâ sperat; *hic* è pecore.

Cap. 5. De Regimine Verborum.

Verba re-
 guntur

Nominativum

Genetivum

Dativum

Accusativum

Ablativum

Seçt. XII.

Seçt. XIII.

Seçt. XIV.

Seçt. XV.

Seçt. XVI.

Quibus

To which also belong the Rules	{ Of Verbs passives,	Sect XV
	{ Of such as have a diverse } construction,	Sect XVI
	{ Of the Infinitive mood	Sect XVII
	{ Of the Gerunds and Supines,	Sect XVIII
	{ Of the Gerund in { <i>Di,</i>	Sect XIX
	{ <i>Do,</i>	Sect XX
	{ <i>Dum,</i>	Sect XXI
	{ Of the first Supine,	Sect XXII
	{ Of the later Supine;	Sect XXIII
	{ Of Time,	Sect XXIV
	{ Of Space,	Sect XXV
	{ Of Place,	Sect XXVI
	{ Of Impersonals,	Sect XXVII

XII.

§. XII. Rule. Of Verbs governing a Nominative case.

1. Of Verbs
with
1. A Nomi-
native.

Verbs Substantives, certain Passives, and Verbs of Gesture will have a Nominative case after them as well as before them; as,
God is the chiefest good.
Faith is accounted the foundation of our Religion.
An evill shepherd sleepeth void of care.
He will become a learned man.

1. Obs. All manner of Verbs (almost) will have after them a Nominative case of the Noun Adjective that agreeth with the Nominative case of the Verb in Case, Gender, and Number; as,
The earth remaineth unmoveable. I write very seldom.
Good boyes learn diligently. I speak often.

XIII.

§. XIII. The Rule of Verbs governing a Genitive Case.

2. A Geni-
tive.

These Verbs govern a Genitive case:
I, Sum, when it betokeneth possession; as,
Other...

De Verbis Passivis,	Seçt. XVII.
De variam constructionem } habentibus,	Seçt. XVIII.
De modo Infinitivo,	Seçt. XIX.
De Gerundiis & Supinis,	Seçt. XX.
De Gerundiis in { <i>Di,</i>	Seçt. XXI.
{ <i>Do,</i>	Seçt. XXII.
{ <i>Dum,</i>	Seçt. XXIII.
De priore Supino,	Seçt. XXIV.
De posteriore Supino,	Seçt. XXV.
De Tempore,	Seçt. XXVI.
De Spatio,	Seçt. XXVII.
De Loco	Seçt. XXVIII.
De impersonalibus,	Seçt. XXIX.

§. XII. Regula. De Verbis Nominativum
regentibus,

XII.

Verba Substantiva, passiva quædam, & Verba
gestûs, utrinque Nominativum expetunt; ut,

1. Verbo-
rum cum
1. Nomina-
tivo.

Deus est *summum bonum*.

Fides Religionis nostræ *fundamentum habetur*.

Malus pastor *dormit supinus*.

Hic *evadet vir doctus*.

1. Obs. Omnia ferè Verba post se Nominativum ha-
bent Adjectivi nominis, quod cum Supposito Verbi,
casu, genere, & numero concordat; ut,

Terra *manet immobilis*. Scribo *varissimus*.

Boni *discunt seduli*. Loquor *frequens*.

§. XIII. Regula. De Verbis Genitivum
regentibus.

XIII.

Genitivum regunt:

I *Sum*, quoties significat possessionem aut ad
aliquid

2. Genitivo

otherwise pertaining to a thing, as a property or
ty; as, *This house is my Father's house.*

It is (the duty) *of a young man to reverence his*
ders.

It is (the property) *of a good shepherd to shear*
sheep, not to pill them.

1. *Obs.* But some Adjectives, as *meum, tuum, hu-*
num, &c. are put in the Nominative case, where
fictum or *munus* (a duty) seem's to be understood,
an Ellipsis; as,

It is not my duty to speak against the Authority
the Senate.

It is incident to a man to be angry; but a bea-
part to rage.

It is a Kingly part to do well.

„ II. Verbs that betoken to esteem or regard;
Honesty is reckoned little worth.

Money is every where much regarded.

I care not this for thee, who valuest me but
baire.

I take it in good part.

1. *Obs.* But *estimo* will have an Ablative case;
Virtue is much to be esteemed.

He valued it at three-pence.

2. *Obs.* *Valeo* will have a Genitive, an Accusative
or an Ablative case; as, *It is so much worth,*

It is worth two farthings.

3. *Obs.* We say also, *I account, or esteem it as nothing.*

„ III. Verbs of accusing, condemning, warning
„ or acquitting, will have a Genitive case of the

„ crime or punishment; as, *It behooveth him to look*
to himself, that accuseth another of dishonesty.

They condemned most innocent Socrates to lose his life.

He admonished me of a mistake.

He is acquitted of theft.

1. *Obs.* And this Genitive case is turned sometimes

liquid pertinere ; ut,

Hæc domus est patris.

Adolescentis est majores nam revereri.

Boni Pastoris est rondere pecus, non deglubera.

I. *Obs.* At hi Nominativi *meum, tuum, humanum,* usurpantur ubi *officium* aut *munus* subintelligi videtur per Ellipsin ; ut,

Non est *meum* contra *Authoritatem Senatus* dicere.

Humanum est irasci ; *Bellinum* verò scire.

Regium est benefacere.

II. Verba æstimandi ; ut,

Parvi penditur probitas.

Plurimi passim fit pecunia.

Non *hujus* te facio, qui me *pili æstimas.*

Æqui, boni consulo, vel facio.

I. *Obs.* *Æstimo* Ablativum etiam adsciscit ; ut,

Magno virtus æstimanda est.

Tribus denariis æstimavit.

2. *Obs.* *Valeo* cum Genitivo, frequentius autem cum accusativo, & Ablativo junctum reperitur ; ut,

Tanti valet. Valet duos asses, vel duobus assibus.

Obs. Dicimus etiam, *Pro nihilo puto, habeo, duco, &c.*

III. Verba accusandi, damnandi, monendi, & absolvendi, Genitivum criminis, vel pœnæ postulant ; ut, *Qui alterum incusat probri, cum ipsum se intueri oportet.*

Socratem innocentissimum capitis condemnabant,

Admonuit me errati.

Furti absolutus est.

I. *Obs.* Vertitur hic Genitivus aliquando in Ablativum vel cum Præpositione, vel sine Præpositione ; ut,

into an Ablative either with, or without a Preposition; as, *I will condemn thee of the same fault.*

Is he accused of theft, or dishonesty? Of both.

I thought that thou wert to be admonished of this matter.

„ IV. *Satago, misereor and miseresco,*
He is busy about his own matters. Pity the pains
Pity thine own stock.

1. *Obs.* But *misereor* and *miseresco* are sometimes read with a Dative case; as,

Pity this man. Have compassion on the bad.

„ V. *Reminiscor, obliviscor and memini;* as,
He remembereth his promise. It is the property
fools to see other men's faults and forget their own.
I will make thee to remember me always.

1. *Obs.* And these will have also an Accusative case; as, *I remember my lesson. I forget the song.*

„ VI. Some also after the manner of the Greeks have a Genitive case; as,

Cease thy womanish complaints.

It is time to give over the fight.

He is worthy of all mischief, that blusheth at his fortune.

XIV.

§. XIV. Rule. Of Verbs governing a Dative case.

3. Dative. „ **A**LL manner of Verbs put acquisitively, (which are known commonly by these tokens, *to* or *for* after them) will have a Dative case; as,
I have it for this man, and not for thee.
I sleep not to all men. Neither is there sowing nor mowing for me there.

And to this rule doe also belong Verbs that begin with *ken*,

„ 1. *To*

Præteritum vel cum Præpositione, vel sine Præpositione;
Condemnabo te eodem crimine;
Accusatur furti, an stupri? utroque, vel de utroque
Putavi eâ de re admonendum esse te.

IV. *Satago; misereor, miseresco; ut,*
Is rerum suarum satagit, Misere laborum.
Generis miseresce tui.

1. *Obs.* At *misereor* & *miseresco* rariùs cum Dativo le-

untur; ut,
Huic misereor. Miseresce malis.

V *Reminiscor, obliviscor, & memini; ut,*
Data fidei reminiscitur. Proprium est stultorum,
aliorum vitia cernere, oblivisci suorum.

Faciam ut mei semper memineris.

1. *Obs.* Et hæc Accusativum etiam desiderant; ut,
Reminiscor lectionem. Obliviscor carmen.

VI. Quædam etiam, more Græcorum, Genitivum

mittunt; ut,
Desine mollium querelarum. Hor.

Tempus desistere pugna. Virg.

Dignus est omni malo, qui erubescit fortune. Curt.

§. XIV. Regula. De Veris Dativum regentibus.

XIV.

Dativum regunt,
 Omnia verba acquisitivè posita; ut,
Huic habeo, non tibi.
Non omnibus dormio.
Mihi istic nec feritur, nec metitur.

§. Dativo

Atque huic regulæ appendent Verba.

Q

§. I. Signis

- „ 1. To profit or disprofit ; as,
It cannot *profit* or *disprofit* me.
He *hurte*th the good, who *spare*th the bad.
- „ 2. To compare ; as,
To compare great things with small.
He made himself *equal* to his brother.
1. *Obs.* But these will have sometimes an Accusative or an Ablative case with a Preposition ; as,
If he *be compared* to him, he is nothing.
I compare Virgil *with* Homer.
- „ 3. To give or to restore ; as, Fortune hath given too much to many, enough to none.
He is ungratefull that *requisite* not a favour to him that *deserveth* it.
- „ 4. To promise or pay ; as,
I promise thee these things.
He hath *payed* the debt *unto* me.
- „ 5. To command or to shew ; as,
Money hoarded up *commandeth* or *serveth* every body.
Take heed oft-times what *thou sayest* of any body and to whom.
- „ 6. To trust ; as, Believe not a woman, no though she seem dead. I *commit* this to thy trust.
- „ 7. To Obey, or to be against ; as,
A dutifull son alwayes *obeyeth* his father.
Fortune *resisteth* fluggish prayers.
- „ 8. To threaten or to be angry with ; as,
He *threatned* death to them both.
I am angry with thee.
- „ 9. *Sum* with its Compounds, except *possum* ; as,
He is a father to the City, and a husband to the City.
Many things are wanting to them that desire many things.
1. *Obs.* Likewise *Sum* and *Suppetit* signifying have ; as, Every man hath his own liking.
We have mellow apples.

1. Significantia Commodum aut Incommodum ;
ut,

Non potest mihi commodare nec incommodare.
Bonis nocet, qui malis parcit.

2. Comparandi ; ut,
Parvis componere magna.
Fratri se adæquavit.

1. Obs. His autem interdum additur Accusativus aut Ablativus cum Præpositione ; ut,
Si ad eum comparatur, nihil est.
Compare Virgilium cum Homero.

3. Dandi & reddendi ; ut, Fortuna multis nimium dedit, nulli satis.
Ingratus est qui gratiam bene merenti non reponit.

4. Promittendi ac solvendi ; ut, Hæc tibi promitto.

Æs alienum mihi numeravit.

5. Imperandi aut nuntiandi ; ut,
Imperat, aut servit collecta pecunia cuique.
Quid de quoquo viro, aut cui dicas, sæpe caveto.

6. Fidendi ; ut, Mulieri nè credas, nè mortuæ quidem. Hoc tux mando fidei.

7. Obsequendi & repugnandi ; ut,
Semper obtemperat pius filius patri.
Ignavis precibus fortuna repugnat.

8. Minandi & irascendi ; ut,
Utrique mortem minatus est.
Irascor tibi.

9. Sum cum compositis, præter possum ; ut,
Urbi pater est, Urbique maritus.
Multa petentibus desunt multa.

1. Obs. Item Sum & suppetit, pro habeo ; ut,
Velle suum cuique est.
Sunt nobis mitia poma.

He is not poor, *who hath the use of things.*

2. *Obs.* *Sum*, with many others will have a double Dative case; as,

The sea is a destruction to greedy seamen.

A godly King is an ornament to the Commonwealth.

Thou hopest it will be a praise to thee, which thou imputeest as a fault to me.

13 Verbs compounded with the Adverbs, *Satis*,

bene, *malè*, and the Prepositions, *Præ*, *ad*, *con*, *sub*,

ante, *post*, *ob*, *in*, and *inter*; as,

He hath done good to many, he hath done ill to none.

I prefer no man before thee.

A new relator addeth something to things he hath heard.

1. *Obs.* A few of these sometimes change their Dative case into another case; as,

One man excels another in wit,

I forbid thee fire and water.

2. *Obs.* But *Præ*, *præcedo*, *præcurro*, with some other Compounds of *præ*, will have rather an Accusative case; as, *Thou shalt go before me.*

3. *Obs.* There is oft-times a Pleonasm or redundancy of the Dative cases, *Mibi*, *tibi*, *sibi*; as,

I slay this man with his own sword.

N.B. Sometimes a Dative case is put figuratively instead of an Accusative or Ablative with a Preposition, and of some it is called the eighth case; as,

The cry goeth unto heaven. Keep the hearth from the cattle.

XV.

§. XV. Rule. Of Verbs governing an Accusative case.

4. An Accusative. Verbs Transitives, are all such as have after them an Accusative case of the doer or sufferer, as, *Fear God. Honour the King.*

It's

Pauper non est cui rerum suppetit usus.

2. *Obs.* Sum cum multis alijs geminum adsciscit
Dativum; ut,

Exilio est avidis mare nautis.

Rex Pius est Reipublicæ ornamento.

Speras tibi laudi fore, quod mihi vitio vertis.

10. Composita cum Adverbiis *Satis, bene, malè, &*
Præpositionibus, *præ, ad, con, sub, ante, post, ob, in,*
inter; ut,

Benefecit multis, malefecit nulli.

Neminem tibi antepono.

Auditis aliquid novus adjicit Auctor.

1. *Obs.* Pauca ex his mutant Dativum aliquoties in
aliu[m] casu[m]; ut,

Præstat ingenio alius alium.

Inserdico tibi aqua[m] & igni.

2. *Obs.* Sed *Præeo, præcedo, præcurro, &* quædam alia
Composita cum *præ* Accusativo potius junguntur; ut,
Præibis me,

3. *Obs.* Sæpe fit Pleonasmus sive redundantia Da-
tivorum, *Mibi, tibi, sibi;* ut,

Suo sibi hunc jugulo gladio.

N. B. Aliquando Dativus figuratè ponitur pro Ac-
cusativo aut Ablativo cum Præpositione; & à nonnul-
lis dicitur octavus casus; ut,

It clamor cælo, pro ad cælum.

Solstitium pecori defendite, pro à pecore.

§. XV. Regula De Verbis Accusativum Regentibus.

XV.

Verba Transitiva exigunt Accusativum; ut,

4. Accusa-
tivo.

Denique. Regem honoras

It's a son's duty to reverence his parents.

The fierce Lions followeth the wolf, and the Wolf the Kid

1. *Obs.* Verbs absolute may have an Accusative case of their own signification, and sometimes an Ablative; as, *I live a life. To live a life long.*

Thou sleepest Endymion's sleep. They rejoiced with exceeding great joy. To go a long way. To go the right way. He died a sudden death.

2. *Obs.* Some Verbs will have an Accusative case figuratively; as, *He smells like a Goat. Thy voice sounds like a man. He offends in the same thing. They counterfeit sober men and live riotously.*

3. Verbs of asking, teaching, and arraying, will have two Accusative cases, one of the Person, and the other of the Thing; as,

Do thou onely ask God leave.

Hunger teacheth a man many things.

He put on his shoes which he had first put off.

4. But some of these sometimes change the one Accusative case into the Dative or Ablative; without a Preposition; as, *I put on thy coat,*

I put thy coat on thee. He informeth the Senate his journey. Let us intreat leave of him.

XVI:

5. XVI. Rule. Of Verbs Governing an Ablative case.

5. Ablative

These govern an Ablative case,
I. All Verbs; so that the Ablative case be

1. Of the Instrument.

2. Of the Cause.

3. Of the Manner of doing;

II. Verbs of Price.

III. Verbs that signify some property or passion;

Concerning which we have spoken before in the Regiment Nouns, &c.

Filii est, reuereri parentes.

Torva Leena Lupum sequitur, Lupus ipse Capellam.

1. Obs. Verba absoluta Accusativum admittunt cognatæ significationis & aliquando Ablativum; ut,

Viva vitam. Vult diu vivere.

Endymionis somnum dormis.

Gaudebant gaudium valde magnum.

Longam ire viam, Ire rectâ viâ.

Morte obiit repentinâ.

2. Obs. Quædam etiam figuratè Accusativum habent; ut,

Olet hircum Vox sonat hominem.

Eadem peccat. Curios simulat & Bacchanalia vivunt

3. Verba rogandi, docendi, vestiendi, duplicem regunt Accusativum; unum personæ, alterum rei; ut,

Tu modò posce Deum veniam

Multa hominem fames docet

Induit se calceos quos prius exuerat.

4. Sed interdum mutant alterum Accusativum in Dativum vel Ablativum, cum, vel sine Præpositione; ut,

Induo te tunica, vel tibi tunicam Senaturn edocet
de itinere Veniam oremus ab ipse.

§. XVI. Regula. De Verbis Ablativum regentibus.

XVI.

Ablativum regunt

I. Quodvis Verbum; modò iste Ablativus sit

1. Instrumenti,

2. Cause,

3. Modi Actionis,

II. Verba pretii.

III. Verba proprietatem vel passionem significantia.

De quibus in vo.
Regimine
Nominum
suprà dictum
est. p.

5. Ablati-

21

IV.

IV. Verbs of plenty or scarceness.

V. Some certain Deponents and Neuters, viz

<i>Fungor,</i>	}	They that would get true glory
<i>Frutor,</i>		must discharge the duties of Justice
<i>Utor,</i>	}	It is the best to make use of another's
<i>Vescor,</i>		madness.
<i>Nitor,</i>	}	It helpeth in a bad matter, if thou
		canst use a good courage.
	}	I eat flesh.
		I trust to my strength. It becometh
	}	one to rely on his vertue, not his
		blood. (honour)
<i>Dignor,</i>	} as,	I think not my self worthy of such
<i>Prosequor,</i>		I pursue thee with love, i. e. I love
	}	thee.
<i>Muto,</i>		He changeth square things for round
<i>Munro,</i>	}	He rewarded him with the fellow
		ship of his Kingdom.
<i>Supersedeo,</i>	}	we must leave off the multitude of
		examples. (my table)
<i>Communico,</i>	}	I will give thee allowance alwaies
<i>Afficio,</i>		I affect thee with joy, or, I make thee
	}	glad, with some few others.

VI. Verbs of Comparing or Exceeding; as,

I prefer this man by many degrees.

He is beyond him but a little space.

It is seemly to be overcome in virtue by those whom thou excellest in eminency of place.

„ VII. Verbs that betoken Receiving, Distance, or, taking away, will have an Ablative case with a Preposition; as, *I heard it of many.* It is far distant from us. *I delivered thee from the evils.*

i. Obs. And this Ablative may be turned into the Dative; as, *He took his life from him.*

VIII. *Mereor* will have an Ablative case with the Preposition *De*; as,

Thou

IV. Verba Abundandi, & Implendi.

V. Certa quædam Deponentia & Neutra, viz.

ungor,	Qui adipisci veram gloriam volumus,
eror,	Justitiæ fungantur officiis.
or,	Optimum est alienâ insaniam frui.
or,	In re malâ animo si bono utare, juvat
estor,	Vescor carnibus.
itor,	Nitor meis viribus. Virtute decet,
	non sanguine niti.
dignor,	as, Haud equidē tali me dignor amore,
prosequor,	Prosequor te amore.
into,	Mutat Quadrata rotundis:
nunero,	Regni cum societate munera vit.
supersedeo,	Exemplorum multitudine superse-
communico,	dendum est.
afficio,	Communicabo te semper mensā meā.
	Afficio te gaudio, cum paucis aliis.

VI. Verba quæ vim Comparisonis obtinent; ut,

Præfero hunc multis gradibus.

Paulo intervallo illum superat,

Deforme est ab iis virtutibus superari, quos dignitate præstas.

VII. Verba Accipiendi, Distandi & Auferendi Ab-

lativum cum Præpositione oprant; ut,

Audiui ex multis. Longè distat à nobis:

Eripuit te à malis.

I. Obs. Vertitur hic Ablativus aliquando in Dativum;

ut, Eripuit illi vitam.

VIII. Mereq̃ Ablativo adhæret cum Præpositione

De; ut,

De

*Thou never deservedst well of me.
 Catiline deserved very ill of the Common-wealth.*

XVII.

§. XVII. Rule. Of Verbs Passives.

Verbs Passives will have after them an Ablative case with a Preposition, and sometime a Dative; as
Virgil is read of me.

A Boar is oft-times held by a little dog.

Honest things, not hidden things, are desired of good men.

1. *Obj.* The other cases remain in the Passives which belonged to their Active; as

Thou art accused by me of theft.

Thou shalt be made a mocking-stock.

2. *Obj.* *Vapulo, venio, liceo, exsulo* and *fit*, do follow the construction of Passives, i. e. they govern the Ablative case with a Preposition, or a Dative; as,

Thou shalt be whipt by the master. I had rather be spoiled by a citizen, than sold by an enemy.

What will become of him? Virtue is cheapened by all at a low rate. Why is Philosophy banished from banquets?

XVIII.

§. XVIII. Rule. Of Verbs having diverse Constructions.

With a diverse Construction,

I. **T**he same Verb may have diverse cases in a several respect or consideration; as,
He gave me his garment for a pawn, thou being present, with his own hand.

II. These Verbs have a diverse Construction,

1. In the same signification; as,

1 *I flatter thee.*

2 *He bespotted me.*

3 *I hearken to thee.*

4 *I agree with thee.*

5 *I dissent from thee.*

6 *I bestow a book on thee.*

*De me nunquam bene meritus es.
Catilina pessimè de Republicâ meruit.*

§. XVII. Regula. De verbis Passivis.

XVII.

Verba Passiva admittunt Ablativum cum Præpositione, & interdum Dativum; ut,
Virgilius legitur à me.

A cane non magno sæpe tenetur Aper.

Hon. Ita bonis viris, non occulta petuntur.

1. *Obs.* Cæteri casus manent in Passivis qui fuerunt Activorum; ut

Accusatus à me furti.

Habeberis ludibrio.

2. *Obs.* *Vapulo, veneo, liceo, exsulo, fio*, Passivorum constructionem habent, i. e. Ablativum admittunt cum Præpositione, vel Dativum; ut,

A præceptore vapulabis.

Malo à cive spoliari, quàm ab hoste venire.

Quid fiet ab illo? Virtus parvo pretio licet amplus.

Cur à convivis exsulat Philosophia?

§. XVIII. Regula. De Verbis variam Constructionem habentibus.

XVIII.

1. **E**ldem Verbo diversi casus diversæ rationis apponi possunt; ut,

Dedit mihi vestem pignori, te presente, propria manu.

Cum diversa significatione

II. Hæc variam habent constructionem,

1. In eadem significatione, viz.

1. *Adno* { tibi. } 2. *Aspersit* { mihi labem. }

3. *Adulor* { te } { me labe. }

4. *Attendo* { tibi. } 4. *Consentio* { tibi. }

5. *Dis dissentio* { tibi, à te, } 6. *Dono* { tibi librum. }

7. *Diffideo.* { tecum. } { te libro. }

7 114-

- 7 I mock thee
 8 I bestow my means on thee
 9 I put on thy coat
 10 He spread his cloak on the horse
 11 I forbid thee this thing
 12 I cure } my son
 } that disease
 13 I moderate my affliction
 14 I deprave thee
 15 I tarry for thee
 16 I forbid thee the house
 17 I go into the house
 18 In a different signification; as,
 I assent }
 19 I come } to thee
 20 I envy } thee
 I imitate }
 21 I obey } thee
 22 I hear }
 I see to thee
 23 I avoid thee
 I make a caution, or I am careful for thee

 24 I give place to thee
 25 I go out of the City
 Give me a book
 26 I advise, or look to thee
 27 I ask advice of thee
 I resolve concerning thee
 28 It hapneth to me
 29 It toucheth me
 30 I favour thee
 31 I desire thee
 32 It is wanting to me
 33 He faileth me
 He revolteth from me.

- Illudo { tibi, } 8 Impertio { tibi fortunas meas
 { te, } { te fortunis meis
 Induo { tibi tunicam } 10 Instravit { equo penulam
 { te tunicâ } { equum penulâ
 1 Interdico tibi hanc rem, vel te hâc re
 2 Medicor { gnato tuo
 { istum morbum.
 3 Moderor { affectui, } 14 Obtreſto { laudem
 { affectum } { laudi
 5 Prestolor { tibi } 16 Prohibeo { te domo
 { te } { tibi domum
 7 Subeo { testum
 { testô
 9 In diversâ significatione. (videa
 Accedo { tibi, i. e. Assentior } 21 Emulor { tibi, i. e. In-
 { te, i. e. Adeo } { te, i. e. imitor
 Ausculto { tibi, i. e. Obedio
 { te, i. e. Audio
 caveo { tibi, i. e. periculum à te avertô
 { te } i. e. declino
 { à te }
 { de te, i. e. do aliquid ad cautionem
 Cedo { tibi
 { urbe
 { librum
 Consulo { tibi, i. e. consilium do, vel prospicio
 { te, i. e. consilium à te peto
 { in te, i. e. statuo
 Contingit { mihi, i. e. accidit
 { me, i. e. tangit
 Cupio { tibi, i. e. faveo
 { te, i. e. expeto
 { mihi, i. e. deest
 Desicit { me, i. e. destituit
 { à me, i. e. in alteram partem transiit

- 10 } I give or send } to carry to one;
 } letters to thee } to read.
 } I lend thee on usury
 11 } I borrow of thee on usury
 } I am sick of a Fever
 12 } I take pains for the publick safety
 } I am carefull for thee
 13 } I am affraid of thee
 } I remember thee
 14 } I speak of thee
 } I conquer the City
 15 } I obtain my desire
 } I promise you
 16 } I entertain you
 } I betake my self home
 } I report it to you
 17 } I propound it to you
 } I refuse a gift
 18 } I declare him Consul
 } I pay thee
 19 } I free thee
 } I endeavour this
 20 } I desire this
 } I labour about trifles
 21 } I have leisure for trifles
 } I am void of blame
 } The place is empty.
 Use will teach the rest.

s. XIX. Rule. Of the Infinitive mood.

XIX:

Of the Infinitive mood.

„ Verbs of the Infinitive mood are put after Verbs
 „ or Adjectives; as,
 Ponticus, wilt thou be made rich? Thou must
 fire nothing.

- 10 Do { tibi literas, i. e. ut ad aliquem feras
 Mitto { ad te literas, i. e. ut legas
 Fœnero, { tibi, i. e. do ad usuram
 11 Fœneror { abs te, i. e. accipio ad usuram
 12 Laboro { feбри
 { de salute publicâ
 Metuo, Timeo, { te, vel à te, i. e. ne mihi noceas
 13 Formido, { tibi, vel de te, i. e. sollicitus sum
 14 Memini tui, te, de te

15 Potior urbis. Potior voto

- 16 Recipio { tibi, i. e. promitto
 { te, i. e. accipio
 { domum, i. e. confero
 17 Refero { tibi, i. e. narro
 { ad te, i. e. propono
 18 Renuntio { mitteri, i. e. recuso
 { consulem, i. e. declaro
 19 Solvedo { tibi, i. e. satisfacio
 { te, i. e. libero
 20 Studeo { huic, i. e. operam do
 { hoc, i. e. cupio
 { nugis, i. e. operam do
 21 Vaco { ad nugas, i. e. otium habeo
 { culpa, i. e. careo
 Vacat locus.

Cætera docebit usus.

§. XIX. Regula. De Infinitivo modo.

XIX.

1. **V**erba Infinita quibusdam tum Verbis tum Ad- De Infinitivo modo.
 jectivis subjiciuntur, ut,
 Vis fieri dives, Pontice? nil cupias.

Et

And he was *worthy to be loved*;

Bold to endure all things. *Enduring to be called*.

1. *Obs.* They have an *Accusative* case before them in stead of a *Nominative*; as, *I bid thee to go hence*.

I bid thee be in good health.

Which may be resolved by *that*; as, *I bid that thou go hence*. I am glad *that thou art in good health*.

2. *Obs.* They have like cases before and after them; as, *An Hypocrite desireth to seem just*.

Nature hath granted to *all men to be happy*, if any knew how to use it.

3. *Obs.* They are sometimes put absolutely by *Ellipsis*; as,

That these villanies should be committed, i.e. It is fit
The Lamb trembled, i.e. Begun to tremble.

XX.

§. XX. The Rule of the Gerunds.

Of the Gerunds in

Gerunds and Supines will have such a case as the Verbs that they come of; as,

We must use age. To hear a sermon;

And they are as it were Nouns of both Numbers:

These in $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Di} \\ \text{Dum} \\ \text{Do} \end{array} \right\}$ of the $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Genitive} \\ \text{Accusative} \\ \text{Ablative} \end{array} \right\}$ Case,

An occasion of studying.

as $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Fit to study.} \\ \text{Weary with studying.} \end{array} \right.$

XXI.

Di.

Hence is it that,

1. The Gerund in *Di* may be used after certain Substantives and Adjectives that govern a *Genitive* case; as,

There is no place for telling.

The wicked love of having.

Certain of going. Skilfull in darting.

Et erat tum dignus amari.

Audax omnia perpeti. Patiens vocari.

1. *Obs.* Pro Nominativo Accusativum ante se statuit; ut, Jubeo te abire.

Gaudeo te bene valere.

Atque resolvuntur per quod & ut; ut, Jubeo, ut tu abas. Gaudeo, quod tu bene valeas.

2. *Obs.* Utrisque eisdem casus habent; ut,

Hypocrita cupit videri justus, vel se videri justum.

Natura beatīs omnibus esse dedit, si quis cognoverit uti.

3. *Obs.* Ponuntur interdum absolute per Ellip-
m; ut,

Hæccine fieri flagitia? i. e. decet.

Agnus trepidare? i. e. cæpit.

§. XX. Regula de Gerundiis.

XX

Gerundia & Supina regunt casus suorum Verborum; ut,

De Gerundiis in

viendum est ætate. Auditum concionem.

se habent ut nomina utriusque numeri.

In	{ Di Dum Do	tanquam	{ Genitivi Accusativi Ablativi	Casus.
----	----------------------	---------	---	--------

Occasio studendi.

Aptus ad studendum.

Fessus studendo.

Hinc est quod,

1. Gerundia in Di pendent à quibusdam tum

stantivis tum Adjectivis Genitivum regenti-

XXI

; ut,

Di.

Non est narrandi locus.

Amor sceleratus habendi.

Certus eundi. Peritus jaculandi.

R

I. Obs.

1. *Obs.* This Gerund is often joyned with a Genitive case Plural; as,

For the cause of seeing them.

Leave off getting apples.

Liberty of increasing new comedies.

2. *Obs.* The Infinitive mood is sometimes put in stead of this Gerund; as,

Skilfull to heal.

XXII.

Do,

2. Gerunds in *Do* be used with one of these Prepositions; *A, ab, abs, de, è ex, cum, in, pro*; as,

Idle boyes are quickly frightened from learning.

The manner of right writing is joyned with speaking.

1. *Obs.* Sometimes they are used without a Preposition; as,

we learn by teaching.

XXIII.

Dum,

3. The Gerund in *Dum* is used after one of the Prepositions, *Inter, ante, ad, ob, propter*; as,

In supper while be merry.

Christ died to redeem us.

1. *Obs.* When you have this English *must* or *ought* it may be put in the Gerund in *Dum*, with the Verb *est*, and a Dative case expressed or understood; as,

I must go hence. we ought to pray, that there may be a sound minde in a sound body.

N. B. Gerunds are often turned into Participles *Dum*, which agree with their Substantives; as,

In reading old Authors thou shalt profit.

It is the next to theft to be drawn on by a reward to accuse men.

1. *Obs.* Hoc Gerundium sæpissime conjungitur Gerundio plurali; ut,

Illorum videndi gratiâ.

Licentia diripiendi pomorum.

Crescendi copia novarum.

2. *Obs.* Infinitivus aliquando loco hujus Gerundii ponitur; ut,

Peritus medicari.

3. Gerundia in *Do* pendent ab his Præpositionibus;

A, ab, abs, de, è, ex, cum, in, pro; ut,

Ignavi à discendo citò deterrentur.

Rectè scribendi ratio cum loquendo conjuncta est.

XXII.

Do,

1. *Obs.* Ponuntur & absque Præpositione; ut,

Docendo discimus.

XXIII.

Dum,

3. Gerundia in *Dum* pendent ab his Præpositioni-

bus, *Inter, ante, ad, ob, propter;* ut,

Inter cœnandum hilares esse.

Christus moriebatur propter nos redimendum.

1. *Obs.* Cùm significatur necessitas, ponuntur citra Præpositionem, additò Verbo *est*, cum Dativo expresso

vel subintellecto; ut,

Abeundum est mihi. Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano.

N. B. Sæpe veruntur Gerundia in Participialia in-

Dus, quæ suis Substantivis conveniunt; ut,

Legendis veteribus proficies.

Ad Accusandos homines duci præmio proximum

latrocinio est.

XXIV

§. XXIV. Rule. Of Supines.

Of the
Supines,
um.

- I. **T**He *first Supine* is put after Verbs and Participles that betoken *moving to a place*; as,
They come to look on.
Why goest thou about to undo thy self.
 1. *Obs.* But these have a morion scarce discernable.
I set to sale. I bestow my daughter to be married.
 2. The Poets say, *I go to visit. I go to see.*

XXV

- II. *The later Supine* is put after Nouns Adjectives,
 as, *Easie to be done. Unhonest to be spoken.*

XXVI

§. XXVI. Rule. Of Time.

Of Time.

- N**Ouns are commonly used
 1. In the Ablative case, which betoken part of time; i.e. with answer to *when*; as,
No man is wise at all houres.
Thou wakest in the night, and sleepest in the day.
 2. In the Accusative case, which signifie continual term of Time, without ceasing or intermission; i.e. with answer to the question *how long*? as,
Thou sleepest the whole winter.
Black Pluto's gate lieth open night and day.
 1. *Obs.* Sometimes a Preposition is added; as,
Three moneths ago. About three years. In a few dayes. For a day. About that age. About that time.

§. XXIV. Regula. De Supinis.

XXIV.

Prius Supinum sequitur Verbum aut Participium significans motum ad locum; ut, *De Supinis*

Spectatum veniunt?

Cur te is perditum.

1. *Obs.* Illa verò, *Do venum, do filiam nuptum*, latentem habent motum.

2. Poëtice dicunt, *Go visere. Vado videre.*

II. Posterius Supinum sequitur nomina Adjectiva. XXV.

Facile factu. Turpe dictu.

§. XXVI. Regula. De Tempore.

XXVI

Requentius usurpantur

1. In Ablativo, quæ significant partem temporis. *De Tempore.*

i. e. quando? ut,

Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit.

Nocte vigilas, luce dormis.

2. In Accusativo, quæ durationem temporis denotant, *i. e. quamdiu? ut,*

Hyemem totam stertis.

Noctes atque dies patet atri janua Divis.

3. *Obs.* Interdum additur Præpositio; ut,

Ante tres menses. Per tres annos. In paucis diebus.

Proca id ætatis. Id tempus, per vel sub.

XXVII. §. XXVII. Rule. Of Space or distance of Place.

Of Space.

Nouns that betoken space between place and place be commonly put in the Accusative case, and sometimes in the Ablative; as,

Depart not a *foot-breadth* from a good conscience.
They are not *many paces* one from another.

XXVIII §. XXVIII. Rule. Of Nouns of Place.

Of Place.

Nouns of place, when they follow a Verb that signifieth action or motion,

1. *In a place, to a place, from a place, or by a place* (if they be Nouns Appellatives, or proper names of great places) be put with a Preposition; as,

He is *in the market*.

I live *in England*. He went hence *to the Church*.

He came *through France into Italy*.

He is gone *out of the town*.

1. *Obs.* But sometimes the Preposition is understood; as, He went *to Italy*.

2. *In a place, or at a place* (if they be proper names of Cities or Towns) of the first or second Declension and the singular Number, be put in the Genitive case. But if of the third Declension or Plural Number one in the Ablative; as,

What should I do *at Rome*?

He lived *at London*.

He was born *at Athens*.

I being unconstant love Tibur *at Rome*;

Rome *at Tibur*.

3. *To a place* (if they be proper names) are in the Accusative case; as,

I go *to London* to buy wares.

I went *to Cambridge*.

§. XXVII. Regula. De Spacio Loci.

XXVII.

Spacium loci in Accusativo effertur, interdum & in Ablativo; ut,

De Spacio.

A rectâ conscientiâ transversum *pedem* nē discedas.
Nec *multis* inter se *passibus* absunt.

§. XXVIII. Regula. De Loco.

XXVIII

Nomina loci, cū apponuntur Verbis significantibus actionem aut motum,

De Loco.

1. *In loco, ad locum, à loco, aut per locum* (si sint nomina Appellativa, vel nomina majorum locorum) adduntur ferè cum Præpositione; ut, *In foro* versatur.

Vivo in Anglia. Ad Templum abiit

Venit per Galliam in Italiam.

Profectus est ex oppido.

1. *Obs.* Sed omittitur aliquando Præpositio; ut, *Italiam* petiit.

2. *In loco aut ad locum* (si sint propria nomina Urbium aut oppidorum) primæ vel secundæ Declinationis & Singularis Numeri, Genitivum; sin tertiæ Declinationis & Pluralis duntaxat Numeri, Ablativum admittunt; ut,

Quid Romæ faciam?

Londini vixit.

Athenis natus est.

Rome *Tibur* anno ventosus, *Tibure* Romam.

3. *Ad locum* (si sint propria) ponuntur in Accusativo; ut,

Eo Londinum ad merces emendas,

Concessi Cantabrigiam.

4. From a place or by a place (if they be proper names) are put in the Ablative case; as,

He went *by London* to Cambridge.

He went *from London*.

Obs. *Humus, militia, bellum, domus* and *rus* do follow the rules of proper names of Cities or Towns; as,

We live together *at home*, and *in the wars*.

He was brought up *in the Country*.

I will go *into the Country*.

Go *home*.

He is returned *out of the Country*.

He is newly gone *from home*.

XXIX.

§.XXIX. Rule. Of government of Impersonals.

Of Impersonals,
I. Active.

I. Impersonals of the Active voice govern

I. A Genitive case, *viz.* *Interest, refert*, &c. *Est* for interest; as, *It concerneth all men to do well.*
It much concerneth a Christian Commonwealth, that the Bishops be learned and pious.

1. *Obs.* Except these Ablative cases, *Mea, tua, nostra, vestra* and *cujus*; as,
It is expedient to thee to know thy self.
It little concerneth you.

2. *Obs.* *Est* in such clauses as these is put for *li* after the Greek fashion; *viz.*
You may see.

Nor is it for any man to deceive you.

II. A Dative, *viz.* *Accidit, certum est, contingit, constat, confert*, &c. which be put acquisitively; as,
It is not lawfull for any man to sin.

It is better for me to dy manfully, than to live with disgrace.

I am resolved to run all hazards.

III. An Accusative, 1. Only, *viz.* *Juvat, deest*, &c. *Est, oportet*; as, *It becometh not men to scold like women.*
2. *Wh*

4. A loco aut per locum, (si sint propria) ponuntur Ablativo; ut,
Profectus est Londino (vel per Londinum) Cantabrigiam. Discessit Londino.
Obs. Humus, militia, bellum, domus & rus, propriis sequuntur formam; ut,
Domi bellique simul viximus.
Rure educatus est.
Ego rus ibo.
Ite domum.
Rure reversus est.
Nuper domo exiit.

XXIX. Regula. De Regimine Impersonalium. XXIX

Impersonalia activæ vocis regunt

I. Genitivum, viz. *Interest, refert, & est pro* De Imper-
Interest; ut, Interest omnium rectè agere. sonalibus,
Refert multum Christianæ Reipublicæ, Episcopos do- I. Activis
ctos & pios esse.

1. *Obs. Præter Ablativos meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ,*
strâ & cuja; ut,
Tuâ refert te ipsum nôsse.
Vestrâ parvi interest.

2. *Obs. Est in huiusmodi clausulis ponitur pro licet*
imitationem Græcorum; viz.

Videre est.
Neque est te fallere cuique.

II. Dativum, viz. *Accidit, certum est, contingit, constat,*
refert, &c. quæ acquisitivè ponuntur; ut,
Peccare nemini licet.

Emori per virtutem mihi præstat, quàm per dedecus vivere.

Stat mihi casus renovare omnes.

III. Accusativum 1. solùm, viz. *Fuvat, decet, delectat,*
et, &c. ut, Dedecet viros muliebriter rixari.

2. Cum

2. With the Prepositiō *ad*, viz. *attinet*, *pertinet*, *spectat*.
It belongeth to thee. It belongeth to all men to live well.

3. With a Genitive, viz. *Poenitet*, *taedet*, *miseret*,
miserescit, *puget*, *piget*; as,

It repenteth every one of his own estate.

It irketh me of my life.

2. Passives.

II. Impersonals of the Passive voice have such
cases as other Verbs Passive have; as

Neither is there sowing nor mowing there for me.

He is gone to Athens. They slept all night.

The enemies fought stoutly.

1. Obs. Yet many times the case is not exprest;

What do they in the School? they ply their books.

Chap. 6.

XXX.

6. Of Participles.

§.XXX. Rule. Of the Government of Participles.

Participles govern such cases as the Verb that
come of; as, *Like to enjoy his friends.*

Taking order for thee. called the seven wise men.

1. Obs. But when they be changed into Nouns
will have a Genitive case; as,

Greedy of another man's goods. Most desirous of it.

2. Obs. Participials in *Dux* will have a Dative case,
as, *He is to be earnestly entreated by me.*

3. Obs. *Exosus* and *perosus* having the active signification,
will have an Accusative case; as,

Hating cruelly.

But having the Passive, a Dative; as,

Hated of God and good men.

4. Obs. *Pertusus* will have a Genitive or an Accusative case; as, *weary of wedlock. weary of his sluggishness.*

5. Obs. *Natus*, *prognatus*, *satus*, *creatus*, *creatus*, *ortus*, *editus*, will have an Ablative case; as,

Of those that are born of a Goddess!

A good woman come of good parents.

Of what blood is he come?

Cum Præpositione ad, viz. Attinet, pertinet, spectat;
Ad te attinet. Spectat ad omnes bene vivere.

3. Cum Genitivo, viz. Pœnitet, tædet, miseret, mi-
rescit, pudet, piget; ut,
Sux quemcunque fortuna pœnitet.
Tædet me vite.

II. Impersonalia passivæ vocis similes cum Perso- 2. Passivis.
alibus passivis casus obtinent; ut,
Mibi istic nec feritur, nec metitur.
Iur Athenas. Dormitur totam noctem.
Ab hostibus constanter pugnatur.

1. Obs. Sed & horum casus interdum non exprimun-
tur; ut, Quid agitur in ludo literario? Studetur.

Cap. 6.

XXX. Regula. De Regimine Participiorum. XXX.

Participia regunt casus suorum Verborum; ut,
Fruiturus amicis.

6. Participiorum.

Consulens tibi. Septem vocati sapientes.

1. Obs. Sed cum fiunt nomina Genitivum postu-
latur; ut,

Alieni appetens. Cupientissimus tuus.

2. Obs. Quæ in Dns verò Dativum; ut,

Mibi exorandus est.

3. Obs. Exosus & perosus activè significantia regunt
Accusativum; ut,

Exosus servitiam.

Passivè verò Dativum; ut,

Exosus Deo & sanctis.

4. Obs. Pertesus nunc Genitivum, nunc Accusativum
regit, ut, Pertesus thalami. Pertesus ignaviam suam.

5. Obs. Natus, prognatus, satus, cretus, creatus, ortus,
ditus, in Ablativum feruntur; ut,

Nate Dea.

Bona bonus progenera parentibus.

Quo sanguine cretus?

6. Peris

6. The words put in stead of a Verb by way of cumlocution doe sometimes governe the case of Verb; as, *He doth earnestly minde that.*
Doe you perswade me to that?

XXXI.

Chap. 7. §. XXXI. Rule. Of the Government of Adverbs.

1. Of Adverbs which govern cases.

7. Adverbs
 1. With
 Case.

ADverbs govern
 I. A Nominative case, viz. *Ecce*, and *E*
behold, being Adverbs of Shewing; as,
Behold Priam. Loe two Altars.

1. Obs. But being Adverbs of upbraiding, they have an Accusative; as,

See his habit or fashion. Look thou the other fellow.

II. A Genitive, viz. Adverbs of quantity, time and place; as, *In what Country. To what land.*
that time. An abundance of tales. words enough.
Part of the men.

1. Obs. So also *Ergò* for *Causà*; as, *For his sake.*

2. Obs. *Prædie* the day before, and *Postdiæ* the day after, will have a Genitive or an Accusative case;
The day before that day. The day after the Kalends.

3. Obs. *Minimè gentium* in no wise, is a phrase, or manner of speech.

III. A Dative, viz. such as be derived of Nouns that govern a Dative case; as, *He came to meet him.*
He singeth like him. He liveth unprofitable to himself.

1. Obs. These Datives be used Adverbially, *Temporè* betime, *lucè* by day, *vesperè* at even; as,
We must rise betime. We must go to bed at even.
We must take pains by day.

IV. An Accusative case of the Preposition they come of; as, *Nearer the City. Next to Spain.*

N.B. *P*

of 9. Periphrasis etiam verbi aliquando regit casum
of us; ut,
Id studiosè operam dat, i. e. curat:
Idne estis autores mihi? i. e. id suadetis.

Cap. 7. §. XXXI. Regula. De Regimine
Adverbiorum.

XXXII

1. De Adverbiis quæ casus regunt.

Dverbia regunt,

I. Nominativum, viz. En & Ecce, demonstrandi; 7. Adver-
En Priamus. Ecce duo altaria. biorum.
1. Cum
Casu,

Obs. Exprobanis verò Accusativo junguntur;
En habitum: Ecce alterum.

II. Genitivum, viz. Adverbia loci, temporis; &
quantitatis; ut, Vbi gentium. Quò terrarum. Tunc
temporis. Abundè fabularum. Satis verborum.
Partim virorum.

Obs. Sic & ergò pro causâ, ut, Illius ergò.

Obs. Pridie & Postridie Genitivum aut Accusa-
tivum regunt; ut, Pridie ejus diei:

Postridie Kalendas, sive Kalendarum.

Obs. Minimè gentium peculiaris phrasis est:

III. Dativum, viz. quæ derivantur à Nominibus
regentibus; ut, Venit obviam illi.

Canit similiter huic. Sibi inutiliter vivit.

Obs. Sunt & hi Dativi Adverbiales, Temporis, lucis,
esperis; ut,

Temporis surgendum: Vesperis cubandum.

Lucis laborandum.

IV. Accusativum Præpositionis unde sunt præ-
positiones; ut, Propius urbem. Proximè Hispaniam.

N.B. Plur.

N.B. *Plus, minus, amplius*, will have a Nominative, a Genitive, a Dative, and an Ablative case; as,
*Above three hundred wagons; Above fifty miles;
 Above half a mile; More than that.*

2. Of Adverbs, which govern Moods.

2. With a Mood.

1. *Ubi* when, *postquam* after that, *cum* when, govern an Indicative; as, *when I shall sacrifice an heifer for my fruits, come thou.*

Or a Subjunctive; as, *when I sung of Kings, warres, Apollo pulled me by the ear.*

2. *Donec* untill govern's an Indicative; as, *Untill he had to fold the sheep and count them.*
 Or a Subjunctive; as *untill that water, which thou hast set on, be boiled.*

Donec as long as, an Indicative; as,
As long as I was safe.

3. *Dum* whilst, or as long as, govern's an Indicative, as, *whilst the maid is making ready.*

As long as thou doest what becometh thee.

Dum so that, or untill, doth govern a Subjunctive, as, *So that I may profit thee.*

Untill the third Summer shall see him reigning Italy.

4. *Quoad* as long as, govern's an Indicative; as, *As long as thou expectest thy Chamber-fellow.*

Or a Subjunctive; as, *As long as I could,*

Quoad untill doth govern a Subjunctive; as,
I will keep all things safe till the Army be hither.

5. *Simulac & simulatque* as soon as, do govern Indicative; as, *As soon as he was able to abide war.*

Or a Subjunctive; as, *As soon as his age waxed ripe.*

6. *Quemadmodum* as, *ut* as, *utrumque* as, *sicut* as, do govern

N.B Plus, minùs, ampliùs, Nominativo, Genitivo, Accusativo, & Ablativo junguntur ; ut,
Plus trecenta vehicula Plus quinquaginta hominum;
Plus quingentos passus. Plus eo.

2. De Adverbiis, quæ Modos regunt.

Ubi, postquam, & cùm, Indicativum regunt ; ut, ^{2. Cum}
Cùm faciam vitulâ pro frugibus, ipse venito. ^{Modo.}

Subjunctivum ; ut,

Cùm canerem Reges, & prælia, Cynthius aurem vellit.

2. Donec pro quousque regit Indicativum ; ut,

Cogere donec oves stabulis numerumq; referre jussit.

ut Subjunctivum ; ut,

Donec ea aqua, quam adjeceris, decocta sit.

Donec pro quamdiu regit Indicativum ; ut,

Donec eram sospes.

Dum de re imperfectâ, regit Indicativum ; ut,

Dum apparatur virgo.

Dum quod te dignum est facis.

Dum pro quamdiu, dummodo, & donec, regit Subjunctivum ; ut, *Dum profim tibi;*

Tertia dum Latio regnantem viderit ætas.

Quoad pro quamdiu, Indicativum regit ; ut,

Quoad expectes contubernalem.

Aut Subjunctivum ; ut, *Quoad possem & liceret.*

Quoad pro donec regit Subjunctivum ; ut,

Omnia integra servabo, quoad exercitus huc mittatur.

5. Simulac, Simulatque Indicativum regunt ; ut,

Simulac belli patiens erat.

Vel Subjunctivum ; ut, *Simulatque adoleverit ætas.*

Quemadmodum, ut, utcumque, sicut, regunt Indicativum ;

verb an Indicative ; as, *As thou salutesſt*, ſo ſhalt thou be ſaluted again.

Or a Subjunctive ; as, *As thou ſhalt ſow* ; ſo ſhalt thou reap.

Ut after that, doth govern an Indicative ; as, *After that they came* into the city.

7. *Quaſi* as, *ceu* as, *tanquam* as, *perinde acſi* like as, *Haud ſecus acſi*, no otherwiſe than as, do govern a Subjunctive ; as,

As though we knew not our ſelves among our ſelves And theſe alſo couple like caſes ; as,

I knew the man even as thy ſelf.

He ſmileth on me as on a friend.

8. *Nē* nor, an Adverb of Forbidding doth govern an Imperative ; as, *Be not ſo wroth*,

Or a Subjunctive ; as, *This is a great knave, do not fear him.*

XXXII

Chap. 8. §. XXXII. Rule. Of the Government of Conjunctions.

1. Of Conjunctions which do couple Words.

§. Of Conjunctions which do couple.

Conjunctions Copulatives and Diſjunctives, and theſe four *quā*, *niſi*, *præterquam*, *an*, do couple like caſes, and moſt commonly like moods and tenſes as, *The night, and love, and wine* do perſwade no moderate thing.

He is younger than thou art.

He pleaſeth no body. but himſelf.

Peter and John did pray and preach in the Temple.

1. *Obſ.* But oftentimes ſome particular reaſons, words, requireth divers caſes, moods and tenſes ; as,

I bought a book for an hundred aſſes and more.

I lived at Rome and at Venice.

I gave thee thanks, and will do ſo whilſt I live.

um; ut, *Vt salutabis, ita & tefalutaberis.*

Aur Subjunctivum; ut, *Vt sementem feceris, ita & meres.*

Vt pro postquam Indicativum regit; ut,
Vt ventum est in Urbem.

7 *Quasi, ceu, tanquam, perinde ac si, haud secus ac si,*
regunt Subjunctivum; ut,

Quasi non norimus nos inter nos.

que hæc copulant similes casus; ut,

Novi hominem tanquam te.

Arridet mihi quasi amico.

8. *Nè* Prohibendi Imperativum regit; ut,

Nè sevi tantopere.

Aur Subjunctivum; ut, *Hic nebulo magnus est, nè metuas.*

Cap. 8. §. XXXII. Regula. De Regimine Conjunctionum.

XXXII.

1. De Conjunctionibus quæ voces copulant.

Conjunctiones Copulativæ & Disjunctivæ, cum
his quatuor, *quàm, nisi, præterquam, an,* similes
omnino casus, & aliquoties similes modos & tem-
pora conglutinant; ut, *Nox, & Amor, vniûsq;*
nihil moderabile suadent.

Est minor natu quàm tu.

Nemini, nisi sibi, placet.

Petrus & Joannes precabantur & docebant in templo

Obs. Sæpe verò dictionum aliqua privata ratio

græcos casus, modos & tempora postulat; ut,

mi librum centissi & pluris.

Vixi Romæ & Venetiis.

Sibi gratias egi, atque agam dum vivo.

8. De Con-
junctioni-
bus 1. quæ
copulant,

2. Obs.

2. *Obf.* *Cum* and *tum*, and *tum* being doubled, couple like cases ; as,

He embraceth all learned men, but especially *Al-
cellus*. He hateth both learning and virtue.

2. Of Conjunctions which govern Moods.

2. Govern
Moods.

1 *Etsi* although, *tametsi* although, *etiamsi* although
quamquam [although, in the beginning of

Speech govern an Indicative ; as,

Though no news was brought.

But in the middle of a Speech a Subjunctive ;

Thou blamest me, *though thou hast done it thy self*.

2. *Quamvis* although, *licet* although, commonly
govern a Subjunctive ; as,

Though thou comest thy self.

3. *Ni* except, *nisi* unless, *si* if, *siquidem* if so be,
that, *quia* because, *quam* than, *postquam* after, *postea*
after that, *ubi* for *postquam*, *numquam* never, *priusquam*
before that, do

govern { An Indicative, } as, { I am glad that thou
or,
Subjunctive, } art returned safe.

Si if, doth govern an Indicative ; as,

If thou beest well, it is well.

Or a Subjunctive ; as, *If thou shalt deny*, thou
be whipt.

Si used for *quamvis* though, a Subjunctive ;

No not *though she intreat me*.

4. *Quando* seeing that, *quandoquidem* seeing that
nam because, do govern an Indicative ; as,

Say on, *seeing that we sit together on the soft*

5. *Quippe* because, doth govern an Indicative
Because he is sick.

2 *Obs.* *Cum* & *tum*, item *tum* geminarum, similes casus copulant; ut,
Amplectitur cum eruditos omnes, tum inprimis Marcellum. Odit tum literas, tum virtutes.

2. De Conjunctionibus quæ Modos regunt.

E *rsi*, *tametsi*, *etiãsi*, *quanquam*, in principio Oracionis regunt Indicativum; ut,
Ersi, nihil novi afferebatur. 2. Regunt Modos.

Sed in medio Oracionis, Subjunctivum; ut,
Me culpas, etiãsi ipse feceris.

2 *Quamvis*, & *licet* frequentius Subjunctivum regunt; ut,
Ipse licet venias.

3 *Ni*, *nisi*, *si*, *siquidem*, *quod*, *quia*, *quã*, *postquam*, *posteaquam*, *ubi* pro *postquam*, *nunquam*, *pruſquam*,
 regunt { Indicativum, } ut, { *Quod tu redisti,*
 aut, } *(vel redieris) incolu-*
 Subjunctivum, } *mis, gaudeo.*

Si regit { Indicativum; ut, *Si vales, bene est.*
 &
 Subjunctivum; ut, *Si negaveris, vapulabis.*

Si pro *quamvis* Subjunctivum; ut,
Non; si me abscret.

4 *Quando*, *quandoquidem*, & *quoniam* regunt Indicativum; ut,

Dicite, quandoquidem in molli cõsedimus herbe.

Quippe regit Indicativum; ut,

Quippe exorat.

Quippe qui as he that, doth govern an Indicative,
Subjunctive; as,

As he hath twice forsworn himself.

Qui, when *quippe* is understood, signifying a Cause
a Subjunctive; as,

Thou art a fool to believe this fellow, i. e. because
thou believest.

6. *Cum* for *quamvis* although, *quandoquidem* seeing
that, *quoniam* because, govern a Subjunctive; as,
Seeing thou art fit.

7. *Ne, an, num*, whether of asking, will have an In-
dicative; as, *whether is he alive or no?*

Of Doubting, a Subjunctive; as,

See whether he be returned?

8. *Ut* to the end that, for *ne non* lest not, for *quamvis*
quam although, and *utpote* because, govern's a Sub-
junctive, as, *To the end that he might be with you.*

I am afraid he cannot stand it out.

Though all things fall out as I would:

Because thou hast deceived me so oft.

ut for *postquam* after that, *quemadmodum* even as,
as, or used in Asking, will have an Indicative;

After that I went from the city:

Go on to do, as thou doest.

Like as is his madness: How doth he?

XXXIII. Chap. 9. §. XXXIII. Rule. Of the Govern- men of Prepositions.

9. Of Pre-
positions.

I. **T**hirty Prepositions govern an Accusative

- viz.*
- 1 To the Church,
 - 2 At the market,
 - 3 Before death,
 - 4 Against two,

- 5 Towards thee,
- 6 On this side Thames,
- 7 On this side the River,
- 8 About the town.

Quippe qui, Indicativum & Subjunctivum ; ut,
Quippe qui bis pejeravit, sive pejeraveris.

Qui, cum *quippe* subintelligitur, habens vim Causalem, Subjunctivum ; ut,
Stultus es qui huic credas.

6. *Cum* pro *quamvis*, *quandoquidem*, & *quoniam*, regit Subjunctivum ; ut,
Cum sis aptus.

7. *Nē, an, num*, Interrogandi regunt Indicativum ;
Superātne ?
 Dubitandi, Subjunctivum ; ut,
Vise num redierit.

8. *Ut*, causalis, & pro *nē non*, pro *quaquequam*, & *quippe*, Subjunctivum regit ; ut,
ut unā esset tecum.

Metuo ut substat.
ut omnia contingant, quæ volo.
Ut qui toties fefelleris.

Ut pro *postquam*, *quemadmodum*, *sicut*, & Interrogandi regit Indicativum ; ut,
Ut ab urbe discessi.

Perge facere, ut facis.
ut est dementia. ut valet ?

Cap. 9. §. XXXIII. Regula, De Regimine Propositionum.

XXXIII.

Triginta Propositiones Accusativum regunt ;
viz.

Ad Ecclesiam
Aquod forum
Ante obitum
Adversus dyos

5 *Adversam te*
 6 *Cis Tamesin*
 7 *Citra fluvium*
 8 *Circa oppidum*

9. Propositionum.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 9 About the hill | 20 Through the plain fields |
| 10 About two thousand | 21 Behinde the back |
| 11 Against the prick | 22 After death |
| 12 Towards the people | 23 Besides the cottage |
| 13 Without the house | 24 For my Neighbour |
| 14 Betwixt the cups & the lip | 25 According to Aristotle |
| 15 Within the house | 26 By the water-courses |
| 16 Below all men | 27 Above his capacity |
| 17 By the well | 28 Beyond the Alps |
| 18 For a reward | 29 Towards London |
| 19 In his power | 30 Beyond the Indians |

II. And twelve govern an Ablative case, viz.

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1 From God | 7 Concerning trifles |
| 2 From an enemy | 8 Out of a well |
| 3 Of any body | 9 From an high rock |
| 4 Without money | 10 Before all things |
| 5 Before the master | 11 Without bread |
| 6 With loss | 12 For the poor |

III. Five governe an Accusative and an Ablative case

- | | |
|--|-------------------|
| 1 Privy to his father | |
| 2 { Into the house | 4 Upon a stone |
| { In the house | |
| 3 { A little before night | 5 Under the earth |
| { In the night | |
| 6. So Procul when it is a Preposition; as,
Far from the City. Far from the wall.
To which you may adde Tenuis up to; as,
Up to the privy parts.
Up to the breasts. Up to the ears. | |

1. Obs. A Preposition is often understood; as,
I expect to-day, or at the furthest to-morrow.
He appeared in the shape of a man

1	Circum montem	20	Per campos
2	Circiter duo millia	21	Ponè tergum
3	Contra stimulum	22	Post mortem
4	Erga populum	23	Præter casam
5	Extra ades	24	Propter vicinum
6	Inter calicem & labrum	25	Secundùm Aristot elem
7	Intra domum	26	Secus decursus aquarum
8	Infra omnes	27	Supra captum
9	Juxta fontem	28	Trans Alpes
10	Ob præmium	29	Londinum versùs
11	Penès illum	30	Ultra Indos

II. Duodecim verò regunt Ablativum, viz.

1	A Deo	7	De nugis
2	Ab inimico	8	E fonte
3	Abs quovis	9	Ex altâ rupe
4	Absque pecuniâ	10	Præ omnibus
5	Coram præceptore	11	Sine pane
6	Cum damno	12	Pro pauperibus

III. Quinque regunt Accusativum & Ablativum.

1	Clem { patrem patre	4	Super { lapidem lapide
2	In { tectum tectò	5	Subter { terram terra
3	Sub { noctem nocte		

6. Item Procul quando fit Præpositio; ut,
Procul urbem. Procul muro.

Quibus addas Tenuis; ut,

Pube tenuis.

Pectoribus tenuis. Aurium tenuis.

1. Obs. Præpositio sæpe subaudiuntur; ut,

Exspectat hodie, aut sumum gras.

Apparuit t humanæ specie.

t Sub.

* Ad.

2. obs.

2. *Obs.* And oft times it is more than needs; as
Abstain from vices. I will call my friends to this matter.

3. *Obs.* A Preposition in composition doth sometimes govern the same case, which it governed being without composition; as,

I pass by thee unsaluted. I leave my office.

4. *Obs.* These seem to be singular expressions; as
To go out of the doores.

To prevent the windes in running.

XXXIV. Chap. 10. §. XXXIV. Rule. Of the Government of Interjections.

10. Interjections.

Certain Interjections govern cases, *viz.*

1. *O* of Exclamation, a Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative; as,

O glad some day! O happy husbandman! O pretty boy!
 But of calling, a Vocative onely; as,

Come hither O Galatée!

2. *Heus*, and *ohé*, a Vocative; as,

O Syrus! Ho little book!

3. *Pro* and *proh*, *ah* and *vah*, an Accusative and Vocative; as *O the faith of God and man!*

O holy Jupiter! Ah me poor man! Ah the inconstancy!

Alas unhappy maid! Oh you villain!

4. *Hem*, a Nominative, Dative, and Accusative; as,

Alas the godliness. O the hated stock.

Alas for me poor man.

5. *Hem* and *apage*, an Accusative; as, *Fie upon crass!*

See Davus for you. Away with such complements!

6. *Hei* and *ue*, a Dative; as, *wo is me.*

wo be to thee.

1. *Obs.* Interjections are often put without a case

Alas, I am afraid.

What madness, with a mischief?

2. *Obs.*

2. *Obs.* Sæpe verò redundat; ut, *Abstine à vitiis. Amicos advocabo ad hanc rem.*
3. *Obs.* Præpositio in compositione eundem nonnunquam casum regit quem & extra compositionem regebat; ut,
Prætereo te insalutatum. Decedo magistratu.
4. *Obs.* *Limen exire. Cursu prævenire ventos, &c.* videntur singularia.

Cap. 10. §. XXXIV. Regula. De Regimine Interjectionum.

XXXIV.

QUædam Interjectionum regunt casus, viz.
1. *O* Exclamantis, Nominativum, Accusativum, & Vocativum; ut,

10. Interjectionum.

O festus dies! O fortunatos agricolas! O formose puer!
Vocantis verò Vocativum tantum; ut,

Hue ades ô Galatæa.

2. *Heus* & *ohe*, Vocativum; ut,
Heus Syre! Ohe libelle!

3. *Pro* & *proh*, *ab* & *vah*, Accusativum & Vocativum; ut, *Proh Deum atque hominum fidem!*

Proh sancte Jupiter! Ab me miserum! Vah instantiam! Ab virgo infelix! Vah scelus!

4. *Heu*, Nominativum, Dativum & Accusativum; ut,
Heu pietas. Heu stirpem invisam.
Heu misero mihi.

5. *Hem* & *apage*, Accusativum; ut, *Hem astutias. Hem Davum tibi. Apage istiusmodi salutem.*

6. *Hei* & *ve* Dativum; ut, *Hei mihi.*
Ve tibi.

1. *Obs.* Interjectiones non rarò absolute & sine casu ponuntur; ut,

Hei vereor. Quæ malum dementia?

2. *Obs.*

2. *Obs.* And they are often understood ; as,
O me poor wretch! O the base prank!
I think you wonder, *Sws* !

Chap. 11.

XXXV, §. XXXV. Rule. Of the Figures of a word.

Of Figures,
1. Of a
Word.

Figure is a kinde of speaking on some new fashion ; or, the altering of a word or speech from the usual manner of speaking, and that by authority of good writers.

Figure is { 1. Of a word: } which } Etymology;
 of two } belongs }
 sorts, { 2. Of Construction: } to } Syntax.

A Figure of a word (or that which belongs to Etymology) is that which any way changeth the form of a word ; and these be its chief kindes :

1. *Prosthesis*, is the putting a letter or syllable to the beginning of a word ; as, *Gnatus* for *natus*, *te-tuli* for *tuli*.

2. *Aphæresis*, is the taking a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word ; as, *Ruit* for *eruit*, *temnere* for *contemnere*.

3. *Epenthesis*, is the putting of a letter or syllable into the middle of a word ; as, *Religio* for *religio*, *induperator* for *imperator*.

4. *Syncope*, is the taking a letter or syllable from the middle of a word, as, *Abiit* for *abivvit*, *dixi* for *dixisti*.

5. *Paragoge*, is the putting of a letter or syllable to the end of a word ; as, *Dicitur* for *dici*, *emoviet* for *emovi*.

6. *Apocope*, is the taking of a letter or syllable from the end of a word ; as, *ingenti* for *ingenii*.

7. *Diæresis*, is the dividing of one syllable into two, as, *Anlæi* for *anla*, *evoluisse* for *evoluisse*.

8. *Synæresis*,

De Figuris I Dictionis

§. XXXV. Regula. De Figuris dictionis. XXXV.

8. Syncretism,

8. *Synerefsis*, is the contracting of two vowels into one syllable, which belong to two diverse syllables; as, *Thesēi* for *Thesēi*, *vēmēns* for *vehemens*.

9. *Metathesis*, is the mis-placing of a letter or syllable; as, *Pistris* for *pristis*, a long ship.

10. *Antithesis*, or *Antistachon*, is the putting of a letter for a letter; as, *Olli* for *illi*.

11. *Tmesis*, is the parting of a compound word between the parts whereof another is put; as, *Que mihi inique placent*. What things soever please me.

12. *Enallage*, is the putting of the Parts of Speech or their Accidents one for another; as, *The people being as King*, i. e. *ruling all abroad*. *Agnus trepidare* for *trepidabat*, *The Lamb did tremble*.

13. *Archaismus*, is an old fashion of speaking, which is now out of use; as, *Valde tonit* for *tonuit*, *It thunder exceedingly*. *Tam nulli consili*, *So void of counsel*. *Operam abuti*, *To bestow his labour to a wrong end*.

14. *Metaplasms*, is any change (at all) in a word; as, *Agreste* for *agrestis*.

Chap. 12.

XXXVI.

§.XXXVI. Rule. Of the Figures of Construction.

2. Of Construction.

A *Figure of Construction*, is that which any way changeth the frame of a Speech. Its kinds are,

1. *Appositio*, is the putting together of two or more Substantives in the same case; as, *The River Rhine*. *The City Athens*. *M, T. C.*

And it is } 1. *Restrain generality*; as, *A living creature, an horse.*

either to } 2. *Take away Equivocation*; as, *The dog-star.*

3. *To attribute a propriety to one*; as, *Erasmus a man of most exact judgement.*

Synopsis

8 *Synæresis*, (sive *complexio*) est contractio duarum vocalium (quæ ad diversas syllabas pertinent) in unam syllabam; ut, *Thesēi*, pro *Thesēi*, *vēmens* pro *vehemens*.

9 *Metathesis*, (sive *trajectio*) est transpositio literæ vel syllabæ; ut, *Pistris* pro *pristis*.

10. *Antithesis*, sive *Antistæchon*, (sive *oppositio*) est positio literæ pro literâ; ut, *Olli* pro *illi*.

11 *Tmesis*, est dissectio vocis compositæ, cujus partis alia interponitur; ut, *Quæ mihi cunque placeant*.

12. *Enallage* (sive *Antimeria*) partes Orationis, eamque Accidentia alia pro aliis ponit; ut, *Populam latè regem*, i. e. regnantem. *Agnus trepidare*, pro *trepidabat*.

13 *Archaismus*, est vetus & jam obsoletus loquendi mos; ut, *Valdè tonit*, pro *tonuit*, *Tam nulli consili*, pro *nullius consilii*, *Operam abuti*.

14 *Metaplasmus*, (sive *transformatio*) est quævis mutatio vocis; ut, *Agreste* pro *agresti*.

Cap. 12.

§. XXXVI. Regula. De Figuris Constructionis.

XXXVI.

Figura Syntaxeos sive *Constructionis*, est quæ orationis structuram aliquo modo mutat. Ejus Species sunt,

2. Constructio.

1. *Appositio*, est duorum vel plurium Substantivorum ejusdem casus conjunctio; ut, *Flumen Rhenus, urbs Athenæ*. M. T. C.

1. Restringendæ generalitatis; ut, *Animal equus*.

2. Tollendæ æquivocationis; ut, *Canis astrum*.

3. Ad proprietatem attribuendam; ut, *Erasmus vir exactissimo judicio*.

2. *Syllepsis*,

2. *Syllepsis*, is the comprehending of the more unworthy gender or person under the more worthy ; as,

I and my brother are white. Mars and Venus, both being naked, lie tied fast together in the snares.

3. *Prolepsis*, is a brief expression of things ; as,
Two Eagles flew, this from the East, that from the West. The people live, some in want, some in delights. Bear ye one another's burdens. Let both of us take an equal share.

4. *Zeugma*, is the bringing back of one Verb or Adjective to diverse Suppositives, to one expressly, and to the other by supplying it ; as,

John was a Fisher, and Peter.

The husband and the wife is angry :

5. *Synthesis*, is a Speech which agreeth in sense though not in words ; as, *An armed nation fall on we are both hurt: A brood goos: Two thousand slain*

6. *Antiphrasis*, is the putting one case for another ; as,
All kinde of elegancy: Are ye autors of it?

7. *Synecdoche*, is when that which belongs to a part is spoken of the whole ; as,

A Blackmoor having white teeth: wounded in the forehead: Flowers that have the names of Kings written on them.

8. *Ellipsis*, is the want of a word in a Speech ; as,
I remember that (I saw :)

I (thought) presently with my self:

9. *Pleonasmus*, is the abounding of a word in a Speech beyond any necessity of it ; as,

I saw it with these eyes :

I slaughtered him with his own sword :

10. *Asyndeton*, is the want of Conjunctions in Speech ; as, *It shall be done will thou, will thou:*

Eat, drink, play :

11. *Polyzydeton*, is an over-plus of Conjunctions in a Speech ; as,

2. *Syllepsis*, est comprehensio indignioris generis vel personæ sub digniore; ut,
Ego & frater sumus candidi.
Mars & Venus, impliciti laqueis, nudus uterq; jacer.
3. *Prolepsis*, est pronuntiatio quædam rerum summaria; ut, *Due aquila volaverunt, hæc ab Oriente, illa ab Occidente. Populus vivit, alii in penuriâ, alii in deliciis. Alter alterius onera portate. Curemus æquam uterque partem.*
4. *Zeugma*, est Verbi vel Adjectivi, ad diversa Supposita reductio, ad unum quidem expressè, ad alterum verò per supplementum; ut,
Joannes fuit piscator & Petrus.
Maritus & uxor est irata.
5. *Synthesis*, est Oratio congrua sensu non voce; ut,
Gens armati ruunt.
Uterque lassus sumus. Anser facta. Duo millia cæsi.
6. *Antiptosis*, est positio casus pro casu; ut, *Omne genus elegantia, i. e. omnis generis. Idne estis autores? i. e. ejus.*
7. *Synecdoche* est, cum id quod partis est, attribuitur toti; ut, *Æthiops albus dentes. Sancius frontem, vel fronte. Flores inscripti nomina Regum.*
8. *Ellipsis*, est, defectio vocis in Oratione; ut,
*Memini * videre, i. e. * me.*
*Ego continuo * mecum, i. e. * cogitabam.*
9. *Pleonasmus*, est abundantia vocis in Oratione supra necessitatem; ut,
Vidi his oculis.
Suo sibi hunc jugulo gladio.
10. *Afyndeton*, est Conjunctionum in Oratione defectus; ut, *Velis, nolis, fiet.*
Æde, bibe, lude.
11. *Polysyndeton* est Conjunctionum in Oratione redundantia; at,

Sleep, and wine, and good chear, and whores, and baths, do weaken men's bodies and minds.

12 *Anastrophe*, is when a Preposition is set before its case; as,

The command is *in thy power*.

13. *Synchysis*, is a confused order of words; as,

¹For ²it is ³bad ⁴for ⁵such ⁶as have ⁷blear'd-eyes and raw
stomacks to play at ball.

14 *Hypallage*, is a placing of words contrariwise; as,

To commit the South-windes to the ships.

15. *Hellenismus*, is a going from the Latine use to imitate the Greeks; as,

Do not fight *against two*.

The rest which belong rather to the handsomeing, than the making of a Speech, are to be sought for among the Rhetoricians.

Somnus, & vinum; & epulæ, & scorta, & balnea corpora atque animos enervant.

*Anastrophe, est cum Præpositio suo casui post-
nitur; ut,
Te penes imperium.*

Synchysis, est ordo Verborum confusus; ut;

Namque pilâ lippis inimicum & ludere crudis;

14. Hypallage, est mutua casuum permutatio;

Dare classibus Austros.

*5. Hellenismus, sive Græcismus est recessus à Latinâ
consuetudine in imitationem Græcorum; ut,
Noli pugnare duobus, i. e. contra duos.*

*Ætææ, quæ ad ornatum magis Orationis, quàm
structuram ejus spectant, à Rhetoricis inquiren-
te sunt.*

F

LIB.



LIB. IV.

OF PROSODIE.

IV.
Prosodie,

PROSODIE is the fourth part of Grammar which teacheth the right pronunciation of words. A right pronunciation is that which observeth in every word, the Spirit, Tone, and time of the Syllables.

Prosodia there-fore teacheth

} } }	1. Of the Spirits.	} Chap. 1. } }
	2. Of the Tones or Accents.	
	3. Of the Time or Quantitie of Syllables, Chap. 2. 3	

Chap. 1.

Of Spirits and Tones, or Accents.

1. Spirits.

1. **A Spirit** is the manner of uttering of a syllable with a breath; And it is

{ Sharp, with which a syllable is sharply uttered; as, <i>Hamus, homo;</i> { Gentle or flat, with which a syllable is gently pronounced; as, <i>Amo, omnis.</i>
--

2. Tones.

2. **A Tone, or Accent** is the manner of pronouncing a syllable by lifting it up, or letting it down; as, *Trinitatem vituperare.*

There be three sorts of Accents

{ 1. An Acute, which sharpneth or lifteth up a syllable, & is marked with a thwart stroke ascending towards the right hand ('). { 2. A Grave, which flatteth or letteth down a syllable, & is marked with a thwart stroke descending towards the right hand (°). { 3. A Circumflex, which uttereth a syllable with a longer stay, lifting it up as the Acute, and letting it down as the Grave Accent, and it is marked with a figure made of an Acute and Grave (^)
--

The

Lib. IV.

DE PROSODIA.

PROSODIA est quarta pars Grammatices, quæ rectam vocum pronuntiationem tradit.

IV.
Prosodia

Recta pronuntiatio est, quæ observat in unaquâque voce Spiritum, Tonum, & Tempus Syllabarum.

Dicendum { 1. Spiritibus, & } Cap. 1.
ergò in { 2. Tono, sive Accentibus. }
Prosodiâ de { 3. Tempore sive Quantitate Syllabarum }
Cap. 2. 3.

agit de

Cap. 1.

De Spiritibus & Tonis, sive Accentibus.

SPIRITUS est ratio { Asper, quo asperè profertur } 1. Spiritibus
proferendi syl- { syllaba; ut, Hamus, homo. }
labam cum Spiritu, { Lenis, quo syllaba leniter pro- }
feratur vel { fertur; ut, Amo, omnis. }

2. Tonus sive Accentus est ratio pronuntiandi syl- 2. Tonis
labam, eandem elevando vel deprimendo; ut, Pro-
nuntiam vituperare.

{ 1. Acutus, qui syllabam acuit, sive attollit, }
{ & notatur virgulâ obliquâ in dextram }
{ ascendente (') }
{ 2. Gravis, qui syllabam gravat sive depri- }
{ mit, & notatur virgulâ obliquâ in dextram }
{ descendente (`) }
{ 3. Circumflexus, qui syllabam longiori mo- }
{ râ offert, pariter attollens cum Acuto, & }
{ deprimens cum Gravi, & signatur notâ }
{ ex Acuto & Gravi constata (^) . }

There be three Rules of Tones or Accents.

1. A word of one syllable being short or long by Position, hath an Acute Accent; as, *Alél, párs*; but if it be long by Nature, it is Circumflected; as, *Spēs, flōs*.

2. In a word of two syllables, if the first be long by Nature, and the latter short, the first is Circumflected; as, *Lána, mûsa*; but otherwise it hath an Acute; as, *Bónus, Déus, fólens*.

3. A word of many syllables, having the last syllable save one long, when a long syllable followeth it hath an acute in the last syllable save one; as, *Líbertas*; but when a short syllable followeth, it hath a Circumflect in the last syllable save one; as, *Amár, Románus*.

But if it hath the last syllable save one short, the syllable before the last save one will have an acute accent; as, *Dóminus, Póntifex*.

The rest of the syllables in words of many syllables have grave accents (though not marked) as *tebérrius*.

1. *Obs.* The Compounds of *Facio* have an acute in the last syllable save one; as, *Benefácius, malefácius*.

2. *Obs.* The Compounds of *Fis, fit*, have an acute in the last syllable; as, *Calefât, benefât*.

3. *Obs.* Grammarians do often confound a Circumflect with an acute, because it is scarce different from it in pronuntiacion.

Tonorum regulae sunt tres.

1. Monosyllaba dictio, brevis, aut Posuione longa, acutur; ut, *Mél, párs*; at Naturâ longa Circumflexitur; ut, *Spês, flôs.*

2. In Dissyllabâ dictione, si prior longa fuerit naturalis, & posterior brevis, prior Circumflexitur; ut, *ma, mēsa*; in cæteris verò acutur; ut, *Benus, Dēus,*

3. Dictio Polysyllaba, si penultimam longam habet sequente longâ, penultimam acuit; ut, *Libértas*; si penultimam brevi, circumflexit penultimam; ut, *Româus.*

4. Si brevem habet penultimam, acuit antepenultimam, ut, *Dóminus, Póntifex.*

5. Cæteræ omnes syllabæ in Polysyllabis gravantur, non notentur; ut, *Celebérissimus.*

1. Obs. Composita à *Fácio*, penultimam acunt; ut, *benefácis, malefácis.*

2. Obs. Composita à *Fis, fit*, ultimam acunt; ut, *visit, malefit.*

3. Obs. Grammatici circumflexum cum acuto saepe confundunt, quòd ab eo vix prolatione discerni-

There be five things which alter the Rules of the Accents.

I. *Difference*, for which sake

1. Some words are Circumflected in the last syllable, as the Ablative case of the first Declension *Musâ*, whereby it may differ from the Nominative and Vocative *Musa*. Thus *ergò* for *caussâ* differs from *ergò* the Conjunction.

2. Some have an acute accent in the last syllable, as many Adverbs, to difference them from other parts of Speech; viz. *Unà*, *aliquà*, *putà*, *ponè*, &c. which in the end of a sentence have an acute accent, but in the beginning or middle thereof a grave accent.

3. Some have an acute in the syllable before the last syllable save one; as, *Démâe*, *déorsum*, *quínim*, *intereâloci*, *nihilóminus*, *quâtenus* &c. when they are not several words; as are *interea loci*, *nihilominus*, *quâtenus*, &c.

N.B. An accent is now seldome marked, except for difference sake, for then it is noted not onely in the last syllable, but also in the last syllable save one; and in that which is before the last save one; as *occido*, *occido*.

II. *Transposition*, or mis-placing words. For when positions be set after their cases, they have a grave accent, as, *Transstra pèr* & *remos*; *Te penès imperium*.

III. *Attraction*, when the last syllable of the word going before doth draw unto it the accent of the Inclinative Conjunction; as, *Luminâque laurâsq;*

But when there is an apparent Composition, the accent is not altered; as *itaque*, *undique*, *hiccine*.

IV. *Concision*, when words are cut off by Syncope, Apocope, for then they keep the accent of the whole word; as, *Virgili* for *Virgilii*, *Arpinâs* for *Arpinensium*. So also *hûc*, *illûc*, for *hûcce*, *illûcce*; and the Compound words of *dûc*, *duc*, *fac*; as, *Benedûc*, *redûc*, *benefac*.

Quinque sunt quæ Tonorum regulas pertinebant, sive Tonos mutant.

I. *Differentia*, cujus causâ

1. Quædam dictiones Circumflectuntur in ultimâ; ut, Ablativus primæ Declinationis *Musâ*, quo differat à Nominativo & Vocativo *Musa*, Sic ergo pro causâ differt ab ergo Conjunctione.

2. Quædam acutuntur, ut Adverbia plurima, nè videantur esse aliæ partes Orationis; viz. *Unâ*, aliud, *pudâ*, *ponê*, &c. quæ in fine sententiarum acutuntur, in consequentia vero gravantur.

3. Quædam Antepenultimam suspendunt; ut, *inde, deorsum, quinimo, interea loci, nihilominus, quatenus*, &c. cum non sunt orationes diversæ; ut sunt, *interea loci, nihilo minus, pube ténus*, &c.

N. B. Accentiûs nota nusquam ferè jam apponitur, nisi differentie causâ, tunc enim signatur non tantum in ultima, sed etiam in penultima, & antepenultima; ut, *occido, occido*.

II. *Transpositio*. Præpositiones enim postpositæ suis casibus gravantur; ut, *Transstra per* & *remos. Te penès imperium*.

III. *Attractio*, cum scil. ultima syllaba præcedentis dictionis attrahit sibi Accentum Encliticæ Conjunctionis; ut, *Luminâque laurusque Dei*.

IV. *Qbs*: Ubi vero manifesta est Compositio, non variatur tonus; ut, *itaque, undique, hinc inde*.

IV. *Consisio*, cum dictiones per Synopen aut Apocope castrantur; tunc enim tonum retinent integræ dictionis; ut, *Virgili* pro *Virgilii*, *Arpinâs* pro *Arpinensis*. Sic *huc, illuc*, pro *hucce, illucce*; & Compositio à *Dic, duc, fac*; ut, *Benedic, reduc, benefac*.

V. *The idiom*, or the propriety of the language. For Greek words, if they come whole to the Latines, (i. e. if they be expressed with the very same letters) they keep their own accent; as *Metamorphosis*, *Orthographia*.

But if they become altogether Latine, they keepe the Latine accent; as, *Georgica*, *Philosophia*, *idolum*.

N. B. If the proper accent of a strange word be unknown, it will be most safe to pronounce it according to the Latine accent.

2. Those syllables which are common are pronounced short in Prose, i. e. where a mute and a liquid do follow a short vowel; as, *Celebris*, *Cathedra*; otherwise they are pronounced long; as, *Unus*, *Ulinus*, *ubique*.

3. An Interrogation doth alter the accent; as, *Siccine ais Parmenó?*

Chap. 2.

Of the Quantity of the First and Middle Syllables.

3. Time or Quantity.

Time, or Quantity, is the measure of pronouncing a Syllable, or the space of tuning a Vowel, whereby we measure how long it is in pronouncing.

According to Time, or Quantity, a Syllable is said to be	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <p>{ Short, which hath one time, or which is quickly pronounced; as, <i>Légeré</i>, whose time is thus marked (˘):</p> <p>{ Long, which hath two times, or which hath the space of two short times; as, <i>Audiernt</i>, whose long time is thus marked (-)</p> </div>
--	---

According

V. *Idioma*, sive linguae proprietates.

Dictiones enim Graecae, si integrae ad Latinos veniant, (i. e. si iisdem planè literis proferantur) servant tonum suum; ut, *Metamorphosis*, *Orthographia*.

Sin prorsus Latinae sunt, Latinum quoque tonum servant; ut, *Georgica*, *Philosophia*, *idolum*.

N. B. 1. Si ignoretur proprius peregrinae vocis tonus, tutissimum fuerit juxta Latinum accentum illam enuntiare.

2. Syllabae communes (i. e. ubi mura cum liquida sequitur vocalem brevem) in prosa oratione corripuntur; *Celebris*, *Cathedra*; in aliis verò dictionibus producuntur; ut, *unius*, *illius*, *ubique*.

3. Interrogatio etiam tonum transfert; ut, *Sicine aïs Parmenō?*

Cap. 2.

De Tempore, sive Quantitate Primarum & Mediarum Syllabarum

Tempus, sive Quantitas, est syllabae pronuntiandae mensura, sive spatium modulandae vocalis, quo moram ejus in pronuntiando metimur.

3. De Tempore sive Quantitate

Secundum *Brevis*, quae usum habet tempus, sive quae celeriter pronuntiatur; ut *Ligerē*; cuius tempus breve sic noratur (·)
Tempus, sive *Quan.* *Longa*, quae duo tempora habet, sive *titatem*, *Syl.* quae spatium duarum brevium exigit; *laba* dicitur ut, *Audivēnt*, cuius tempus longum sic notatur (-)

Secun-

According to the order which they have in words, Syllables are nam'd. { First, } which { first } place
 { Middle, } have { middle } in a
 { Last, } the { last } word

{ I. Position.

{ II. A Vowel before a vowel.

{ III. A Diphthong

{ IV. Derivation.

{ V. Composition,

{ VI. Preposition,

{ VII. Rule,

{ VIII. Example or Authority.

I.
Of the first

The quantitie of the first syllables is known eight manner of waies : by

But the Middle Syllables have besides these a particular way of being known, which you may see IX.
 I. according to Position,

1. A Vowel set before two Consonants, or a double consonant in the same word, is long; as, *Vēnus, āxis, patrīzo*. But the Compounds of *jugum* make *i* short; as, *Bījugus*:

2. And if a Consonant doth close the foregoing word, and the word following beginneth with a consonant, the vowel foregoing shall be long as, *Majōr sūm quān cui pōssit fōrtuna nocere*.

3 A short vowel in the end of a word, when the word following beginneth with two consonants, sometimes, but seldome is made long; as,

Occultā spolia, & plures de pace triumphos;

4: A short vowel before a mute, with a liquid following is common, *i, e*, long or short; as,

Et primū volūcri similis, mox vera volūcris,

But a long vowel is not changed; as, *Arātrum, Simulācrum*.

II. A Vowel before another in the same word is short; as *Dēns, nīhil*:

But

Secundam ordi-	[Prima,]	[primum]	locum in	
nem suum que	} <i>ND</i> }	} medium }	diſtione	
habent in di-				quavis
ſtioneſ ſyl-				occu-
labæ dicuntur	[ultima]	[ultimu]	pant. !	

I. Poſitione.

II. Vocali ante vocalem.

Primarum ſylla-

III. Diphthongo.

barum quantitas

IV. Derivatione;

oſto modis co-

V. Compoſitione.

gnoſcuntur, viſ

VI. Præpoſitione.

VII. Regulâ.

VIII. Exemplo, ſeu, Autoritate.

I.
Primarum.

Mediarum verò peculiaris eſt cognoscendi modus quem videre licet IX:

I. Juxta Poſitionem.

1. Vocalis ante duas conſonantes, aut duplicem in eadem diſtione longa eſt; ut, *Ventus, âxis, patri-* *zo*: Sed Compoſita à jugum corripunt; ut, *Bz-* *jugum*.

2. Quod ſi conſonans priorem diſtioneſ claudat, ſequente item à conſonante inchoante, vocalis præcedens longa erit; ut,

Majôr ſum quàm cui poſſit fortuna notere.

3. Vocalis brevis in fine diſtioneſ, ſequente à duabus conſonantibus inchoante, interdum, ſed rariùs producit; ut;

Occultâ ſpolia, & plures de pace triumphos.

4. Vocalis brevis ante mutam ſequente liquida, communis redditur; ut,

Et primò volâcri ſimilis, mox vera volâcriſ.

Longa verò vocalis non mutatur; ut, *Arâtrum,* *ſimulâcrum.*

II, Vocalis ante alteram in eadem diſtione brevis eſt; ut *Dëus, nîhil.*

Sed

But 1. Genitive cases in *ius*, make the last syllable save one common; as, *Unius, illius*. Except that *i* in *alterius* is alwayes short, and in *alius* alwayes long.

2. In the fifth Declension *e* between a double *i* is long; as, *Faciēi*.

3. *Fi* in *Fio* is every where long, but where *e* and *r* follow it both together; as,

Omnia jam fient, fieri quæ posse negabas.

4. *Obe* hath the first syllable doubtfull; then alwayes long.

5. A Vowel before another in Greek words is long; as, *Dicite Tiberides*; and in Possessives; as, *Antea matris*.

But the quantity of Greek syllables is better to be found from the Greeks.

6. In forrain words the quantity is doubtfull; as, *Michaël, Abraham*.

III. Every Diphthong is long: as, *Aurum, Musa*. And syllables that are Contracted; as, *Cogo, nil*.

But *præ* before a vowel is often made short; as, *Ver præit æstatem*; and but seldome long; as, *Domino præiret Arion*. *e* in *Mæstis* is doubtfull.

IV. Derivatives have the same quantity that their Primitives have; as, *amator* of *amo*. Yet there be some excepted.

1. Which are derived from them that be short, and are long, viz.

<i>Vox, vocis,</i>	} of	<i>Voco.</i>	<i>Fecundus</i>	} of	<i>Juvo.</i>
<i>Lex, legis,</i>		<i>Lego.</i>	<i>Vomer</i>		<i>Vomo.</i>
<i>Alex, regis,</i>		<i>Rego.</i>	<i>Laterna</i>		<i>Lateo.</i>
<i>Sedes,</i>		<i>Sedeo.</i>	<i>Tegula</i>		<i>Tego.</i>
<i>Junior,</i>		<i>Juvenis.</i>	<i>Macero</i>		<i>Macer</i>
<i>Humanus,</i>		<i>Homo,</i>	<i>Penuria</i>		<i>Pinus.</i>

2. Some

Sed 1. Genitivi in *ius*, penultimam habent communem; ut, *Unius, illius*. Licet *i* in *alterius* semper sit brevis, in *alius* semper longa.

2. In quinta declinatione *e* inter geminum *i* longa fit; ut, *Faciēi*.

3. Fi in Fio ubique longa est, nisi sequatur *e* & r simul; ut,

Omnia jam fiunt, fieri quæ posse negabas.

4. Obe primam syllabam ancipitem habet; *ebon* semper longa.

5. Vocalis ante alterum in Græcis dictionibus subinde longa fit; ut, *Dicite Pærides*; & in possessivis; ut, *Enēia huius*.

Sed Græcarum quantitas à Græcis rectius addiscenda est.

6. In peregrinis quantitas est ambigua; ut, *Mithaël, Abraham*.

III. Omnis Diphthongus longa est; ut, *Æurum, Æusa*. Syllabæ item Contractæ; ut, *Cōgo, nīl*.

Sed *præ* ante vocalem sæpius corripitur; ut, *Væ præ it æstatem*; rarius producitur; ut, *Domino præ it æ Arion*. *e* in *Æeolis* est anceps.

IV. Derivata eandem cum Primitivis quantitatem sortiuntur; ut, *amator* primâ brevi ab *Amo*. Encipiunt tamen quedam

1. Deducta à brevibus, quæ producuntur, viz.

Vox, vōcis,	Vōco,	Fecundus,	Færo,
Lex, lēgis,	Lēgo,	Vomer,	Vōmo,
Rex, rēgis,	Rēgo,	Laterna,	Lâteo,
Sedes,	Sēdeo,	Regula,	Tēgo,
Junior,	Jūvenis	Masero,	Mācer,
Humilis,	Hōmo,	Penuria,	Pēnus.

2. Which are derived of them that are long, and are short, viz.

<i>Dux, dūcis,</i>	} of	<i>Dūco:</i>	<i>Frāgor,</i>	} of	<i>Frā-</i>
<i>Dīcax,</i>		<i>Dīco.</i>	<i>Frāgilis</i>		<i>go.</i>
<i>Fīdes,</i>		<i>Fīo.</i>	<i>Nōto, tas,</i>		<i>Nōtu.</i>
<i>ārena, ārista,</i>		<i>areo.</i>	<i>Nāto, tas,</i>		<i>Nātu.</i>
<i>Pōsui,</i>		<i>Pōno.</i>	<i>Dīserius,</i>		<i>Dīssero.</i>
<i>Gēnui,</i>		<i>Gīgna</i>	<i>Sōpor.</i>		<i>Sōpio.</i>

And some others of both sorts.

V. Compound words have the quantity of the Simple; as, *Pōtens*; *impōtens*, *Sq̄lor*, *consōlor*.

<i>Innūba,</i>	} of	<i>Nūbo.</i>	<i>Cognitum,</i>	} of	<i>Nōtum,</i>
<i>Pronūba,</i>			<i>Agnitum,</i>		
<i>Dejēro,</i>	} of	<i>jūro.</i>	<i>Restitutus,</i>	} of	<i>Stātutus,</i>
<i>Pejēro,</i>			<i>Perstitutus,</i>		

2. Also the Compounds of *Dīco*, that end in *dīcus*, as *Maledīcus*.

3. *Ambītus* the Noun hath *i* short, *Ambītus* the Participle hath *i* long.

4. *Idem* in the Masculine gender hath *i* long, in the Neuter *i* short.

5. In words that are Compounded

1. With Verbs the former part ending in *e* is short; as, *Valēdico*.

2. With Participles, *bi*, *tri*, *tre*, *du*, the same are short; as, *Biceps*, *triceps*, *trecenti*, *dūcenti*.

3. With Nouns the former part ending in *i*, *y*, *u*, is short; as, *Tardigradus*, *Polydorus*, *cornūpeti*. Except *quīvis* and some others.

6. These words make long the last syllable of their simples, which is common, viz. *ubique*, *ubilibet*, *ibidem*, *quandōque*, *quandocunque*, but do in *quandōquidem* is short.

VI. Of the Prepositions,

1. *A*, *de*, *e*, *se*, *prae*, and those that end in *a*, are long, except a vowel follow; as, *Vnda debiscens*.

2. *Pro* the Latine syllable is long, except in these words,

2. Deducta à longis, quæ corripuntur, viz.

Dux, dūcis,	} à	Dūco.	Frāgor,	} à	Frā-
Dīcax,		Dīco.	Frāgilis,		go,
Fīdes		Fīo.	Nōto, as		Nōtu.
ārena, ārista,		āreo.	Nāto, as,		Nātu.
pōsui,		Pōno.	Dīsertus.		Dīssero.
Gēnuī,		Gīgno.	Sōpor,		Sōpio.

Atque alia nonnulla utriusque generis.

V. *Composita* simplicium quantitatem sequuntur; ut
Pōtens, impōtens. Sōlor, consōlor.

1. Exci- } Innūba, } à Nūbo. } Cognitum, } à Nōtum.
piuntur } Pronūba, } à Nūbo. } Agnitum, }
tamen. } Dejēro, } à Jūro. } Prestiturus } à Stān-
} Pejēro, } à Jūro. } Restiturus } rus.

2. Item *Composita* à Dīco in dīcus; ut, Male-
dīcus.

3. *Ambītus* Nomen corripitur, *ambītus* Participium
producitur.

4. Idem Masculinum producit i, Neutrum verò
corripit.

5. In *Compositis*

1. Cum verbis, prior pars vocis in e desinens cor-
ripitur; ut, Valēdīco.

2. Cum particulis, bi, tri, tre, du, eadē corrip-
untur; ut Bīceps, trīceps, trēcenti, dūcenti.

3. Cum Nominibus, prior pars exiens in i, y, u,
corripitur; ut, Tardigradus, Polīdorus, cornūpeta,
excipe quīvis & pauca alia.

6. Hæ voces ultimam syllabam simplicium; quæ
communis est, producunt, viz Ubīque, ubīlibet, ibīdem,
quandōque, quandōcunque, sed de in quandōquidē
corripitur.

VI. Ex *Prepositionibus*.

1. A, de, ē, se præ, & quæ in a desinunt, ubique
producuntur, nisi vocali sequente; ut, unde dēhīscens.

2. Pro Latina longa est, præterquam in istis,
Pro-

words, *Pröcella*, *pröfugus*, *prötervus*, *prönepos*, *prönepis*,
pröfannus, *pröfiteor*, *pröfundus*, *pröfificor*, *pröfari*, *pröpero*
pröfugio, *pröfectö*, *pröpello*, *pröpulso*. But

1. { *Propago*, *gas*,
 and
Propago, *gñis* } have *pro* doubtfull.

2. *Pro* the Greek syllable is short; as, *Pröpheta*,
prölogus, *Prömethens*, &c. but in *propino* it is
 doubtfull.

3. *Di* is long, except in *Divimo*, and *difertus*.

4. The rest of the Prepositions be short, if positi-
 on do not hinder; for *re* in *refert* it is good, cometh
 of *res*, and is therefore long.

VII. There be { 1. Of Preterperfect tenses and Su-
 pines of two syllables.
 two Rules, { 2. Of Preterperfect tenses that double
 the first syllable.

1. Every preterperfect tense & supine of two syllables
 hath the first syllable long; as, *Lēgi*, *ēmi*, *mōtum*, *lātum*,
 Except

1. Six preterperfect tenses *Fīdi*, *bībi*, *dēdi*, *scīdi*,
zīli, *stīti*.

2. Nine supines; *Dātum*, *sātum* *cītum*, (of *cico*)
ītum, *lītum*, *quītum*, *sītum*, *rātum*, *rūtum*.

2. Preterperfect tenses that double the first syl-
 lable of their Present tense, have their first syllable short;
 as, *Pēpendi*, *mōmordi*, *spōspondi*.

VIII. The quantity of such syllables as come not
 under the rules foregoing is to be known by the
Example and *Authority* of Poëts; and this is the most
 certain and most general way,

1. Because every rule resteth upon the authority of
 the Antients.

2. Because the quantity of many syllables is not
 known but by examples.

3. These words have their first syllable common;

vix,

*Pröcella, prösugus, prötervus, prönepos, pröneptus, prö-
fanus, pröfiteor, pröfundus, pröfisciscer, pröfari, pröpero,
prösugio, pröfclöd, pröpello, pröpuljo. Sed*

1. *Propago, gas,*
 &
 Propago, gñis, } *pro habent ancipitem.*

2. *Pro Græca corripitur; ut, Pröpheta, prölogus,
prömetheus, &c. Sed in propino anceps est.*

3. *Di producitur, nisi in dñimo, & disertus.*

4. *Reliquæ Præpositiones, si positio finat, corri-
piuntur; nam re in refert, pro utile est, à nomine res
est, idcircoque producitur.*

VII. *Regula* } 1. *De Præteritis & Supinis dissylla-
 bis.*
 est duplex, } 2. *De primam Præteriti geminanti-
 tibus.*

1. *Omne Præteritum & Supinum dissyllabum prio-
rum habet longam; ut, Lēgi, ēmi, mōtum, latum.*

Excipiuntur tamen,

1. *Sex Præterita, Fīdi, bībi, dēdi, cēdi, tūli,
stēti.*

2. *Novem supina, Dātum, sātum, cētum, (à cico)
itum, lītum, quītum, sītum, rātum, rūtum.*

2. *Primam Præteriti geminantia, primam itidem
novem habent; ut, Pēpendi, mōmordi, pōsponai.*

VIII. *Quarum syllabarum quantitas sub prædictas
rationes non cadit, à Poëtarum ulu, Exemplo, atque
authoritate petenda est; atque hæc ratio est omnium
strictissima & generalissima,*

1. *Quia regula omnis authoritate veterum ni-
tetur.*

2. *Quia multarum syllabarum modulus non nisi
exemplo cognoscitur.*

1. *Hæc primam syllabam habent communem;*

viz. *Britannus, Bithynus, Cacus, Cosyra, Crathys, Creticus, Curetes, Fidene, Gradivus, Hinulus, Hymen, Italus, liquor, liquidus, Lycas, Orion, Pachinus, palatium, Pelion, Pyrene, rudo, Sychæus, Sycanius, &c.*

2. And these their middle; *Batavus, connubium, ficedula, malea, Pharsalia, Sidonius, &c.*

2,
Middle.

IX. Middle syllables are partly known the same way that the first, and partly 1. by the increase of the Genitive case, and 2. the Analogy of the Conjugation.

1. The increase of the Genitive case is, when a Noun hath more syllables in the Genitive case singular, than it had in the Nominative, and according to it, the last syllable save one of Nouns increasing,

1. Sharp, is long.

2. Flat, is short.

2. The Analogy of Conjugation is, when Verbs follow their common Rule of Conjugating, and according to this

a)	the character or note of the	{ First }	Conjugation is	{ long.
e		{ Second }		{ long.
ë		{ Third }		{ short.
i)		{ Fourth }		{ long.

But in *Do* and its Compounds, when they are of this Conjugation, *a* is short; as in *dāmus, circumdāmus, dābis, circumdābis, dāre, circumdāre.*

The syllables *rimus* and *ritis* in the Preterperfect tense of the Subjunctive mood are short; as, *Amaverimus, amaveritis*; but long in the Future tense; as, *Amaverimus, amaveritis.*

Latine Adjectives in *inus* make (*i*) long; as, *Cladestinus, mediastinus.* Except these following, *Diastinus, crastinus, pristinus, perendinus, hornotinus, serotinus, Oleaginus, faginus, cedrinus, carbasinus, &c.* others that signify matter, or that are come of the names of metals, and end in *inus*, as *Chrysalinus, myrrhinus, &c.* which are derived of Greek Nouns.

viz. *Britannus, Eithynus, Cacus, Cosyra, Crathys, Creticus, Curetes, Fidene, Gradivus, Hinulus, Hymen, Italus, liquor, liquius, Lycas, Orion, Pachinius, palatium, Pelion, Pyrene, rudo, Sychæus, Sycanius*, cum quibusdam aliis.

2. Hæc verò mediam; *Batavus, connubium, Ficedula, melea, Pharsalia, Sicionius*, &c.

IX. *Mediæ syllabæ* partim eâdem ratione quâ primæ, partiam etiam 1. ex incrementis *Genitivi*, atq; 2. *Conjugationis Analogiâ* cognosci possunt. 2. Mediarum.

1. *Incrementum Genitivi* est quando Nomen plures habet syllabas in Genitivo singulari, quàm in Nominativo; juxta hoc penultima Nominum crescentium.

1. *Acutè*, longa est.

2. *Graviter* brevis est.

2. *Analogia Conjugationis* est, quando Verba sequuntur communem regulam conjugandi; & juxta hæc,

a	{ index	{ Primæ Secundæ Tertiæ Quartæ	{ Conjugationis	{ longa longa brevis longa	{ est.
e					
i					
u					

Sed in *Do* & ejus Compositis, quando primæ Conjugationis, *a* brevis est; ut *Damus circundānus dābis, circundābis, dāre circundare*.

Syllabæ *rimus* & *ritus* in Præterito modi Subjunctivi sunt breves; ut, *Amaverimus, amaveritis*; in Futuro verò longæ; ut, *Amaverimus, amaveritis*.

Adjectiva in *inus* Latina penultimam producunt; *Clandestinus, mediastinus*, &c. Præter hæc sequenti inus, *crastinus, pristinus, perendinus, hornotinus, utinus, oleaginus, faginus, cedrinus, carbasinus*, & rebus materialia, sive à metallorum nominibus formata in *inus*; ut *Crystallinus, myrrhinus*, &c. à Græco deducta.

Chap. 3.

Of the Quantity of the last Syllables.

3.
Ant last
Syllable.

THe last Syllables are reckoned according to the order of the letters with which words do end; thus,

A are long; as, *Amā, con'rā, ergā.*

Except.

1. *Puā, itā, quā, ejā.*

2. Likewise all cases in *a*, besides Vocatives in *a*, of Greek Nouns in *as*; as, *ō Aneā*, and the Ablative case of the first Declension; as, *Musā.*

3. Numerals in *ginta*, which have *a* common, as, *Trīginta, quadraginta.*

B are short as, *ab.*

Except,

1. Hebrew words; as, *Jacōb.*

C are long; as, *ac sic*, and *hic* the Adverb.

Except.

1. *Lāc, nēc, donēc*, which are short.

2. *Fec*, and the Pronoun *hic* are common, as also its Neuter Gender *hoc*; so that it be not of the Ablative case.

D are short; as *ād.*

1. Except Hebrew words; as, *David.*

E are short; as, *Marē, penē, legē, scribē.*

Except,

1. Nouns of the Fifth Declension in *e*; as, *Fidē, diē, rē*, with the Adverbs that come of them; as, *Hodiē, quārē.*

2. *Fame*, now of the Third Declension short was heretofore of the Fifth long.

3. The

Words that end in

Finita in

Chap. 3.

De Ultimarum Syllabarum Quantitate.

Ultimæ syllabæ numerantur juxta ordinem literarum finalium; sic,

3.
Et ultimæ
rum sylla-
barum.

A/producentur; ut, *amā, contrā, ergā,*.

Excipe,

1. *Putā, itā, quā, ejā.*

2. Item omnes casus in *a*, præter Vocativos in *a*, à Græcis in *as*, ut, *ô Aneā*, & Ablativum primæ declinationis; ut, *Musā*.

3. Numeralia in *ginta*, quæ *a* habent communem; ut *Triginta, quadraginta*.

B brevia sunt ut *ab*.

Excipe,

1. Hebræa; ut, *Jacob*.

C/producentur; ut, *ac, sic, & hic* Adverbium.

Excipe,

1. *Lac, nec, donec*, quæ contrahuntur.

2. *Fac*, & pronomen *hic* sunt communia, item & ejus Neutrum *hoc*, modò non sit Ablativi casus.

D brevia sunt; ut, *ad*.

1. Excipe Hebræa; ut, *David*:

E brevia sunt; ut, *Marè, penè, legè, scribè*.

Excipe,

1. Voces Quintæ Inflectionis in *e*; ut, *Fidè diè, vè*, cum Adverbiis inde enatis; ut, *Hodidè, quarè*;

2. *Famè*, quæ nunc Tertiæ Inflectionis brevis, olim quintæ longa fuit,

3. The second person singular of the Imperative mood, of the Active voice, of the second Conjugation, as, *Docē, movē, manē*.

But *e* in *Cave, vidē, salve, and vale* is sometimes short.

4. Monosyllables in *e*; as, *Mē, tē, cē*, except, *quē, nē, vē*, the Inclivative Conjunctions.

5. Adverbs in *e* derived of Adjectives; as, *Doctē, valdē, and fermē, ferē*: yet *benē* and *malē* are short.

6. Words that in Greek are writ with an *Eta*, or *e* long, as, *Anchisē, cetē, tempē*, are long; as, *Dominī, amarī*.

Except,

1. *Mibi, tibi, sibi, ubi, ibi, uti* for *ut*, and *cui* a word of two syllables, which are common.

2. *Nisī, and quasī* which are short, as are also the Vocative cases of Greek Nouns, whose Genitive singular endeth in *os*; as *Pallidī, Daphnī*.

are short; as *Animāl mēl*.

Except

1. *Sal, and Sōl*.

2. Hebrew words which are writ in Greek with a long vowel; as, *Michaēl*.

are long; as, *Pæan, Hemén, nōn*.

Except

1. *Forsān, forstān, ān, tamēn, attamēn, vrantamēn*.

2. Words cut off by Apocope; as, *Mēn, vidēn*.

3. *In* with its Compounds; as, *Exīn, subīn, &c*.

4. Nouns ending in *en*, whose Genitive case singular hath *nis* short; as, *Carmēn, peccēn, tibiēn*.

5. Greek

3. Secundæ personæ singulares imperativorum Activorum secundæ Conjugationis; ut, *Docē, movē, manē.*

Sed *e* in *Cave, vide, salve, & vale* quandoque etiam corripitur.

4. Monosyllaba in *e*; ut, *mē, tē, cē*, præter *quē, nē, vē*, Encliticas Conjunctiones

5. Adverbia in *e*, ab Adjectivis deducta; ut, *doctē, valdē*, item *fermē, & ferē. Benē* tamen & *malē* corripuntur.

6. Quæ à Græcis per *n* scribuntur; ut, *Anchisē, cetē, tempē.*

I longa sunt; ut, *Dominī, amarī.*

Excipe.

1. *Mibi, tibi, sibi, ubi, ibi, uti* pro *ut*, & cui dissyllabum, quæ sunt communia.

2. *Nisī, & quasī* que corripuntur, ut & Dativi & Vocativi Græcorum, quorum Genitivus in *os* breve exit; ut, *Pallidī Daphnī.*

L corripuntur; ut, *Animāl mēl.*

Excipe

1. *Sāl, & sōl.*

2. Hebræa, quæ Græcè scribuntur per vocalem longam; ut, *Michaēl.*

Π producuntur; ut, *Pæan, Hymēn, nōn.*

Excipe

1. *Forsān, forsutān, ān, tamēn, attamēn, verumtamēn.*

2. Voces per Apocopen castratas; ut, *Men', viden'.*

3. In cum Compositis; ut, *Exīn, subīn. &c.*

4. Nomina in *en*, quorum Genitivum *inis* correptum habet; ut, *Carmēn, pectēn, tibicēn.*

5. Greek Nouns in *on* by little *o* ; as, *Ilion*, *Pelion*, *Caucasion*.

6. Greek Nouns in *in*, *yn*, and *an*, whose Nominative case is short ; as, *Alexin*, *lyin*, *Maiän*.

O are common ; as, *Amo*, *vingo*, *porro*, *docendo*,
Except

1. Oblique cases in *o* which are alwaies made long ; as *Dominö servö*.

2. Adverbs derived of Adjectives ; as, *Tantö*, *falsö*, &c. But *Sedulö crebrö*, and *mutuö* are common, rather to be made long,

3. Monosyllables in *o* are long ; as, *dö*, *stö*, and *ergö* for *causä*.

4. *Ambo*, *duo*, *ego*, *homo*, *citö*, *modö* with its compounds are seldome read long.

5. Greek words in *o* are long ; as, *Sappho*, unless they come of Nominative cases in *ov* from which (*n*) is taken away ; as, *Leo*, *Plato*, which for the most part are short

R are short ; as, *Cerär*, *torculär*, *për diciër*,
Except

1. *Far*, *lär*, *när*, *vër*, *für*, *cür*, and *pär* with its compounds. *Cor* is once read long in Ovid. *Molle meum levibus cor est violabile telis*.

2. Greek words that end in *er* with *e* long ; as, *Aër*, *cratër*, except *patër*, *matër*.

S have terminations answerable to the number of vowels.

a are long ; as, *Amäs*, *musäs*.

Except

1. Greek nouns, whose Genitive case singular endeth in *as* ; as, *Arcäs*, *Palläs*.

2. The Accusatives plural of Nouns increasing ; as, *Heröas*, *Phyllidas*.

e are long ; as, *Anchisës*, *sedäs*, *docës*.

Except

5. Græca in *on* per *o* parvum; ut, *Ilion*, *Pelion*, *Caucasion*.

6. Græca in *in*, *yn*, & *an*, quorum Nominativus est brevis; ut, *Alexin*, *lyn*, *Matan*.

O Communia sunt; ut, *Amo*, *virgo*, *porro*, *docendo*,
Excipe.

1. Obliquos in *o*, qui semper producuntur;
ut, *Dominō*, *servō*.

2. Adverbia ab Adjectivis deducta; ut, *Tantō*, *falsō*, &c. Sed *Sedulo*, *crebro*, *mutuo*, sunt communia tutius producenda.

3. Monosyllaba in *o* producuntur; ut, *dō*, *stō*,
item *ergō* pro *causā*.

4. *Ambo*, *duo*, *ego*, *homo*, *citō*, *modō* cum compositis vix leguntur producta.

5. Græca per *ω* producuntur; ut, *Sapphō*, nisi descendant à Nominativis in *ωy* quibus *y* adimitur; ut, *Leo*, *Plato*, quæ plerunque corripuntur.

R Corripiuntur; ut, *Casār*, *torculār*, *pēr*, *diciēr*,
Excipe,

1. *Fār*, *lār*, *nār*, *vēr*, *fūr*, *cūr*, & *pār* cum compositis. *Cor* semel apud Ovidium producitur.

Molle meum levibus cor est violabile telis.

2. Græca in *ne* er; ut, *Aēr*, *cratēr*, excipe
patēr & *matēr*.

S pares cum numero vocalium terminationes habent.

producuntur; ut, *Amās*, *musās*,

Excipe,

1. Græca, quorum Genitivus singularis in *os* exit; ut, *Arctās*, *Pallās*.

2. Accusativos plurales nominum crescentium; ut, *Heroās*, *Phyllidās*.

es longa sunt; ut, *Anchisēs*, *sedēs*, *docēs*.

Excipe

Except

1. Nouns in *es* of the Third Declension that encrease short; as, *Milēs, divēs*. But of these, *Cerēs, ablēs, ariēs, pariēs*, and *pēs*, with its Compounds are long.

2. *Es* of *sum*, with its Compounds, *potēs, adēs, prodēs, obēs*, and *penēs* the Preposition are short.

3. Neuters singular, and Nominatives plural of Greek Nouns that end in *es* not *eis*; as *Cacoethēs, cyclopēs*. are short; as, *Parīs, panīs, tristīs*.

Except

1. Oblique cases plural in *is*; as, *Musīs, dominīs*, and *queīs* for *quibus*.

2. Words that make long the last syllable save one of the Genitive case increasing; as, *Samnīs, nitīs*;

3. Which are made in *is* of the Diphthong *eu*; as, *Omnīs, Simoīs*.

4. All Monosyllables, as, *Vīs, līs*, besides *īs bīs*, and *quīs*.

5. *Velīs* with its Compounds, *malīs, nolīs*, *is* and *ausīs, faxīs*.

6. The second persons singular of the Indicative mood present tense of the fourth Conjugation; as, *Audīs, dormīs*.

7. The second persons of the Future tense of the Subjunctive mood, which are common; as, *dederis, amaveris*.

os are long, as *Herōs, bonūs, dominūs*.

Except

1. *Compōs, impōs*, and *os offis*.

2. Creek Nouns with little *o*, as *Delōs, Palladōs*.

us are short, as *Famulūs, tempūs*.

Except

Words that end in

Excipe

1. Nomina in *es* tertiæ Declinationis graviter crescentia; ut, *milēs, divēs*. Sed ex his, *Cerēs, abies, ariēs, paries, & pēs* cum Compositis longa sunt.

2. *Es* quoque à *sum* unà cum Compositis, *potēs, adēs, prodēs, obēs. & penēs* Præpositio corripuntur.

3. Item Neutra singularia: & Nominativi plurales Græcorum in *es* breve non *eis* deficientia; ut *Cacoethēs Cyclopēs*.
is breviter sunt; ut, *Parēs, panēs, tristēs*.

Excipe

1. Obliquos plurales in *is*, ut, *Musēs, dominēs, & quēs* pro quibus.

2. Producentia penultimam Genitivi crescentis; ut, *Samnēs, nitēs*.

3. Quæ sunt in *is* ab *eis* Diphthongo; ut, *Omnēs, Simoēs*.

4. Monosyllaba omnia; ut, *Vīs, līs, præter īs, bīs, & quīs*.

5. *Velīs*, cum Compositis, *malīs, nolīs*, item *ausīs, faxīs*.

6. Secundas personas singulares Indicativi præsentis quartæ Conjugationis; ut, *audīs, dormīs*.

7. Secundas personas Futuri Subjunctivi, quæ sunt communes; ut, *dederīs, amaverīs*.

os producuntur; ut, *Herōs, honōs, dominōs*.

Excipe

1. *Compōs, impōs, & ōs, offīs*.

2. Græca per *o* parvum; ut, *Delōs, Palladōs*.

us corripuntur; ut, *famulūs, tempūs*.

Excipe

Words that end in

Except,

1. The Nominative cases of Nouns that increase long ; as, *Virtūs, salūs.*

2. The Genitive cases singular, the Nominatives, the Vocatives and Accusatives plural of the fourth Declension ; as, *hujus manūs, he manūs, has manūs, & manūs.*

3. Monosyllables in *us*, as, *pūs, crūs.*

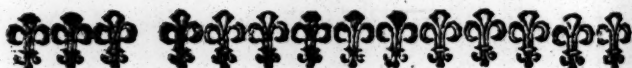
4. Words which are writ in Greek with *us* ; as, *Pantūs Crūs.*

And the name *Jesūs* to be revered of all good men.

u are long ; as, *manū, genū.*

y and *ys* are short ; as, *Mol, Tiphys*

ys The last syllable in every verse is common ; i.e. it may be either long or short.



Appendix.

Excipe.

1. Nominativos acutè crescentium; ut, *Virtūs, salūs*.

2. Genitivos singulares, Nominativos, Vocativos, & Accusativos plurales Quartæ Declinationis, ut, *hujus. manūs, he. manūs, has manūs, & manūs*.

3. Monosyllaba in *us*; ut, *pūs, crūs*

4. Quæ à Græcis scribuntur per *us*; ut, *Panthus, Clinus*.

Atque piis cunctis venerandum nomen Iēsus.

producentur; ut, *Manū geuū*

& *ys* corripuntur, ut *Moly, Tiphys*.

Ultima cujusque versūs syllaba habetur communis.

Appendix.



Appendix Grammatices.

Appendix
Gramma-
tices.

agit.

De Ordine.

HActenus de *vocum Elementis, Accidentibus, Con-*
structione & Pronuntiatione, quæ quidem qua-
tuor, quas jam diximus, *Partes Grammaticæ*
tanquam *propria & partialia* singularum *subjecta*, con-
stituunt, & ipsam *orationem* juxta *Regulas Grammatices*
componendam (tanquam *subjectum* hujus *Artis*, ut *Lo-*
gici dicunt, *adequatum, totale & principale*) conspiciunt.

Nunc verò de *Ordine vocum* pauca subjiciemus. Nam
& hoc etiam ad finem *Grammatici* aliquo modo condu-
cit, ut quo ordine voces sint collocandæ, ad *orationem*
melius eloquendam, aut scribendam intelligat.

Cap. 1.

De Ordine vocum Grammatico.

Dictionum
live vocum

Ordō *Dictionum* est earundem inter se collocatio,
itā ut alia necessario præcedat, alia sequatur.

Est au- tem Or- do tri- plex.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{Gramma-} \\ \text{ticus,} \\ 2. \text{Oratorius} \\ 3. \text{Poeticus.} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{quem ob-} \\ \text{servant.} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Gramma-} \\ \text{tici.} \\ \text{Oratores} \\ \text{Poetæ} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{in Oratio-} \\ \text{ne compo-} \\ \text{nendâ.} \end{array} \right.$
--	---	---	--	---

1. Gramma-
tico.

1. *Ordo Grammaticus* five *naturalis* est, quando vo-
ces in *oratione* juxta naturam suam collocantur,
nullo observato sonorum numero.

Atque hic ordo è sermone vernaculo præcipue cog-
noscitur.

Secundum hunc ordinem composita oratio *Trans-*
latio dicitur.

In *Translatione* verò sic collocentur voces.

1. *Vocativus*, vocandi particula, & quæ ab illis
pendent.

2. *Nominativus*, & quæ ab eo pendent.

3. *Verbum*

3. Verbum principale, & quæ ab eo pendent, viz.
1. Infinitum, 2. Casus Verbi, & quæ ab illis pendent,
Hic tamen observandum,
1. Adverbium Verbo subjungitur.
2. Subjunctivum & Adjectivum conjungi debeat.
Item Præpositio & suus casus.
3. Interrogativa, Relativa, Indefinita, & Partitiva,
Adverbia quædam & Conjunctiones præcedunt alias
voces
4. Impersonale quandoque incipit orationem.
5. Accusativus ante verbum Impersonale exponi
debet per *quod* vel *ut*.
6. Si quid defuerit suppleri debet.

Exemplum Ordinis Grammatici.

Scipio & Læli, artes exercitationesque virtutum
sunt omnino arma aptissima senectutis; quæ culturæ
afferunt fructus mirificos in ætate omni, cum vixeris
multum diuque, non solum quia deserunt nunquam,
nè quidem in tempore extremo ætatis, quanquam id
est maximum; verum etiam quia conscientia vitæ actæ
bene, recordatioque benefactorum multorum est jucun-
dissima.

Cap. 2. De Ordine vocum Oratorio.

Ordo Oratorius est quando voces in oratione juxta 2. Oratorio.
Artem Oratoriam collocantur, observatis quidem
ceteris, sed omnino dissimilibus sonorum numeris.

Juxta hunc ordinem compositz voces *Prosa* sive
solutam Orationem (quam & κατ' ἐξοχὴν Orationem
dicimus) constituunt.

In oratione componendâ,

1. Obliquus in principio, Nominativus in medio,
& Verbum in fine collocetur.

2. Adjectivum præcedere, Substantivum verò se-
qui debet.

3. Inter

3. Inter Adjectivum & Substantivum aliæ voces interseruntur.

4. Adverbia, Præpositionesque cum suo casu veniunt ante Verbum vel Participium suum collocantur.

5. In prosâ versum fugito : citare tamen potes.

6. Principium vel exitum carminis, nec principium nec exitum prosæ facito.

7. Principii cura sit major, medii penè nulla, clausulæ verò maxima.

8. In fine & principio periodi commendantur dictiones polysyllabæ, sed clausula varianda est maximè.

9. Artificium numeri nunquam longius senis à fine syllabis observeatur.

10. Ex longis omnibus clausula rarior est, rarissima ex omnibus brevibus, at ex temperatione longarum & brevium frequentior.

11. Vocalium in diversis vocibus concursus sit quàm rarissimus.

12. In sublimi stylo adhibendæ sunt longæ syllabæ; in humilli verò breves.

Exemplum Ordinis Oratorii.

Aptissima omnino sunt Scipio & Læli, arma senectutis artes exercitationesque virtutum; quæ in omni ætate cultæ, cum multum diuque vixeris, mitificos afferunt fructus; non solum quia nunquam deserunt, nè in extremo quidem tempore ætatis, quanquam id maximum est; verum etiam quia conscientia beneactæ vitæ, multorumque benefactorum recordatio, jucundissima est.

N.B. Neque tamen hæc præcepta sunt ita mordicus tenendâ, quin ut puer ex doctissimorum observatione petiora iis apprehendar, & in componenda Oratione proprias aures & pulmones consulat.

Itaque

etque sex septemve periodos à se compositas semel
 Ique iterum recitet; sic enim experietur orationem
 suam numerosam esse, vel hiantem & asperam depre-
 hendat.

Cap. 3.
 De Ordine vocum Poeticis.

Ordo Poeticus est quando voces in oratione juxta 3 Poeticam
 Artem Poeticam collocantur, observatis quidem
 & certis & similibus sonorum numeris.

Juxta hunc ordinem constricta Oratio *Carmen* sive *Poëma* dicitur.

Juxta quem
Carmen con-
 stituitur.

- | | | |
|---|----------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Versus
(qui Græ-
cis Colon
sive mem-
brum di-
citur,) | usitate dividitur in | 1. Monocolon, quod con- |
| | | 2. Dicolon, ubi duo sunt |
| | | 3. Tricolon, ubi triplex est |
| | | 4. Polycolon, in quo plura |

stat unius generis me-
 tro.

2. Dicolon, ubi duo sunt
 genera versuum;

3. Tricolon, ubi triplex est
 metrum.

4. Polycolon, in quo plura
 metri genera concu-
 runt.

1. Pro Diversitate

- | | | | | | |
|---|------------------------|-------------|-----------------|-----------|---|
| 2. Strophe, sive rediti-
nis ad idē versū gen-
us | usitate dividitur in | 1. Distro- | cum post | 1. secun- | versum ad primi ge-
neris versū redimus. |
| | | phon, | | dum | |
| | | 2. Tristro- | | terti- | |
| | | phon, | | um | |
| 3. Tetra-
strophon, | 4. Penta-
strophon, | quar- | 5. quin-
tum | | |
| | | tum | | | |

X

2. Pro

2. Pro Ratione	{ Numeri Versuum,	{	{ Hemistichon, Distichon,	{	{ dimidium versus. duos versus.
{ Materiarum }	{	{	{ Tetrastichon, Hexastichon, Eteostichon, Hemastichon,	{ quod continet }	{ quatuor versus. sex versus.
{ Materiarum }	{	{	{ Acrostichis, cujus initiales, finales, aut mediæ literæ collectæ certum sensum præbent.	{	{ annorum numerus, dierum numerus,
{ Materiarum }	{	{	{ Comœdia, Tragœdia, Bu- colica, Elegia, Ode, Hy- mnus, Georgica, Satira, Epigramma, Epitaphium, Epithalamium, Genethli- acum, &c.	{	{

In quo dig-
noscendi
sunt.

In *Carminibus* vero ritè constituendo summa cura adhibenda est ad dignoscendos pedes, & diversa versuum genera. Ex pedibus enim conjunctis fiunt Versus, & ex Versibus Carmen.

Cap. 4.

De Pedibus, & ejus generibus

i Pes.

PES est duarum syllabarum pluriùve constitutio, ex certâ temporum sive quantitatum observatione.

Pe

Pes est	{	1. Simplex,	{	1. Dissyllabus, qui constat ex	{	1. Simpli-
		atque is		duabus syllabis.		ces.
		2. Compositus, qui constat ex simplicibus		2. Trissyllabus, qui constat ex		
		aut		tribus syllabis.		
		2. Compositus, qui constat ex simplicibus				
		pedibus conjunctis.				
Dissyllabi pedes sunt quatuor	{	Spondeus,	{	qui constat ex	{	duabus longis. a
		Pyrrhichius		duabus brevibus. b		
		Trocheus,		priore longâ, & po-		
		Iambus,		steriore brevi, c		
						priore brevi, & po-
						steriore longâ. d
ut,		^a Virtus, ^b Deus, ^c annus, ^d amans.				
Trissyllabi sunt octo	{	Molossus,	{	qui constat ex	{	tribus longis. e
		Tribrachius,		tribus brevibus. f		
		Dactylus,		primâ longâ, reliquis dua-		
				bus brevibus. g		
		Anapestus,		primis duabus brevibus, po-		
		Bacchius.		stermâ longâ. h		
		Antibacchius,		primâ brevi, reliquis dua-		
				bus longis. i		
		Amphimacer		primis duabus longis, po-		
		Amphibrachius,		stermâ brevi. k		
						primâ longâ, mediâ brevi,
						ultimâ longâ. l
						primâ brevi, mediâ longâ,
						ultimâ brevi. m

ut, ^e Magister. ^f Dominus. ^g Scribere. ^h Pietas
ⁱ Honestas. ^k Audire. ^l Caritas. ^m Venire.

Pedes compositi, potius pedum conjunctiones, quam ² Compo-
 Pedes à quibusdam vocantur, atque ab aliis omittun-
 tur tanquam non mulùm ad institutum Grammatici
 pertineant. Hos tamen tetrasyllabas nihilominus ad-
 jecimus, propter aliquem eorum usum in Carminibus
 illis quæ ab his nomen acceperunt, viz. Choriambicum
 Ionicum, &c.

Pedes igitur compositi præcipui sunt 18.	[Proceleusmaticus]		[duobus Pyrrhichiis.		a
	Dispondens	} qui conficitur ex	duobus Spondæis.	}	b
	Choriambus		Trochæus & Iambo.		c
	Antispastus		Iambo & Trochæo.		d
	Diambus		duobus Iambis.		e
	Dichoræus		duobus Trochæis.		f
	Ionicus à majore		Spondæo & Pyrrhichio.		g
	Ionicus à minore		Pyrrhichio & Spondæo.		h
	Epitritus primus		Iambo & Spondæo.		i
	Epitritus secundus		Trochæo & Spondæo.		k
	Epitritus tertius		Spondæo & Iambo.		l
	Epitritus quartus		Spondæo & Trochæo.		m
	Pæon primus		Trochæo & Pyrrhichio.		n
	Pæon secundus		Iambo & Pyrrhichio.		o
	Pæon tertius		Pyrrhichio & Trochæo.		p
	Pæon quartus		Pyrrhichio & Iambo.		q

U. a Homīnībūs. b Cōcludētes. c Hīstōria. d Alexāder. e Sēvēritās. f Cōprōbārē. g Cantabī- mūs. h Vēnērātes. i Sālūtātes. k Cōncitātī. l Cōm- mūnicānt. m Incantārē. n Cōnficērē. o Rēsolvērē. p Sōciārē. q Cēlērītās.

Ex pedibus autem, Iambus & Trochæus, Spondæus & Dactylus, Anapæstus & Tribrachus, usitatissimi sunt,

Cap. 5.

De Versuum variis generibus.

Versus est oratio iusto atque legitimo pedum numero constricta.

2 Versus, Versum composituro discendum est, pedibus ipsum ritè metiri, (sive in suos pedes distinguere) quam Scan- sionem sive Dimensionem vocant; ut, (bēm.

& eorum- dem a Scansio.

Pārvē nēc | īrvūdē | ō sīnē | mē lībēr | ībīs īn ūr- klēi mīhī | quōd dōmī | vō | nōn līcēt | īrē īh | ō.

Scan-

Scansioni accidunt hæc Figura; viz;

1. *Cæsura* quum ita secatur vox ut posterior ejus, pars initium sit pedis sequentis; ut,

Sic canē | būs catū | lōs sēmē | lēs sic | matrībūs | hēdōs.

Species ejus sunt quatuor,

- | | | | |
|--------------------|--|----------|--|
| 1. Triemimeris, | $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{est} \\ \text{cum post} \end{array} \right\}$ | primum | $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{pedem retin-} \\ \text{quiritur syl-} \\ \text{laba; ut,} \end{array} \right\}$ |
| 2. Penthemimeris, | | secundum | |
| 3. Hephthemimeris, | | tertium | |
| 4. Encemimeris, | | quartum | |

Illē lā | tūs nē | vēm mōl | lē sūl | tūs hyā | cīn | hō.

Ob *Cæsura*, syllaba brevis in fine dictionis aliquando extenditur.

Post $\left. \begin{array}{l} 1^{um} \\ 2^{um} \\ 3^{um} \\ 4^{um} \end{array} \right\}$ *pedem,* $\left. \begin{array}{l} 1^{um} \\ 2^{um} \\ 3^{um} \\ 4^{um} \end{array} \right\}$ *pedem,*

Pēcē | dōrē | būs | nē | būs | āns | spī | rāntē | ā | cōnsū | lē | tē | ext | ā.
Omnē | ā | vīcīt | ā | mōr | & | nōs | cē | dāmūs | ā | mōrē.
Ostē | t | āns | ar | tē | m | pā | rē | tē | r | ar | cū | m | quē | s | d' | nāntē | m
Illē lā | tūs nē | vēm mōl | lē sūl | tūs hyā | cīn | hō.

N. B. Invenustus est versus qui *Cæsura* caret; ut,

Au | cā | cārmīna | I | ūl | i | scrībīs | mārīmē | vātīm.

Urbēm | fōrē | m | nīpēr | cēpīt | fōrē | dōr | bōstīs.

2. *Synalepha* est elisio quædam vocalis ante alteram in diversis dictionibus; ut,

Sērā nē | mis vī | tē | est | crāstīnā | vī | hōdī | ē.

At *heu*, & *io* nunquam intercipiuntur, ut.

At bīs | i | s | Arē | thūsā | i | d | Arē | thūsā | vō | cāvīt.

Interdum etiam *Synalepha* negligitur; ut,

Et sūc | cūs pēcō | rē | ē | lāc sūl | dūcīt | ūr | agnīs.

Tēr sūnt cōnā | tē | im | pōnērē | Pēl | dō | Offam.

Aliquando fit in fine versūs; seu, potius in principio sequentis; ut,

Omnē | ā | Mērcūrē | s | sīmī | s | vō | cē | m | quē | cō | dī | cē | m | quē

Et crīnes flavōs.

3. *Eclipsis* est quoties *m* cum suā vocali perimitur, proximā dictione ā vocali exorsa; ut,

Mōn | str' | bōr | rēnā' | in | fōrm' | in | gēns cū | i | lūm | n | ā | dē | m | pē

Olim elidebatur *S*, ut,

Arbōrē | būs | vētē | rēs dē | cīdērē | fālē | būs | rāmōs;

Cui acci-
dunt,
1. *Cæsura*.

3. *Eclipsis*

Synæresis

4. *Synæresis* est duarum syllabarum in unam contractio; ut,

*Sēu lēn | tō sūē | vīnt * al | vārīā | vīmīne | tēxtā.*

* pro *alocaria*.

Fit autem frequentius in his dictionibus, *Dii*, *Diis*, *īidem*, *īisdem*, *deinde*, *deinceps*, *semianimis*, *semihomo*, *semustus*, *deest*, *deero*, *deerit*, *aniticambulo*, *anteit*, *cui*, & Genitivus nominum in *cia*; ut, *Ulisſeus*, *Ulisſei*, cum multis aliis.

Dizereſis.

5. *Dizereſis* est ubi ex unâ syllaba dissectâ fiunt duæ; ut,

Dēbēt ērānt fūſos ēvōlūiſſē sūſ. pro *evoluisse*.

Systole.

6. *Systole* est quæ longam syllabam corripit; ut,

Mātrī lōngā dīcēm tūlērūnī fastīdīā mēſes.

Diastole.

7. *Diastole* est quæ brevem syllabam producit; ut,

In quēm rēcīdīmūs quicquīd mōrtalē crēamur.

Atque hæc si reperitur in ultima dictionis syllabâ *Cesura* frequentius dicitur; ut

Omniā | vīncit ā mōr et | nōs cē | tamūs ā | mōrī.

Versuum genera sunt
varia pro ratione

{ 1. *Depositionis*,
&
2. *Aliter*.

Deposi-
tio.

1. *Depositiō* est terminatio scanſionis, ex quâ ver-
sus abundantiam, plenitudinem, aut defectum cogno-
ſcimus.

Secundam

quam dici-

tur.

Acatalo-

gicus.

Catale-

gicus.

Secundum hanc versus dicitur,

1. *Acataleſticus*, sive *perfectus*, cui nihil aut super-
est aut deest; ut,

Mūſe | Jōvīs | ſunt ſīlīæ.

2. *Cataleſticus*, sive *semimutulus*, cui in fine deest
syllaba; ut,

Mūſe | Jōvēm | cānē | bānt. —

3. *Brachycataleſticus*, sive *mutulus*, cui in fine pos-
deest; ut,

Mūſe | Jōvīs | gnātæ. | —

4. *Hyper-*

4. *Hypercatalecticus*; sive *exuberans*, in quo una, 4 Hypercatalecticus
aut duæ syllabæ supersunt, ut;

Mūse | sŏrō | rēs sūnt Mīnēr (vā,
Mūse | sŏrō | rēs Pāllādīs (lugent.

2. *Metrum* est legitimus pedum numerus, qui mensuratur.

2. *Metrum*

Quoad *Metrum* versus dicitur.

Secundum
quod est,
1 Adonicus

1. *Adonius*, sive *Adonicus*, qui constat
ex dactylo & spondeo; ut,

Gaudĭā | pĕllē.

Pĕllē tĕ mōrē.

2. *Archilochius dactylicus*, qui constat 2 Archilo-
ex duobus dactylis, & syllabā; ut, chus dacty-
Dīscitē | iustitiam licus.

3. *Alcmanius*, qui constat ex tribus
dactylis & syllabā; ut.

Dīscitē | iustitiam mōrē tĕ.

3 Alcma-
nius.

Glyconicus, qui constat ē spondeo &
duobus dactylis; ut,

Tandē | rēgā | nobīlīs.

4 Glyconi-
cus.

5 *Pherecratius*, qui constat ē spondeo,
dactylo & spondeo; ut.

Nīgrīs | equorā | vĕnīs.

5 Pherecra-
tius.

Hic versus aliquando pro priori
spondeo habet trochæum; ut,

Prōdē | ās nō vā | nūptā.

Aliquando *Anæpeum*; ut,

Sīmīlī | sūrgit ab | ōrtu,

6. *Æsclepiadæus*, qui constat ex 6 Æsclepi-
spondeo, dactylo, & syllabā lon- adæus,
gā, & duobus deinde dactylis;
ut,

Mecē | nās ātā | vīs | editā | rēgībūs

7. *Sapphicus*, qui constat ex trochæo, 7 Sapphi-
spondeo, & duobus demum trochæis, cus.

ut, *fām sū | tīs tēr | rīs nī vīs | atquē | dīre.*

8 Phaleu-
nius.

4: Pentameter,

9 Elegiacus

4:

10 Heroi-
cus.

5: Hexameter,

11 Iambi-
cus.

quinque, estque

qui constat pedibus

sex, estque

Post tres versus Sappichos, Adonicus
addi solet.

8. *Phalencius*, qui constat ex Spondæo,
dactylo, & tribus tandem trochæis;
ut,

Quōquō | diffūgē | ās pā | uēns Mābīlī.
Nōstrum | nōn pote | rīs la | tere | nāsum.

9. *Elegiacus*, qui constat dactylo vel
spondæo, cum syllabâ longâ; & duo-
bus tandem omnino dactylis, cum syl-
labâ item longâ; ut,

Rēs est | sōlēcī | tē | plēnā tī | mōrīs | ā-
(*mor.*)

Hēi mībī | quōd dōmī | nō | nōn līcēt ī-
(*rē | tūō;*)

10. *Heroicus*, qui constat quatuor pri-
mis locis ē spondæo vel dactylo, quin-
to dactylo, & sexto spondæo; ut,

Tytīrē | tū pātū | e rēcūbans sūb īēgmī.
(*nē sagī.*)

Sylvē | strēm tēnū | ī Mūsām mēdī | tarīs
(*ā | uēnā.*)

Reperitur etiam spondæus aliquando
in quinto loco; ut,

Chārā Dēūm sōbōlēs magnī Jōvīs īn-
(*mēmētūm.*)

Est & *Heroicus Tetrameter* qui con-
stat ex quatuor postremis Hexame-
tri pedibus; ut,

Aut sphēsum bīmārīs vē Cōrīnībī.

11. *Iambicus*, qui constat ē pedibus I-
ambicis; ut,

Sāis ē īpsā Rōmā vīrībīs rāt.

- Est autem hic versus
1. *Purus*, sive *Legitimus*, qui constat è solis Iambis; ut,
Pbāfē|lūs il|lē, quēm|vīdē|tys hof-
(pīcēs.
 2. *Impurus*, qui aliquot in locis recipit pedem diversum Iambo; ut.
Jūs ēst|īn ār|mīs, op|prīmīt|lēgēs
(tīmār
 3. *Scæzon*, sive *Choliambus*, i. e. claudicans Iambus, qui in sexto loco Spondæum, & in quinto Iambum retinet; ut,
Nēc fōn|tē|lā|brā prō|lūi|Gābā|lino

N. B. Recipit Jambicus interdum (ob majorem gravitatem exprimendam) in locis imparibus (i. e. primo, tertio, & quinto) pro Iambo tribrachum, Spondæum, dactylum, anapæstum; atque in locis paribus (i. e. secundo & quarto) quandoque tribrachum, Spondæum rariss, ultimum vero locum raro mutat; & saltem binos pedes Iambos perpetuò sibi servat.

Hic versus etiam dicitur
in duo genera usitiora

- vel
1. *Dimetrum*, sive *tetrametrum*, qui constat ex quatuor pedibus quémque metimur
 - Per dipodiam; i. e. geminum pedem more Græco; ut,
O carminum|dulces nota.
 - Per monopodiam, i. e. singulos pedes more Latino; ut.
O carminum|dulces|nota.
6. *Heptam.*

12. Archilochius Heptameter.

6. Heptameter,

qui constat pedibus

septē, estque

12. Archilochius Heptameter, qui constat quatuor primis pedibus Heroïcis, & tribus tandem trochæis; ut,
Sôlvâtâr | acrîs hy | ems grâta vîcê | vê-
(rîs | et Fâvoni.

2. Trimeter sive senarium, qui senis constat pedibus, quemque metimur,

{ Per dipodiam; ut,

Quî nōs | damnant | sūnt hîstrî
(ō | nēs mākîmî.

{ Per monopodiam; ut,

Quî nōs | damnant | sūnt bî | strî
(ō | nēs mākîmî.

Plura qui quærit, Autores qui de *Arte pœtica* fuisse scripserunt, otiosior consulat.

Et discas oportet, & quod didicisti agendo confirmes.
Sen. Epist.

Dottissimorum enim virorum usus pluris faciendus, quàm omnes omnium Grammaticorum Canones. Danæus.

Artifices solus, qui facit; usus erit. Ovid.

Snyopsis or short view of the Latine GRAMMAR.

- I. *Orthographie*, which teacheth how to spell words, *Lib. 1.*
- 1. Of Letters *C. 1.*
 - 2. Of Syllables. *C. 2.*
 - 3. Of Right Utterance. *C. 3.*
 - 4. Of points in Sentences. *C. 4.*

II. It treateth

1. In general. *C. 1.*

1. Case, *C. 3.*

1. General, {
- 1. Of { 1. Proper, *Chap. 5.*
 - Substan- { 2. Common, *Chap. 6.*
 - tives {
 - 2. Of Adjectives, *Chap. 10.*

2. Special. {
- Of Nouns {
 - not increas- *sing. C. 7.*
 - increas- *Long, C. 8.*
 - Short, *C. 9.*

- 2 Gender, *C. 4.* the Rules to know which are
3. Declension {
- the first, *Ch. 11.*
 - the second, *Ch. 12.*
 - the third, *Ch. 13.*
 - the fourth, *Ch. 14.*
 - the fifth, *Ch. 15.*

To which belong the manner of declining Adjectives, *Ch. 16.*

4. Comparison, *Ch. 17.*

To these be { variant, *Ch. 18.*

- long the Rules of { Deficient { Case, *Ch. 19.*
- Heteroclitis, {
 - which are { in { Number, *Ch. 20.*

2. its kinds, *Ch. 22.* { Redundant, *Ch. 21.*

- B I. Of a Pronoun, *Ch. 23.*

3. Of

It is divided into four parts.

II. *Etymologie*, which treateth of the Eight parts of speech, and their Accidents *Li. II.*

2. In particular,

1. Of a Noun and

1. its proper Accidents *C. 2.* which are

A short view of the Latine GRAMMAR.

III. *Syntaxis* which teacheth the due joining words together, *Lib. III. by way of*

B		[Accidents, chap. 24				
3	Of a Verb and its	Form of the Conjugation	first, chap. 25			
			second, chap. 26			
			third, chap. 27			
			fourth, chap. 28			
		Hither- to belongs 1 The Rules to know	[1 The Preter- perfect Tenses 2 The Supines]	Of Verbs in O	[1 Regular { Simple chap. 29 Compounds c. 30 Simple chap. 31 Compound, and the Preterperfect Tense of Verbs in <i>ov</i> , ch. 32 2 Irregular, chap. 33 3 Defective chap. 34 } 2 Regular { Simple chap. 31 Compound, and the Preterperfect Tense of Verbs in <i>ov</i> , ch. 32 2 Irregular, chap. 33 3 Defective chap. 34 }	
2 The forming of		[Irregular Verbs, chap. 35 the Verb <i>Sum</i> ch. 36]				
3 Impersonals and Derivatives		ch. 37				
4 Of a Participle;		chap. 38				
5 Of an Adverb;		chap. 39				
6 Of a Conjunction		ch. 40				
7 Of a Preposition		chap. 41				
8 Of an Interjection		chap. 42				
1	Concordance, c. I containing the Rule	[the]	[first second third]			
				Of the	Concord	[Sect. 1 Sect. 2 Sect. 3]
Case of the Relative		Sect. 4				
[Question and Answ.]		Sect. 5				
1	Of Nouns	[1 Substantives, chap. 2. Sect. 6. 2 Adjectives, c. 3. Sect. 7. with a]	[Ge. Da. Ac. Ab.]			
				[Sect. 7 Sect. 8 Sect. 9 Sect. 10]		
* The Ablative Case absolute,		Sect. 11				
2 Of Pronouns;		chap. 4.				
3	Of Verbs, (Nom.)	[Gen. Dar. Acc. Abl.]	[Sect. 12. Sect. 13. Sect. 14. Sect. 15. Sect. 16.]			
c. 5. with		[Sect. 13. Sect. 13. Sect. 14. Sect. 15. Sect. 16.]				
* Passives,		Sect. 17.				
[Abl.]		[Sect. 16.]				

2. Of Government

To

A short view of the *Latine* GRAMMAR.

A	To	{ Verbs having divers Constructions.	
	which		Sect. 18.
	also	the infinitive Mood.	Sect. 19
	{ be- long	the Gerunds, Sect. 20,	Di, Sect. 21
		Supines; Sect. 24.	Do, Sect. 22
	the	Time.	Sect. 26. } Dum, Sect. 23
	Rules	Space.	Sect. 27
{ of	{	Place.	Sect. 28
		Impersonals.	Sect. 29

4. Of Participles. C. 6 Sect. 30.

5. Of Adverbs, { Cases. { Sect. 31;
C. 7. with { Moods- }

6. Of Conjun- { Couple Words } Sect. 32.
ctions, C. 8. which { Govern Mood. }

7. Of Prepositions. C. 9. Sect. 33

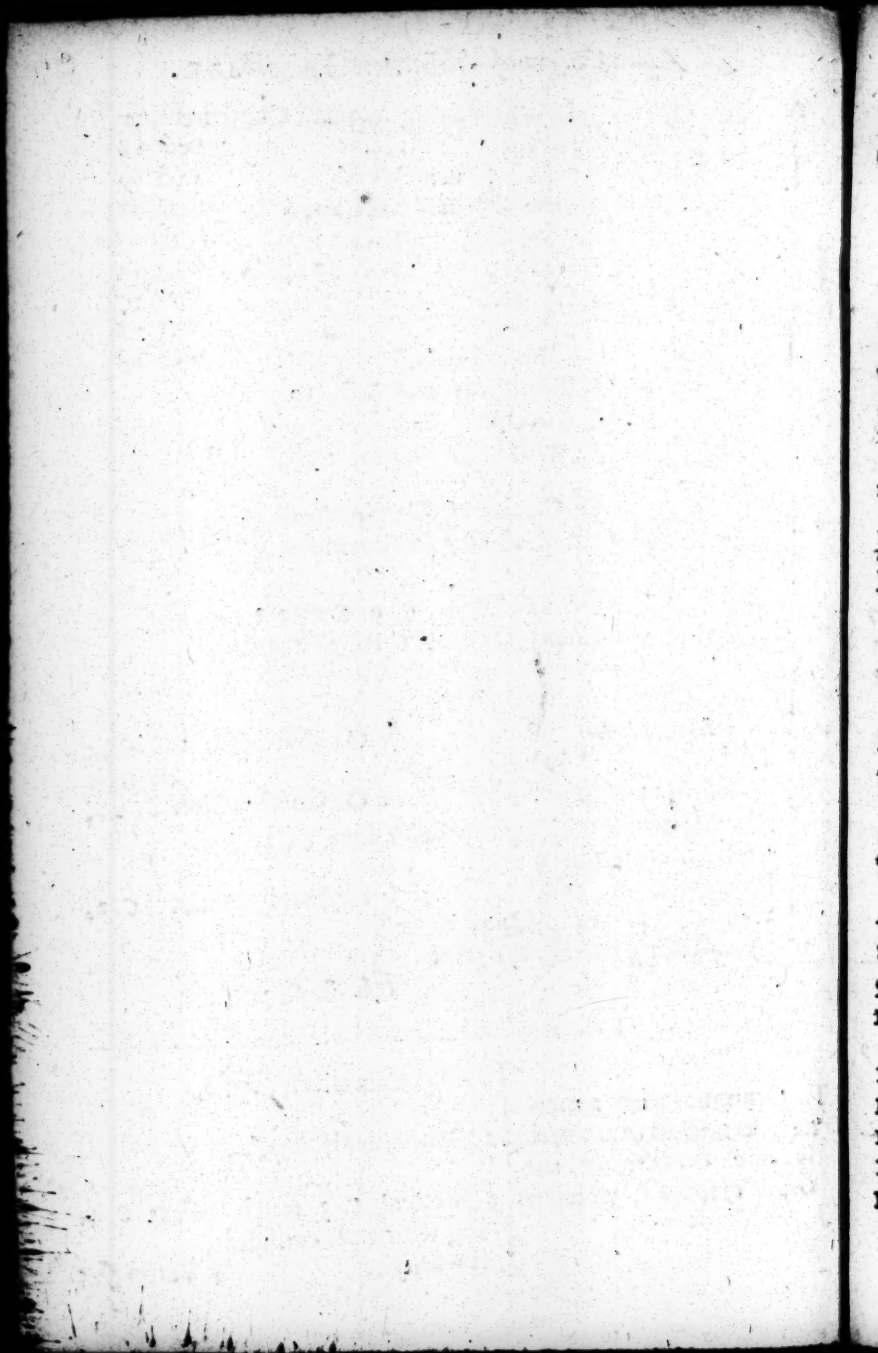
8. Of Interjections. C. 10. Sect. 34.

To { Etymologie } belong Figures { Of a Word. C. 11. Sect. 35
{ Syntaxis } { Of Construction. C. 12. Sect. 36

IV. *Prosodie*, which Spirits and Tones. C. 1.

teacheth the right Pronunciation of Words, Lib. 14. { Quantity of } First and Middle, C. 2,
by observing their { Syllables } Last. C. 3.

To Grammar after a manner) pertaineth that which is said concerning the Order of words, which is { 1. Grammatical, Cap. 1.
{ 2. Rhetorical, Cap. 2.
{ 3. Poetical, C. 3. touch- Feet, C. 4.
ing which we consider } Verses C. 5
the sorts of }



A TABLE of the Heads of the
Latine Grammar.

Chap.	Pag.	Chap.	Page
O F Grammar, and its Parts.	2.	16 Of the Declining of Adjec- tives,	64
LIB I. Of Orthographic.	2.	17 Of Comparison,	68
1 Of Letters,	4	18 Of varying Heteroclitis,	74
2 Of Syllables,	8	19 Of Heteroc. that want case,	78
3 Of Right Utterance,	12	20 Of Heteroclitis that want Number,	80
4 Of Points in Sentences,	14	21 Of Redundant Heteroclitis,	86
Lib. II. Of Etymologic.	16	22 Of the Kindes of Nouns,	90
1 Of the eight Parts of Speech, and their general Accidents,	16	23 Of a Pronoun.	94
2 Of a Noun, and its proper Ac- cidents,	20	24 Of a Verb, and its Accidents	106
3 Of Case, }	22	25 Of the form of the first Con- jugation	112
4 Of Gender. }	22	26 Of the forme of the second Con- jugation,	116
5 Of the general Rules of Pro- per Names.	26	27 Of the forme of the third Con- jugation	120
6 Of the general Rules of Com- mon Names,	28	28 Of the forme of the fourth Con- jugation,	124
7 Of the first Special Rule.	30	29 Of the Preterperfect tense of Verbs Simple.	128
8 Of the second Special Rule,	34	30 Of the Preterperfect tense of Compound Verbs,	136
9 Of the third Special Rule,	38	31 Of the Supines of Simple Verbs,	142
10 Of the Genders of Adjectives,	42	32 Of the Supines of Compound Verbs, and of the Preterperfect	150
11 Of the first Declension,	44		
12 Of the second Declension,	50		
13 Of the third Declension,	52		
14 Of the fourth Declension,	60		
15 Of the fifth Declension,	62		

A Table of the Heads, &c.

sense of Verbs in or	146	Chap.	pag.
33 Of certain Verbs Irregular.	148	11 Of the Figures of a word	274
34 Of Verbs that want certaine	154	12 Of the Figure of Construc-	276
1 Moods and Tenses.	160	on.	
35 Of forming Verbs Irregular.	170	LIB. IV. Of Prosodie.	282
36 Of forming the Verb Sum.	172	1 Of Spirits, Tones, or Accents.	282
37 Of verbs Impersonals & De-	176	2 Of the quantity of the first	288
rivatives;	182	and middle Syllables.	301
38 Of a Participle	188	3 Of the Quantitie of the last	310
39 Of an Adverb	191	Syllables.	
40 Of a Conjunction	196	Appendix Grammatices.	310
41 Of a Preposition	198		
42 of an Interjection;	214	1 De Ordine Grammatico	310
LIB. III. Of Syntax	224	2 Vocum Oratorio.	311
1 Of Concordance.	258	3 Poetico.	313
2.3.) Of Nouns	260	4 De Pedibus & ejus generibus	314
4.) Pronouns	264	5 De Versuum variis generibus.	126
5) Verbs	268		
6.) Participles	272		
7.) Adverbs			
8.) Conjunctions			
9.) Prepositions.			
10.) Of Interjections.			

Y

Pro



*Pro Pueorum in Studiis pio progressu , Pre-
catio quotidiana.*

Domine Pater, Cœli ac Terræ effector ; qui liberaliter tribuis sapientiam omnibus eam à te cum fidueia petentibus: Exorna (quæsumus) ingeniorum nostrorum bonitatem, quam cum cæteris naturæ viribus nobis infudisti, lumine divinæ gratiæ tuæ; ut non modò quæ ad cognoscendum te & Salvatorem nostrum Dominum Jesum valeant, intelligamus ; sed etiam torâ mente, & voluntate persequamur, & indes benignitate tuâ, tum doctrinâ, tum pietate proficiamus ; ut qui efficis omnia in omnibus, in nobis resplendere dona tua facias, ad gloriam sempiternam Majestatis tuæ. *Amen.*

Pater noster, qui es in cœlis, Sanctificetur Nomen tuum ; Adveniat regnum tuum. Fiat Voluntas tua, sicut in cœlo, sic & in terra. Panem nostrum quotidianum da nobis hodie. Et dimitte nobis debita nostra, sicut & nos dimittimus debitoribus nostris : Et ne nos inducas in tentationem, sed libera nos à malo. Quia tuum est Regnum, Potentia, & Gloria, in secula seculorum, *Amen.*

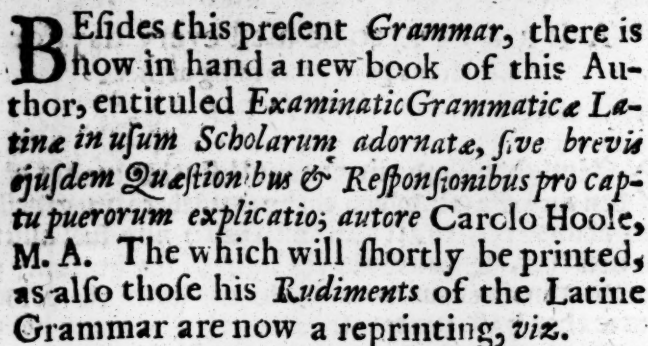


A P R A Y E R to be used every day, for
Childrens good proceeding at their.
B O O K S

O Almighty Lord and mercifull Father, maker of Hea-
ven and Earth, which of thy free liberality givest wis-
dome abundantly to all that with faith and full assurance
ask it of thee. Beautifie by the light of thy heavenly grace
the towardness of our wits, the which with all powers of
nature thou hast poured into us, that we may not onely
understand those things which may effectually bring us to
the knowledge of thee and the Lord Jesus our Saviour,
but also with our whole heart and will constantly follow
the same, and receive daily encrease through thy bountifull
goodness towards us, as well in good life as learning; so
that thou which workest all things in all creatures, maist
make thy gracious benefits shine in us, to the endless glory
and honour of thine immortal Majesty. Amen.

O Ur Father which art in heaven, Hallowed be thy
Name; Thy Kingdome come, Thy will be done in
Earth as it is in heaven. Give us this day our daily bread.
And forgive us our trespases, as we forgive them that tres-
pase against us. And lead us not into temptation, But
deliver us from evil, For thine is the Kingdome, the Pow-
er and the Glory, for ever and ever, Amen.

FINIS.



The Common Accidence examined
and explained by Question and Answer.

*Terminationes & Exempla Declinationum
& Conjugationum, in Latine and English.*

Propria quæ Maribus, Quæ Genus, and As in Prasenti, Englished and explained; with indexes to each part. All very usefull for young Grammarians..

His new Primer, having 24. severall representations of Persons, Beasts, Birds, &c. according to the letters of the Alphabet : being a most ready and sure way to teach little Children, with delight, to read English perfectly, in a very little time. This newly reprinted, is to be sold by Mr. *Andrew Crook* at the *Green Dragon* in *St. Pauls Church-yard* L O N D O N.



F130841

H2685.2

